Pearls of Functional Algorithm Design **Richard Bird**

This page intentionally left blank

PEARLS OF FUNCTIONAL ALGORITHM DESIGN

In *Pearls of Functional Algorithm Design* Richard Bird takes a radically new approach to algorithm design, namely design by calculation. The body of the text is divided into 30 short chapters, called pearls, each of which deals with a particular programming problem. These problems, some of which are completely new, are drawn from sources as diverse as games and puzzles, intriguing combinatorial tasks and more familiar algorithms in areas such as data compression and string matching.

Each pearl starts with the statement of the problem expressed using the functional programming language Haskell, a powerful yet succinct language for capturing algorithmic ideas clearly and simply. The novel aspect of the book is that each solution is calculated from the problem statement by appealing to the laws of functional programming.

Pearls of Functional Algorithm Design will appeal to the aspiring functional programmer, students and teachers interested in the principles of algorithm design, and anyone seeking to master the techniques of reasoning about programs in an equational style.

RICHARD BIRD is Professor of Computer Science at Oxford University and Fellow of Lincoln College, Oxford.

PEARLS OF FUNCTIONAL ALGORITHM DESIGN

RICHARD BIRD

University of Oxford



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Dubai, Tokyo

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

Published in the United States of America by Cambridge University Press, New York

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521513388

© Cambridge University Press 2010

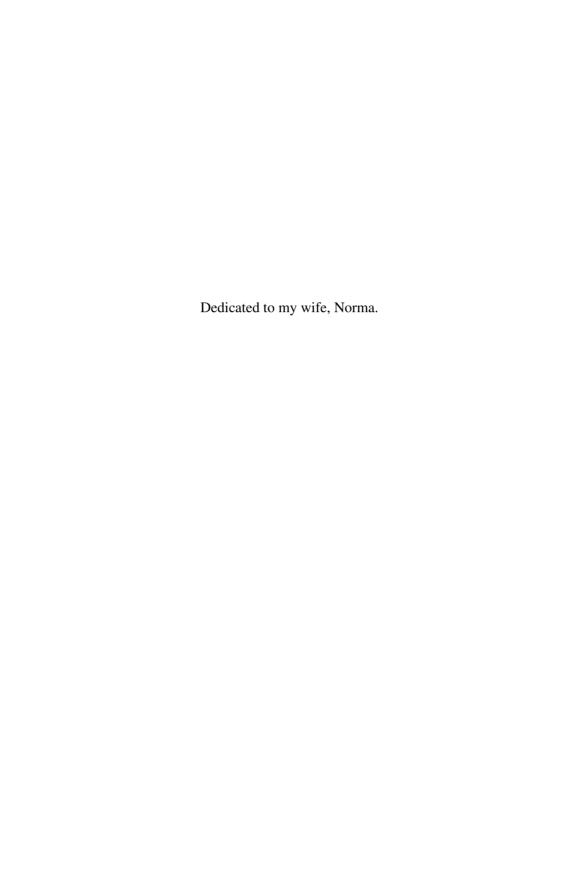
This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provision of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published in print format 2010

ISBN-13 978-0-511-90044-0 eBook (EBL)

ISBN-13 978-0-521-51338-8 Hardback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of urls for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate.



Contents

Prej	tace	page 1x
1	The smallest free number	1
2	A surpassing problem	7
3	Improving on saddleback search	12
4	A selection problem	21
5	Sorting pairwise sums	27
6	Making a century	33
7	Building a tree with minimum height	41
8	Unravelling greedy algorithms	50
9	Finding celebrities	56
10	Removing duplicates	64
11	Not the maximum segment sum	73
12	Ranking suffixes	79
13	The Burrows–Wheeler transform	91
14	The last tail	102
15	All the common prefixes	112
16	The Boyer–Moore algorithm	117
17	The Knuth-Morris-Pratt algorithm	127
18	Planning solves the Rush Hour problem	136
19	A simple Sudoku solver	147
20	The Countdown problem	156
21	Hylomorphisms and nexuses	168
22	Three ways of computing determinants	180
23	Inside the convex hull	188

•••	\sim
V111	Contents

24	Rational arithmetic coding	198
25	Integer arithmetic coding	208
26	The Schorr-Waite algorithm	221
27	Orderly insertion	231
28	Loopless functional algorithms	242
29	The Johnson-Trotter algorithm	251
3 0	Spider spinning for dummies	258
Inde	ex	275

Preface

In 1990, when the *Journal of Functional Programming* (JFP) was in the stages of being planned, I was asked by the then editors, Simon Peyton Jones and Philip Wadler, to contribute a regular column to be called *Functional Pearls*. The idea they had in mind was to emulate the very successful series of essays that Jon Bentley had written in the 1980s under the title "Programming Pearls" in the *Communications of the ACM*. Bentley wrote about his pearls:

Just as natural pearls grow from grains of sand that have irritated oysters, these programming pearls have grown from real problems that have irritated programmers. The programs are fun, and they teach important programming techniques and fundamental design principles.

I think the editors had asked me because I was interested in the specific task of taking a clear but inefficient functional program, a program that acted as a specification of the problem in hand, and using equational reasoning to calculate a more efficient one. One factor that stimulated growing interest in functional languages in the 1990s was that such languages were good for equational reasoning. Indeed, the functional language GOFER, invented by Mark Jones, captured this thought as an acronym. GOFER was one of the languages that contributed to the development of Haskell, the language on which this book is based. Equational reasoning dominates everything in this book.

In the past 20 years, some 80 pearls have appeared in the JFP, together with a sprinkling of pearls at conferences such as the *International Conference of Functional Programming* (ICFP) and the *Mathematics of Program Construction Conference* (MPC). I have written about a quarter of them, but most have been written by others. The topics of these pearls include interesting program calculations, novel data structures and small but elegant domain-specific languages embedded in Haskell and ML for particular applications.

x Preface

My interest has always been in algorithms and their design. Hence the title of this book is Pearls of Functional Algorithm Design rather than the more general Functional Pearls. Many, though by no means all, of the pearls start with a specification in Haskell and then go on to calculate a more efficient version. My aim in writing these particular pearls is to see to what extent algorithm design can be cast in a familiar mathematical tradition of calculating a result by using well-established mathematical principles, theorems and laws. While it is generally true in mathematics that calculations are designed to simplify complicated things, in algorithm design it is usually the other way around: simple but inefficient programs are transformed into more efficient versions that can be completely opaque. It is not the final program that is the pearl; rather it is the calculation that yields it. Other pearls, some of which contain very few calculations, are devoted to trying to give simple explanations of some interesting and subtle algorithms. Explaining the ideas behind an algorithm is so much easier in a functional style than in a procedural one: the constituent functions can be more easily separated, they are brief and they capture powerful patterns of computation.

The pearls in this book that have appeared before in the JFP and other places have been polished and repolished. In fact, many do not bear much resemblance to the original. Even so, they could easily be polished more. The gold standard for beauty in mathematics is *Proofs from The Book* by Aigner and Ziegler (third edition, Springer, 2003), which contains some perfect proofs for mathematical theorems. I have always had this book in mind as an ideal towards which to strive.

About a third of the pearls are new. With some exceptions, clearly indicated, the pearls can be read in any order, though the chapters have been arranged to some extent in themes, such as divide and conquer, greedy algorithms, exhaustive search and so on. There is some repetition of material in the pearls, mostly concerning the properties of the library functions that we use, as well as more general laws, such as the fusion laws of various folds. A brief index has been included to guide the reader when necessary.

Finally, many people have contributed to the material. Indeed, several pearls were originally composed in collaboration with other authors. I would like to thank Sharon Curtis, Jeremy Gibbons, Ralf Hinze, Geraint Jones and Shin-Cheng Mu, my co-authors on these pearls, for their kind generosity in allowing me to rework the material. Jeremy Gibbons read the final draft and made numerous useful suggestions for improving the presentation. Some pearls have also been subject to close scrutiny at meetings of the Algebra of Programming research group at Oxford. While a number of flaws and errors have been removed, no doubt additional ones have been introduced. Apart

Preface xi

from those mentioned above, I would like to thank Stephen Drape, Tom Harper, Daniel James, Jeffrey Lake, Meng Wang and Nicholas Wu for many positive suggestions for improving presentation. I would also like to thank Lambert Meertens and Oege de Moor for much fruitful collaboration over the years. Finally, I am indebted to David Tranah, my editor at Cambridge University Press, for encouragement and support, including much needed technical advice in the preparation of the final copy.

Richard Bird

The smallest free number

Introduction

Consider the problem of computing the smallest natural number not in a given finite set X of natural numbers. The problem is a simplification of a common programming task in which the numbers name objects and X is the set of objects currently in use. The task is to find some object not in use, say the one with the smallest name.

The solution to the problem depends, of course, on how X is represented. If X is given as a list without duplicates and in increasing order, then the solution is straightforward: simply look for the first gap. But suppose X is given as a list of distinct numbers in no particular order. For example,

$$[08, 23, 09, 00, 12, 11, 01, 10, 13, 07, 41, 04, 14, 21, 05, 17, 03, 19, 02, 06]$$

How would you find the smallest number not in this list?

It is not immediately clear that there is a linear-time solution to the problem; after all, sorting an arbitrary list of numbers cannot be done in linear time. Nevertheless, linear-time solutions do exist and the aim of this pearl is to describe two of them: one is based on Haskell arrays and the other on divide and conquer.

An array-based solution

The problem can be specified as a function *minfree*, defined by

$$\begin{array}{ll} \textit{minfree} & :: & [\mathit{Nat}] \rightarrow \mathit{Nat} \\ \textit{minfree} \; \mathit{xs} & = \; \mathit{head} \; ([0 \mathrel{\ldotp\ldotp}] \; \backslash \backslash \; \mathit{xs}) \end{array}$$

The expression $us \setminus vs$ denotes the list of those elements of us that remain after removing any elements in vs:

$$\begin{array}{lll} (\backslash\backslash) & :: & Eq \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [a] \\ us \backslash\backslash \ vs & = & filter \ (\not\in vs) \ us \end{array}$$

The function *minfree* is executable but requires $\Theta(n^2)$ steps on a list of length n in the worst case. For example, evaluating *minfree* [n-1, n-2...0] requires evaluating $i \notin [n-1, n-2...0]$ for $0 \le i \le n$, and thus n(n+1)/2 equality tests.

The key fact for both the array-based and divide and conquer solutions is that not every number in the range $[0..length\ xs]$ can be in xs. Thus the smallest number not in xs is the smallest number not in $filter (\le n)xs$, where $n = length\ xs$. The array-based program uses this fact to build a checklist of those numbers present in $filter (\le n)xs$. The checklist is a Boolean array with n+1 slots, numbered from 0 to n, whose initial entries are everywhere False. For each element x in xs and provided $x \le n$ we set the array element at position x to True. The smallest free number is then found as the position of the first False entry. Thus, $minfree = search \cdot checklist$, where

```
search :: Array\ Int\ Bool \rightarrow Int
search = length \cdot take\ While\ id \cdot elems
```

The function *search* takes an array of Booleans, converts the array into a list of Booleans and returns the length of the longest initial segment consisting of *True* entries. This number will be the position of the first *False* entry.

One way to implement *checklist* in linear time is to use the function *accumArray* in the Haskell library *Data.Array*. This function has the rather daunting type

$$Ix \ i \Rightarrow (e \rightarrow v \rightarrow e) \rightarrow e \rightarrow (i, i) \rightarrow [(i, v)] \rightarrow Array \ i \ e$$

The type constraint Ix i restricts i to be an Index type, such as Int or Char, for naming the indices or positions of the array. The first argument is an "accumulating" function for transforming array entries and values into new entries, the second argument is an initial entry for each index, the third argument is a pair naming the lower and upper indices and the fourth is an association list of index-value pairs. The function accumArray builds an array by processing the association list from left to right, combining entries and values into new entries using the accumulating function. This process takes linear time in the length of the association list, assuming the accumulating function takes constant time.

The function *checklist* is defined as an instance of *accumArray*:

```
\begin{array}{lll} checklist & :: & [Int] \rightarrow Array \ Int \ Bool \\ checklist \ xs & = & accumArray \ (\lor) \ False \ (0,n) \\ & & (zip \ (filter \ (\le n) \ xs) \ (repeat \ True)) \\ & & \mathbf{where} \ n = length \ xs \end{array}
```

This implementation does not require the elements of xs to be distinct, but does require them to be natural numbers.

It is worth mentioning that accumArray can be used to sort a list of numbers in linear time, provided the elements of the list all lie in some known range (0, n). We replace *checklist* by *countlist*, where

```
countlist :: [Int] \rightarrow Array \ Int \ Int

countlist xs = accumArray (+) 0 (0, n) (zip \ xs \ (repeat \ 1))
```

Then sort xs = concat [replicate $k x \mid (x, k) \leftarrow countlist xs$]. In fact, if we use countlist instead of checklist, then we can implement minfree as the position of the first 0 entry.

The above implementation builds the array in one go using a clever library function. A more prosaic way to implement checklist is to tick off entries step by step using a constant-time update operation. This is possible in Haskell only if the necessary array operations are executed in a suitable monad, such as the state monad. The following program for checklist makes use of the library Data.Array.ST:

```
checklist xs = runSTArray (do
\{a \leftarrow newArray (0, n) False; \\ sequence [writeArray a x True \mid x \leftarrow xs, x \leq n]; \\ return a\})
\mathbf{where} \ n = length \ xs
```

This solution would not satisfy the pure functional programmer because it is essentially a procedural program in functional clothing.

A divide and conquer solution

Now we turn to a divide and conquer solution to the problem. The idea is to express $minfree\ (xs + ys)$ in terms of $minfree\ xs$ and $minfree\ ys$. We begin by recording the following properties of $\$:

```
 \begin{array}{rcl} (as + bs) \setminus cs &=& (as \setminus cs) + (bs \setminus cs) \\ as \setminus (bs + cs) &=& (as \setminus bs) \setminus cs \\ (as \setminus bs) \setminus cs &=& (as \setminus cs) \setminus bs \end{array}
```

These properties reflect similar laws about sets in which set union \cup replaces ++ and set difference \setminus replaces \setminus \. Suppose now that as and vs are disjoint, meaning $as \setminus vs = as$, and that bs and us are also disjoint, so $bs \setminus us = bs$. It follows from these properties of ++ and \setminus \ that

```
(as + bs) \setminus (us + vs) = (as \setminus us) + (bs \setminus vs)
```

Now, choose any natural number b and let as = [0 ... b-1] and bs = [b..]. Furthermore, let us = filter (< b) xs and $vs = filter (\ge b) xs$. Then as and vs are disjoint, and so are bs and us. Hence

$$[0 ...] \setminus xs = ([0 ... b-1] \setminus us) + ([b ...] \setminus vs)$$

where $(us, vs) = partition (< b) xs$

Haskell provides an efficient implementation of a function p that partitions a list into those elements that satisfy p and those that do not. Since

```
head(xs + ys) = if null xs then head ys else head xs
```

we obtain, still for any natural number b, that

$$\begin{array}{ll} \textit{minfree } \textit{xs} & = & \textbf{if } \textit{null } ([0 \mathinner{\ldotp\ldotp} b-1] \setminus \!\!\backslash \textit{us}) \\ & \textbf{then } \textit{head } ([b \mathinner{\ldotp\ldotp}] \setminus \!\!\backslash \textit{vs}) \\ & \textbf{else } \textit{head } ([0 \mathinner{\ldotp\ldotp}] \setminus \!\!\backslash \textit{us}) \\ & \textbf{where } (\textit{us}, \textit{vs}) = \textit{partition } (< \textit{b}) \textit{xs} \end{array}$$

The next question is: can we implement the test $null\ ([0..b-1] \setminus us)$ more efficiently than by direct computation, which takes quadratic time in the length of us? Yes, the input is a list of distinct natural numbers, so is us. And every element of us is less than b. Hence

$$null \; ([0 \mathrel{\ldotp\ldotp} b\!-\!1] \; \backslash \backslash \; us \;\; \equiv \;\; length \; us = \! b$$

Note that the array-based solution did not depend on the assumption that the given list did not contain duplicates, but it is a crucial one for an efficient divide and conquer solution.

Further inspection of the above code for *minfree* suggests that we should generalise *minfree* to a function, *minfrom* say, defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{minfrom} & :: & \textit{Nat} \rightarrow [\textit{Nat}] \rightarrow \textit{Nat} \\ \textit{minfrom a xs} & = & \textit{head} ([\textit{a} ...] \setminus \backslash \textit{xs}) \end{array}
```

where every element of xs is assumed to be greater than or equal to a. Then, provided b is chosen so that both $length\ us$ and $length\ vs$ are less than $length\ xs$, the following recursive definition of minfree is well-founded:

It remains to choose b. Clearly, we want b > a. And we would also like to choose b so that the maximum of the lengths of us and vs is as small as possible. The right choice of b to satisfy these requirements is

$$b = a + 1 + n \operatorname{div} 2$$

where n = length xs. If $n \neq 0$ and length us < b - a, then

 $length us \le n \text{ div } 2 < n$

And, if length us = b - a, then

$$length \ vs = n - n \ div \ 2 - 1 \le n \ div \ 2$$

With this choice the number of steps T(n) for evaluating minfrom 0 xs when n = length xs satisfies $T(n) = T(n \text{ div } 2) + \Theta(n)$, with the solution $T(n) = \Theta(n)$.

As a final optimisation we can avoid repeatedly computing length with a simple data refinement, representing xs by a pair (length xs, xs). That leads to the final program

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{minfree xs} & = & \textit{minfrom } 0 \ (\textit{length } xs, xs) \\ \textit{minfrom } a \ (n, xs) & \mid & n = 0 & = & a \\ \mid & m = b - a & = & \textit{minfrom } b \ (n - m, vs) \\ \mid & \textbf{otherwise} & = & \textit{minfrom } a \ (m, us) \\ & \textbf{where} \ (us, vs) & = & \textit{partition} \ (< b) \ xs \\ b & = & a + 1 + n \ \text{div } 2 \\ m & = & \textit{length } us \end{array}
```

It turns out that the above program is about twice as fast as the incremental array-based program, and about 20% faster than the one using accumArray.

Final remarks

This was a simple problem with at least two simple solutions. The second solution was based on a common technique of algorithm design, namely divide and conquer. The idea of partitioning a list into those elements less than a given value, and the rest, arises in a number of algorithms, most notably Quicksort. When seeking a $\Theta(n)$ algorithm involving a list of n elements, it is tempting to head at once for a method that processes each element of the list in constant time, or at least in amortized constant time. But a recursive process that performs $\Theta(n)$ processing steps in order to reduce the problem to another instance of at most half the size is also good enough.

One of the differences between a pure functional algorithm designer and a procedural one is that the former does not assume the existence of arrays with a constant-time update operation, at least not without a certain amount of plumbing. For a pure functional programmer, an update operation takes logarithmic time in the size of the array. That explains why there sometimes seems to be a logarithmic gap between the best functional and procedural solutions to a problem. But sometimes, as here, the gap vanishes on a closer inspection.

¹ To be fair, procedural programmers also appreciate that constant-time indexing and updating are only possible when the arrays are small.

A surpassing problem

Introduction

In this pearl we solve a small programming exercise of Martin Rem (1988a). While Rem's solution uses binary search, our solution is another application of divide and conquer. By definition, a surpasser of an element of an array is a greater element to the right, so x[j] is a surpasser of x[i] if i < j and x[i] < x[j]. The surpasser count of an element is the number of its surpassers. For example, the surpasser counts of the letters of the string GENERATING are given by

The maximum surpasser count is six. The first occurrence of letter E has six surpassers, namely N, R, T, I, N and G. Rem's problem is to compute the maximum surpasser count of an array of length n > 1 and to do so with an $O(n \log n)$ algorithm.

Specification

We will suppose that the input is given as a list rather than an array. The function msc (short for maximum surpasser count) is specified by

```
msc :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow Int

msc \ xs = maximum [scount \ z \ zs \ | \ z : zs \leftarrow tails \ xs]

scount \ x \ xs = length \ (filter \ (x <) \ xs)
```

The value of scount x is the surpasser count of x in the list xs and tails returns the nonempty tails of a nonempty list in decreasing order of length:

$$tails [] = []$$

 $tails (x : xs) = (x : xs) : tails xs$

The definition of msc is executable but takes quadratic time.

¹ Unlike the standard Haskell function of the same name, which returns the possibly empty tails of a possibly empty list.

Divide and conquer

Given the target complexity of $O(n \log n)$ steps, it seems reasonable to head for a divide and conquer algorithm. If we can find a function join so that

$$msc(xs + ys) = join(msc xs)(msc ys)$$

and join can be computed in linear time, then the time complexity T(n) of the divide and conquer algorithm for computing msc on a list of length n satisfies T(n) = 2T(n/2) + O(n), with solution $T(n) = O(n \log n)$. But it is fairly obvious that no such join can exist: too little information is provided by the single number msc xs for any such decomposition.

The minimal generalisation is to start out with the table of *all* surpasser counts:

```
table \ xs = [(z, scount \ z \ zs) \mid z : zs \leftarrow tails \ xs]
```

Then $msc = maximum \cdot map \ snd \cdot table$. Can we find a linear-time join to satisfy

```
table(xs + ys) = join(table xs)(table ys)
```

Well, let us see. We will need the following divide and conquer property of tails:

$$tails (xs + ys) = map (+ys) (tails xs) + tails ys$$

The calculation goes as follows:

```
table (xs + ys)
= \{definition\}
[(z, scount z zs) | z : zs \leftarrow tails (xs + ys)]
= \{divide and conquer property of tails\}
[(z, scount z zs) | z : zs \leftarrow map (+ys) (tails xs) + tails ys]
= \{distributing \leftarrow over ++\}
[(z, scount z (zs + ys)) | z : zs \leftarrow tails xs] ++
[(z, scount z zs) | z : zs \leftarrow tails ys])
= \{since scount z (zs + ys) = scount z zs + scount z ys\}
[(z, scount z zs + scount z ys) | z : zs \leftarrow tails xs] ++
[(z, scount z zs) | z : zs \leftarrow tails ys])
= \{definition of table and ys = map fst (table ys)\}
[(z, c + scount z (map fst (table ys))) | (z, c) \leftarrow table xs] ++ table ys
```

Hence join can be defined by

$$join \ txs \ tys = [(z, c + tcount \ z \ tys) \mid (z, c) \leftarrow txs] + tys$$
$$tcount \ z \ tys = scount \ z \ (map \ fst \ tys)$$

The problem with this definition, however, is that *join txs tys* does not take linear time in the length of *txs* and *tys*.

We could improve the computation of *tcount* if *tys* were sorted in ascending order of first component. Then we can reason:

```
tcount z tys
= \{definition of tcount and scount\}
length (filter (z <) (map fst tys))
= \{since filter p \cdot map f = map f \cdot filter (p \cdot f)\}
length (map fst (filter ((z <) \cdot fst) tys))
= \{since length \cdot map f = length\}
length (filter ((z <) \cdot fst) tys)
= \{since tys \text{ is sorted on first argument}\}
length (drop While ((z \ge) \cdot fst) tys)
```

Hence

$$tcount\ z\ tys = length\ (drop\ While((z \ge) \cdot fst)\ tys)$$
 (2.1)

This calculation suggests it would be sensible to maintain table in ascending order of first component:

$$table \ xs = sort \ [(z, scount \ z \ zs) \mid z : zs \leftarrow tails \ xs]$$

Repeating the calculation above, but for the sorted version of table, we find that

$$join \ txs \ tys = [(x, c + tcount \ x \ tys) \mid (x, c) \leftarrow txs] \land tys$$
 (2.2)

where \wedge merges two sorted lists. Using this identity we can now calculate a more efficient recursive definition of *join*. One of the base cases, namely join[]tys = tys, is immediate. The other base case, $join\ txs[] = txs$, follows because $tcount\ x[] = 0$. For the recursive case we simplify

$$join txs@((x,c):txs') tys@((y,d):tys')$$
(2.3)

by comparing x and y. (In Haskell, the @ sign introduces a synonym, so txs is a synonym for (x, c) : txs'; similarly for tys.) Using (2.2), (2.3) reduces to

$$((x, c + tcount \ x \ tys) : [(x, c + tcount \ x \ tys) \ | \ (x, c) \leftarrow txs']) \land \!\! \land tys$$

To see which element is produced first by $\wedge \! \wedge$ we need to compare x and y. If x < y, then it is the element on the left and, since $tcount \ x \ tys = length \ tys$ by (2.1), expression (2.3) reduces to

```
(x, c + length tys) : join txs' tys
```

If x = y, we need to compare c + tcount x tys and d. But d = tcount x tys' by the definition of table and tcount x tys = tcount x tys' by (2.1), so (2.3) reduces to (y, d): join txs tys'. This is also the result in the final case x > y.

Putting these results together, and introducing *length tys* as an additional argument to *join* in order to avoid repeating length calculations, we arrive at the following divide and conquer algorithm for *table*:

Since join takes linear time, table is computed in $O(n \log n)$ steps, and so is msc.

Final remarks

It is not possible to do better than an $O(n \log n)$ algorithm for computing table. The reason is that if xs is a list of distinct elements, then $table \, xs$ provides enough information to determine the permutation of xs that sorts xs. Moreover, no further comparisons between list elements are required. In fact, $table \, xs$ is related to the inversion table of a permutation of n elements; see Knuth (1998): $table \, xs$ is just the inversion table of $table \, xs$. Since comparison-based sorting of $table \, xs$ is just the inversion table of $table \, xs$ is does the computation of $table \, xs$.

As we said in the Introduction for this pearl, the solution in Rem (1998b) is different, in that it is based on an iterative algorithm and uses binary search. A procedural programmer could also head for a divide and conquer algorithm, but would probably prefer an in-place array-based algorithm simply because it consumes less space.

References

- Knuth, D. E. (1998). The Art of Computer Programming, Volume 3: Sorting and Searching, second edition. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
- Rem, M. (1988a). Small programming exercises 20. Science of Computer Programming 10 (1), 99–105.
- Rem, M. (1998b). Small programming exercises 21. Science of Computer Programming 10 (3), 319–25.

Improving on saddleback search

The setting is a tutorial on functional algorithm design. There are four students: Anne, Jack, Mary and Theo.

Teacher: Good morning class. Today I would like you design a function *invert* that takes two arguments: a function f from pairs of natural numbers to natural numbers, and a natural number z. The value *invert* f z is a list of all pairs (x, y) satisfying f(x, y) = z. You can assume that f is strictly increasing in each argument, but nothing else.

Jack: That seems an easy problem. Since f is a function on naturals and is increasing in each argument, we know that f(x, y) = z implies $x \le z$ and $y \le z$. Hence we can define *invert* by a simple search of all possible pairs of values:

invert
$$f z = [(x, y) \mid x \leftarrow [0 ... z], y \leftarrow [0 ... z], f(x, y) = z]$$

Doesn't this solve the problem?

Teacher: Yes it does, but your solution involves $(z+1)^2$ evaluations of f. Since f may be very expensive to compute, I would like a solution with as few evaluations of f as possible.

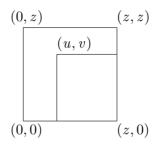
Theo: Well, it is easy to halve the evaluations. Since $f(x, y) \ge x + y$ if f is increasing, the search can be confined to values on or below the diagonal of the square:

$$invert\,f\,\,z \quad = \quad [(x,y) \ | \ x \leftarrow [0 \mathinner{\ldotp\ldotp} z], \ y \leftarrow [0 \mathinner{\ldotp\ldotp} z - x], \, f(x,y) = z]$$

Come to think of it, you can replace the two upper bounds by z - f(0,0) and z - x - f(0,0). Then if z < f(0,0) the search terminates at once.

Anne: Assuming it doesn't matter in which order the solutions are found, I think you can do better still. Jack's method searches a square of size z + 1

from the origin at the bottom left, and proceeds upwards column by column. We can do better if we start at the top-left corner (0, z) of the square. At any stage the search space is constrained to be a rectangle with top-left corner (u, v) and bottom-right corner (z, 0). Here is the picture:



Let me define

$$find(u, v) f z = [(x, y) \mid x \leftarrow [u ... z], y \leftarrow [v, v - 1 ... 0], f(x, y) = z]$$

so that invert f z = find(0, z) f z. It is now easy enough to calculate a more efficient implementation of find.

First of all, if u > z or v < 0, then, clearly, find(u,v)fz = []. Otherwise, we carry out a case analysis on the value f(u,v). If f(u,v) < z, then the rest of column u can be eliminated, since f(u,v') < f(u,v) < z for v' < v. If f(u,v) > z, we can similarly eliminate, the rest of row v. Finally, if f(u,v) = z, then we can record (u,v) and eliminate the rest of both column u and row v.

Here is my improved version of *invert*:

$$\begin{array}{lll} invert \, f \, z &=& find \, (0,z) \, f \, z \\ find \, (u,v) \, f \, z & & & & & & & & & & & \\ & | \, u > z \lor v < 0 & = & [\,] \\ & | \, z' < z & = & find \, (u+1,v) \, f \, z \\ & | \, z' = z & = & (u,v) : find \, (u+1,v-1) \, f \, z \\ & | \, z' > z & = & find \, (u,v-1) \, f \, z \\ & & \mathbf{where} \, \, z' = f(u,v) \end{array}$$

In the worst case, when find traverses the perimeter of the square from the top-left corner to the bottom-right corner, it performs 2z + 1 evaluations of f. In the best case, when find proceeds directly to either the bottom or rightmost boundary, it requires only z + 1 evaluations.

Theo: You can reduce the search space still further because the initial square with top-left corner (0, z) and bottom-right corner (z, 0) is an overly

generous estimate of where the required values lie. Suppose we first compute m and n, where

```
m = maximum (filter (\lambda y \rightarrow f(0, y) \le z) [0..z])

n = maximum (filter (\lambda x \rightarrow f(x, 0) \le z) [0..z])
```

Then we can define invert f z = find(0, m) f z, where find has exactly the same form that Anne gave, except that the first guard becomes $u > n \lor v < 0$. In other words, rather than search a $(z+1) \times (z+1)$ square we can get away with searching an $(m+1) \times (n+1)$ rectangle.

The crucial point is that we can compute m and n by binary search. Let g be an increasing function on the natural numbers and suppose x, y and z satisfy g $x \le z < g$ y. To determine the unique value m, where m = bsearch g(x, y)z, in the range $x \le m < y$ such that g $m \le z < g(m+1)$ we can maintain the invariants g $a \le z < g$ b and $x \le a < b \le y$. This leads to the program

```
\begin{array}{lll} bsearch \ g \ (a,b) \ z \\ & \mid \ a+1 == b & = \ a \\ & \mid \ g \ m \leq z & = \ bsearch \ g \ (m,b) \ z \\ & \mid \ \textbf{otherwise} \ = \ bsearch \ g \ (a,m) \ z \\ & \textbf{where} \ m = (a+b) \ \text{div} \ 2 \end{array}
```

Since $a+1 < b \Rightarrow a < m < y$ it follows that neither gx nor gy are evaluated by the algorithm, so they can be fictitious values. In particular, we have

```
m = bsearch (\lambda y \rightarrow f(0, y)) (-1, z + 1) z

n = bsearch (\lambda x \rightarrow f(x, 0)) (-1, z + 1) z
```

where we extend f with fictitious values f(0,-1)=0 and f(-1,0)=0.

This version of *invert* takes about $2 \log z + m + n$ evaluations of f in the worst case and $2 \log z + m \min n$ in the best case. Since m or n may be substantially less than z, for example when $f(x, y) = 2^x + 3^y$, we can end up with an algorithm that takes only $O(\log z)$ steps in the worst case.

Teacher: Congratulations, Anne and Theo, you have rediscovered an important search strategy, dubbed $saddleback\ search$ by David Gries; see Backhouse (1986), Dijkstra (1985) and Gries (1981). I imagine Gries called it that because the shape of the three-dimensional plot of f, with the smallest element at the bottom left, the largest at the top right and two wings, is a bit like a saddle. The crucial idea, as Anne has spotted, is to start the search at the tip of one of the wings rather than at the smallest or highest value. In his treatment of the problem, Dijkstra (1985) also mentioned the advantage of using a logarithmic search to find the appropriate starting rectangle.

Mary: What happens if we go for a divide and conquer solution? I mean, why not look at the middle element of the rectangle first? Surely it is reasonable to investigate the two-dimensional analogue of binary search.

Suppose we have confined the search to a rectangle with top-left corner (u, v) and bottom-right corner (r, s). Instead of looking at f(u, v), why not inspect f(p, q), where p = (u + r) div 2 and q = (v + s) div 2? Here is the picture:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
(u,v) & (r,v) \\
\hline
(p,q) & B \\
\hline
A & \\
(u,s) & (r,s)
\end{array}$$

If f(p,q) < z, then we can throw away all elements of the lower-left rectangle A. Similarly, if f(p,q) > z, then we can throw away the upper-right rectangle B. And if f(p,q) = z, then we can throw away both.

I know that this strategy does not maintain Anne's property that the search space is always a rectangle; instead, we have two rectangles or an L-shape. But we are functional programmers and don't have to confine ourselves to simple loops: a divide and conquer algorithm is as easy for us to implement as an iterative one because both have to be expressed recursively.

Jack: You have to deal with the L-shape though. You can split an L-shape into two rectangles of course. In fact you can do it in two ways, either with a horizontal cut or a vertical one. Let me do a rough calculation. Consider an $m \times n$ rectangle and let T(m,n) denote the number of evaluations of f required to search it. If m=0 or n=0 then there is nothing to search. If m=1 or n=1 we have

$$T(1,n) = 1 + T(1, \lceil n/2 \rceil)$$

 $T(m,1) = 1 + T(\lceil m/2 \rceil, 1)$

Otherwise, when $m \geq 2$ and $n \geq 2$, we can throw away a rectangle of size at least $\lfloor m/2 \rfloor \times \lfloor n/2 \rfloor$. If we make a horizontal cut, then we are left with two rectangles, one of size $\lfloor m/2 \rfloor \times \lceil n/2 \rceil$ and the other of size $\lceil m/2 \rceil \times n$. Hence

$$T(m,n) = 1 + T(\lfloor m/2 \rfloor, \lceil n/2 \rceil) + T(\lceil m/2 \rceil, n)$$

If we make a vertical cut, then we have

$$T(m,n) = 1 + T(\lceil m/2 \rceil, \lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + T(m, \lceil n/2 \rceil)$$

I don't immediately see the solutions to these recurrence relations.

Theo: If you make both a horizontal and a vertical cut, you are left with three rectangles, so when $m \ge 2$ and $n \ge 2$ we have

$$T(m,n) = 1 + T(\lceil m/2 \rceil, \lfloor n/2 \rfloor) + T(\lceil m/2 \rceil, \lceil n/2 \rceil) + T(\lfloor m/2 \rfloor, \lceil n/2 \rceil)$$

I can solve this recurrence. Set $U(i,j) = T(2^i,2^j)$, so

$$\begin{array}{lcl} U(i,0) & = & i \\ U(0,j) & = & j \\ U(i+1,j+1) & = & 1+3\,U(i,j) \end{array}$$

The solution is $U(i,j) = 3^k(|j-i|+1/2) - 1/2$, where $k = i \min j$, as one can check by induction. Hence, if $m \le n$ we have

$$T(m,n) \le 3^{\log m} \log(2n/m) = m^{1.59} \log(2n/m)$$

That's better than m + n when m is much smaller than n.

Jack: I don't think the three-rectangle solution is as good as the two-rectangle one. Following your approach, Theo, let me set $U(i,j) = T(2^i, 2^j)$. Supposing $i \leq j$ and making a horizontal cut, we have

$$U(0,j) = j$$

 $U(i+1,j+1) = 1 + U(i,j) + U(i,j+1)$

The solution is $U(i,j) = 2^{i}(j-i/2+1) - 1$, as one can check by induction. Hence

$$T(m,n) \le m \log(2n/\sqrt{m})$$

If $i \geq j$ we should make a vertical cut rather than a horizontal one; then we get an algorithm with at most $n \log(2m/\sqrt{n})$ evaluations of f. In either case, if one of m or n is much smaller than the other we get a better algorithm than saddleback search.

Anne: While you two have been solving recurrences I have been thinking of a lower bound on the complexity of *invert*. Consider the different possible outputs when we have an $m \times n$ rectangle to search. Suppose there are A(m,n) different possible answers. Each test of f(x,y) against z has three possible outcomes, so the height h of the ternary tree of tests has to satisfy $h \ge \log_3 A(m,n)$. Provided we can estimate A(m,n) this gives us a lower bound on the number of tests that have to be performed. The situation is the same with sorting n items by binary comparisons; there are n! possible outcomes, so any sorting algorithm has to make at least $\log_2 n!$ comparisons in the worst case.

It is easy to estimate A(m, n): each list of pairs (x, y) in the range $0 \le x < n$ and $0 \le y < m$ with f(x, y) = z is in a one-to-one correspondence with a step shape from the top-left corner of the $m \times n$ rectangle to the bottom-right corner, in which the value z appears at the inner corners of the steps. Of course, this step shape is not necessarily the one traced by the function find. The number of such paths is $\binom{m+n}{n}$, so that is the value of A(m,n).

Another way to see this result is to suppose there are k solutions. The value z can appear in k rows in exactly $\binom{m}{k}$ ways, and for each way there are $\binom{n}{k}$ possible choices for the columns. Hence

$$A(m,n) = \sum_{k=0}^{m} {m \choose k} {n \choose k} = {m+n \choose n}$$

since the summation is an instance of Vandermonde's convolution; see Graham et al. (1989). Taking logarithms, we obtain the lower bound

$$\log A(m,n) = \Omega(m\log(1+n/m) + n\log(1+m/n))$$

This estimate shows that when m=n we cannot do better than $\Omega(m+n)$ steps. But if $m \leq n$ then $m \leq n \log(1+m/n)$, since $x \leq \log(1+x)$ if $0 \leq x \leq 1$. Thus $A(m,n) = \Omega(m \log(n/m))$. Jack's solution does not quite achieve this bound because he obtains only an $O(m \log(n/\sqrt{m}))$ algorithm in the case $m \leq n$.

Mary: I don't think that Jack's divide and conquer solution is really necessary; there are other ways of using binary search to solve the problem. One is simply to carry out m binary searches, one on each row. That gives an $O(m \log n)$ solution. But I think we can do better and achieve the optimal asymptotic $O(m \log(n/m))$ bound, assuming $m \le n$.

Suppose, as before, we have confined the search to a rectangle with top-left corner (u,v) and bottom-right corner (r,s). Thus, there are r-u columns and s-v rows. Furthermore, assume $v-s \le r-u$, so there at least as many columns as rows. Suppose we carry out a binary search along the middle row, q=(v+s) div 2, in order to determine a p such that $f(p,q) \le z < f(p+1,q)$. If f(p,q) < z, then we need continue the search only on the two rectangles ((u,v),(p,q+1)) and ((p+1,q-1),(r,s)). If f(p,q)=z then we can cut out column p and can continue the search only on the rectangles ((u,v),(p-1,q+1)) and ((p+1,q-1),(r,s)). The reasoning is dual if there are more rows than columns. As a result, we can eliminate about half the elements of the array with a logarithmic number of probes.

```
find (u,v)(r,s) f z
        u > r \lor v < s
                         =
                         = rfind (bsearch (\lambda x \rightarrow f(x, q)) (u-1, r+1) z)
        v-s < r-u
        otherwise
                         = cfind (bsearch (\lambda y \rightarrow f(p,y)) (s-1,v+1) z)
  where
                    = (u+r) \operatorname{div} 2
                    = (v+s) \operatorname{div} 2
                   = (if f(p,q) = z then (p,q): find (u,v) (p-1,q+1) f(z)
                         else find (u, v) (p, q+1) f z) +
                        find (p+1, q-1) (r, s) f z
          cfind q = find (u, v) (p-1, q+1) f z +
                         (if f(p,q) = z then(p,q): find (p+1,q-1)(r,s) f z
                         else find (p+1,q)(r,s) f(z)
```

Fig. 3.1 The revised definition of find

Here is the algorithm I have in mind: we implement *invert* by

```
invert f z = find(0, m)(n, 0) f z

where m = bsearch(\lambda y \rightarrow f(0, y))(-1, z+1) z

n = bsearch(\lambda x \rightarrow f(x, 0))(-1, z+1) z
```

where find(u, v)(r, s) f z, given in Figure 3.1, searches a rectangle with top-left corner (u, v) and bottom-right corner (r, s).

As to the analysis, again let T(m,n) denote the number of evaluations required to search an $m \times n$ rectangle. Suppose $m \leq n$. In the best case, when for example each binary search on a row returns the leftmost or rightmost element, we have $T(m,n) = \log n + T(m/2,n)$ with solution $T(m,n) = O(\log m \times \log n)$. In the worst case, when each binary search returns the middle element, we have

$$T(m,n) = \log n + 2T(m/2, n/2)$$

To solve this, set $U(i,j) = T(2^i, 2^j)$. Then we have

$$U(i,j) = \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} 2^k (j-k) = O(2^i (j-i))$$

Hence $T(m, n) = O(m \log(n/m))$. This is asymptotically optimal by Anne's lower bound.

Teacher: Well done the four of you! It is surprising that in the 25 years or so that saddleback search has been presented as a paradigm of formal program construction nobody has seemed to notice that it is not asymptotically the best algorithm for searching.

Algorithm	f_0	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4
Anne	7501	5011	6668	5068	9989
Theo	2537	38	1749	157	5025
Marv	121	42	445	181	134

Fig. 3.2 Number of evaluations

Algorithm	f_0	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4
Anne	0.42	0.40	0.17	0.15	0.54
Theo	0.06	0.01	0.05	0.01	0.15
Mary	0.01	0.01	0.02	0.02	0.01

Fig. 3.3 Absolute running times

Afterword

The real story behind this pearl was that I decided to use saddleback search as an exercise when interviewing candidates for entry to Oxford. They were given a two-dimensional array of numbers, increasing along each row and up each column and asked for a systematic way to spot all occurrences of a given number. My aim was to get them to realise that searching from the top-left or bottom-right was a good strategy. But those candidates who had done some computing at school kept wanting to use binary search, either by going for the middle of each row or for the middle element of the rectangle. Thinking that saddleback search was the gold standard for this problem, I steered them away from pursuing the thought. Only afterwards did I wonder whether they might have had a point.

Apart from describing a new algorithm for an old problem, I think that two other methodological aspects are worthy of note. First, formal program calculation is heavily influenced by the available computational methods of the target language. While nobody would say it was elegant, Mary's final program is simple enough, given recursion and list concatenation as basic constructs, but would be more difficult to express with just arrays and loops. Second, as algorithm designers fully appreciate, formal program calculation has to be supplemented by insight into possible directions for improving efficiency. Such insight is provided, in part, by solving recurrence relations and determining lower bounds.

This pearl originally appeared in Bird (2006). One of the referees of the original paper wrote:

Complexity brings with it its own efficiency overheads, which are so often neglected in the sort of analyses included in the paper. If the author really wants to convince us that his algorithms are better than Gries's, then he should show some concrete evidence. Run the algorithm for specific functions on specific data, and compare the results.

Figures 3.2 and 3.3 provide such evidence. Five functions were chosen almost at random:

$$f_0(x,y) = 2^y(2x+1) - 1$$

$$f_1(x,y) = x2^x + y2^y + 2x + y$$

$$f_2(x,y) = 3x + 27y + y^2$$

$$f_3(x,y) = x^2 + y^2 + x + y$$

$$f_4(x,y) = x + 2^y + y - 1$$

Figure 3.2 lists the exact number of evaluations of f_i required in the computation of invert f_i 5000 using Anne's initial version of saddleback search, Theo's version (with binary search to compute the boundaries) and Mary's final version. Figure 3.3 lists absolute running times in seconds under GHCi. The close correspondence with the first table shows that the number of evaluations is a reasonable guide to absolute running time.

References

Backhouse, R. (1986). Program Construction and Verification. International Series in Computer Science. Prentice Hall.

Bird, R. (2006). Improving saddleback search: a lesson in algorithm design. Mathematics of Program Construction, LNCS 4014, pp. 82–9.

Dijkstra, E. W. (1985). The saddleback search. EWD-934.

http://www.cs.utexas.edu/users/EWD/index09xx.html.

Gries, D. (1981). The Science of Programming. Springer-Verlag.

Graham, R. L., Knuth, D. E. and Patashnik, O. (1989). Concrete Mathematics. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

A selection problem

Introduction

Let X and Y be two finite disjoint sets of elements over some ordered type and of combined size greater than k. Consider the problem of computing the kth smallest element of $X \cup Y$. By definition, the kth smallest element of a set is one for which there are exactly k elements smaller than it, so the zeroth smallest is the smallest. How long does such a computation take?

The answer depends, of course, on how the sets X and Y are represented. If they are both given as sorted lists, then O(|X|+|Y|) steps are sufficient. The two lists can be merged in linear time and the kth smallest can be found at position k in the merged list in a further O(k) steps. In fact, the total time is O(k) steps, since only the first k+1 elements of the merged list need be computed. But if the two sets are given as sorted arrays, then – as we show below – the time can further be reduced to $O(\log |X| + \log |Y|)$ steps. This bound depends on arrays having a constant-time access function. The same bound is attainable if both X and Y are represented by balanced binary search trees, despite the fact that two such trees cannot be merged in less than linear time.

The fast algorithm is another example of divide and conquer, and the proof that it works hinges on a particular relationship between merging and selection. Our aim in this pearl is to spell out the relationship, calculate the list-based divide and conquer algorithm and then implement it for the array representation of lists.

Formalisation and first steps

In terms of two sorted disjoint lists xs and ys, the problem is to compute

```
smallest :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow Int \rightarrow ([a], [a]) \rightarrow a

smallest \ k \ (xs, ys) = union \ (xs, ys) !! \ k
```

The value of $xs \,!! \, k$ is the element of xs at position k, counting from zero. The function $union :: Ord \, a \Rightarrow ([a], [a]) \rightarrow [a]$ for merging two disjoint lists, each in increasing order, is defined by

```
union (xs, []) = xs

union ([], ys) = ys

union (x : xs, y : ys) | x < y = x : union (xs, y : ys)

| x > y = y : union (x : xs, ys)
```

Our aim is to derive a divide and conquer algorithm for smallest, so we need some decomposition rules for !! and union. For the former, abbreviating $length \ xs \ to \ |xs|$, we have

$$(xs + ys)!!k =$$
if $k < |xs|$ **then** $xs!!k$ **else** $ys!!(k-|xs|)$ (4.1)

The straightforward proof is omitted. For *union* we have the following property. Suppose xs + ys and us + vs are two sorted disjoint lists such that

$$union(xs, vs) = xs + vs$$
 and $union(us, ys) = us + ys$

In other words, no element of xs is greater than or equal to any element of vs; similarly for us and ys. Then

$$union(xs + ys, us + vs) = union(xs, us) + union(ys, vs)$$
 (4.2)

It is instructive to rewrite (4.2) using an infix symbol \cup for union:

$$(xs + ys) \cup (us + vs) = (xs \cup us) + (ys \cup vs)$$

Compare this with the similar identity involving list difference $\$:

$$(xs + ys) \setminus (us + vs) = (xs \setminus us) + (ys \setminus vs)$$

which holds when $xs \setminus vs = xs$ and $ys \setminus us = ys$. When two operators, # and \cup , or # and \setminus , interact in this way, they are said to $abide^2$ with one another. The abides property (4.2) of # and \cup is, we hope, sufficiently clear that we can omit a formal proof.

In what follows, the condition union(xs, ys) = xs + ys is abbreviated to $xs \triangleleft ys$. Thus, $xs \triangleleft ys$ if $x \lessdot y$ for all elements x of xs and y of ys. Note that, restricted to nonempty lists, \triangleleft is a transitive relation.

¹ Used in Pearl 1: "The smallest free number".

^{2 &}quot;Abide" is a contraction of above-beside, in analogy with two operations on picture objects, one placing two equal-height pictures beside one another, and the other placing two equal-width pictures one above the other.

Divide and conquer

The aim of this section is to decompose the expression

$$smallest\ k\ (xs + [a] + ys, us + [b] + vs)$$

We deal only with the case a < b, since the case a > b, is entirely dual. The key point is that $(xs + [a]) \triangleleft ([b] + vs)$ if a < b because all lists are in increasing order.

Assume first that k < |xs + [a] + us|, which is equivalent to $k \le |xs + us|$. We calculate:

$$smallest \ k \ (xs + [a] + ys, us + [b] + vs)$$

$$= \{definition\}$$

$$union \ (xs + [a] + ys, us + [b] + vs) !! \ k$$

$$= \{choose \ ys_1 \ and \ ys_2 \ so \ that \ ys = ys_1 + ys_2 \ and \ (xs + [a] + ys_1) \lhd ([b] + vs) \ and \ us \lhd ys_2\}$$

$$union \ (xs + [a] + ys_1 + ys_2, us + [b] + vs) !! \ k$$

$$= \{abides \ property \ of \ + \ and \ \cup \ and \ choice \ of \ ys_1 \ and \ ys_2\}$$

$$(union \ (xs + [a] + ys_1, us) + union \ (ys_2, [b] + vs)) !! \ k$$

$$= \{using \ (4.1) \ and \ assumption \ that \ k < |xs + [a] + us|\}$$

$$union \ (xs + [a] + ys_1, us) !! \ k$$

$$= \{using \ (4.1) \ again\}$$

$$(union \ (xs + [a] + ys_1, us) + union \ (ys_2, []) !! \ k$$

$$= \{abides \ property \ again, \ since \ xs + [a] + ys_1 \lhd []\}$$

$$union \ (xs + [a] + ys_1 + ys_2, us + []) !! \ k$$

$$= \{definition \ of \ ys \ and \ smallest \}$$

$$smallest \ k \ (xs + [a] + ys, us)$$

Next, assume that $k \ge |xs + [a] + us|$. A symmetric argument gives

$$smallest \ k \ (xs + [a] + ys, us + [b] + vs)$$

$$= \{definition\}$$

$$union \ (xs + [a] + ys, us + [b] + vs) !! \ k$$

$$= \{choose \ us_1 \ and \ us_2 \ so \ that \ us = us_1 + us_2 \ and$$

$$us_1 \triangleleft ys \ and \ (xs + [a]) \triangleleft (us_2 + [b] + vs)\}$$

$$union \ (xs + [a] + ys, us_1 + us_2 + [b] + vs) !! \ k$$

$$= \{abides \ property \ of + and \cup and \ choice \ of \ us_1 \ and \ us_2\}$$

$$(union \ (xs + [a], us_1) + union \ (ys, us_2 + [b] + vs)) !! \ k$$

```
 = \{ \text{using } (4.1) \text{ and assumption that } k \ge |xs + [a] + us| \} 
 union (ys, us_2 + [b] + vs) !! (k - |xs + [a] + us_1|) 
 = \{ \text{using } (4.1) \text{ again} \} 
 (union ([], us_1) + union (ys, us_2 + [b] + vs)) !! (k - |xs + [a]|) 
 = \{ \text{as before} \} 
 smallest (k - |xs + [a]|) (ys, us_2 + [b] + vs)
```

Summarising, we have that if a < b, then

```
smallest k (xs + [a] + ys, us + [b] + vs)

| k \le p+q = smallest \ k \ (xs + [a] + ys, us)

| k > p+q = smallest \ (k-p-1) \ (ys, us + [b] + vs)

where (p,q) = (length \ xs, length \ us)
```

Entirely dual reasoning in the case a > b yields

```
smallest k (xs + [a] + ys, us + [b] + vs)

| k \le p+q = smallest \ k (xs, us + [b] + vs)

| k > p+q = smallest \ (k-q-1) \ (xs + [a] + ys, vs)

where (p,q) = (length \ xs, length \ us)
```

To complete the divide and conquer algorithm for *smallest* we have to consider the base cases when one or other of the argument lists is empty. This is easy, and we arrive at the following program:

```
smallest \ k \ ([\ ], ws) = ws \ !! \ k
smallest \ k \ (zs, [\ ]) = zs \ !! \ k
smallest \ k \ (zs, ws) =
\mathbf{case} \ (a < b, k \le p+q) \ \mathbf{of}
(True, True) \rightarrow smallest \ k \ (zs, us)
(True, False) \rightarrow smallest \ (k-p-1) \ (ys, ws)
(False, True) \rightarrow smallest \ k \ (xs, ws)
(False, False) \rightarrow smallest \ (k-q-1) \ (zs, vs)
\mathbf{where} \ p = (length \ zs) \ \mathrm{div} \ 2
q = (length \ ws) \ \mathrm{div} \ 2
(xs, a : ys) = splitAt \ p \ zs
(us, b : vs) = splitAt \ q \ ws
```

The running time of $smallest\ k\ (xs,ys)$ is linear in the lengths of the lists xs and ys, so the divide and conquer algorithm is no faster than the specification. The payoff comes when xs and ys are given as sorted arrays rather than lists. Then the program can be modified to run in logarithmic time in the sizes of

```
 \begin{array}{lll} search \; k \; (lx,rx) \; (ly\;ry) \\ \mid \; lx = rx & = \; ya \; ! \; k \\ \mid \; ly = ry & = \; xa \; ! \; k \\ \mid \; \textbf{otherwise} \; = \; & \textbf{case} \; (xa \; ! \; mx < ya \; ! \; my, k \leq mx + my) \; \textbf{of} \\ \mid \; (True, True) \rightarrow search \; k \; (lx,rx) \; (ly,my) \\ \mid \; \; (True, False) \rightarrow search \; (k-mx-1) \; (mx,rx) \; (ly,ry) \\ \mid \; \; (False, True) \rightarrow search \; k \; (lx,mx) \; (ly,ry) \\ \mid \; \; (False, False) \rightarrow search \; (k-my-1) \; (lx,rx) \; (my,ry) \\ \mid \; \; \textbf{where} \; mx = \; (lx + rx) \; \text{div} \; 2; \; my = \; (ly + ry) \; \text{div} \; 2 \\ \end{array}
```

Fig. 4.1 Definition of search

the arrays. Instead of repeatedly splitting the two lists, everything can be done with array indices. More precisely, a list xs is represented by an array xa and two indices (lx, rx) under the abstraction xs = map(xa!)[lx..rx-1], where (!) is the array indexing operator in the Haskell library Data.Array. This library provides efficient operations on immutable arrays, arrays that are constructed in one go. In particular, (!) takes constant time. A list xs can be converted into an array xa indexed from zero by

```
xa = listArray (0, length xs - 1) xs
```

We can now define

```
smallest :: Int \rightarrow (Array\ Int\ a, Array\ Int\ a) \rightarrow a

smallest\ k\ (xa, ya) = search\ k\ (0, m+1)\ (0, n+1)

\mathbf{where}\ (0, m) = bounds\ xa

(0, n) = bounds\ ya
```

The function *bounds* returns the lower and upper bounds on an array, here indexed from zero. Finally, the function search, which is local to smallest because it refers to the arrays xa and ya, is given in Figure 4.1.

There is a constant amount of work at each recursive call, and each call halves one or other of the two intervals, so the running time of *search* is logarithmic.

Final remarks

Although we have phrased the problem in terms of disjoint sets represented by lists in increasing order, there is a variation on the problem in which the lists are not necessarily disjoint and are only in weakly increasing order. Such lists represents multisets or bags. Consider the computation of $merge\ (xs,ys)$!! k, where $merge\ merges$ two lists in ascending order, so $merge=uncurry\ (\land\!\land)$:

```
merge([], ys) = ys

merge(xs, []) = xs

merge(x : xs, y : ys) | x \le y = x : merge(xs, y : ys)

| x \ge y = y : merge(x : xs, ys)
```

Thus, merge has the same definition as union except that < and > are replaced by \le and \ge . Of course, the result is no longer necessarily the kth smallest element of the combined lists. Furthermore, provided we replace \lhd by \trianglelefteq , where $xs \le ys$ if $merge\ (xs, ys) = xs + ys$, and equivalently if $x \le y$ for all x in xs and y in ys, then the calculation recorded above remains valid provided the cases a < b and a > b are weakened to $a \le b$ and $a \ge b$.

As a final remark, this pearl originally appeared, under a different title, in Bird (1997). But do not look at it, because it made heavy weather of the crucial relationship between merging and selection. Subsequently, Jeremy Gibbons (1997) spotted a much simpler way to proceed, and it is really his calculation that has been recorded above.

References

Bird, R. S. (1997). On merging and selection. *Journal of Functional Programming* 7 (3), 349–54.

Gibbons, J. (1997). More on merging and selection. Technical Report CMS-TR-97-08, Oxford Brookes University, UK.

Sorting pairwise sums

Introduction

Let A be some linearly ordered set and (\oplus) :: $A \to A \to A$ some monotonic binary operation on A, so $x \leq x' \land y \leq y' \Rightarrow x \oplus y \leq x' \oplus y'$. Consider the problem of computing

Counting just comparisons, and supposing xs and ys have the same length n, how long does sortsums xs ys take?

Certainly $O(n^2 \log n)$ comparisons are sufficient. There are n^2 sums and sorting a list of length n^2 can be done with $O(n^2 \log n)$ comparisons. This upper bound does not depend on \oplus being monotonic. In fact, without further information about \oplus and A this bound is also a lower bound. The assumption that \oplus is monotonic does not reduce the asymptotic complexity, only the constant factor.

But now suppose we know more about \oplus and A: specifically that (\oplus, A) is an $Abelian\ group$. Thus, \oplus is associative and commutative, with identity element e and an operation $negate: A \to A$ such that $x \oplus negate \ x = e$. Given this extra information, Jean-Luc Lambert (1992) proved that sortsums can be computed with $O(n^2)$ comparisons. However, his algorithm also requires $Cn^2\log n$ additional operations, where C is quite large. It remains an open problem, some 35 years after it was first posed by Harper $et\ al.$ (1975), as to whether the total cost of computing sortsums can be reduced to $O(n^2)$ comparisons and $O(n^2)$ other steps.

Lambert's algorithm is another nifty example of divide and conquer. Our aim in this pearl is just to present the essential ideas and give an implementation in Haskell.

Lambert's algorithm

Let's first prove the $\Omega(n^2 \log n)$ lower bound on *sortsums* when the only assumption is that (\oplus) is monotonic. Suppose xs and ys are both sorted into increasing order and consider the $n \times n$ matrix

$$[[x \oplus y \mid y \leftarrow ys] \mid x \leftarrow xs]$$

Each row and column of the matrix is therefore in increasing order. The matrix is an example of a standard Young tableau, and it follows from Theorem H of Section 5.1.4 of Knuth (1998) that there are precisely

$$E(n) = (n^2)! \left/ \left(\frac{(2n-1)!}{(n-1)!} \frac{(2n-2)!}{(n-2)!} \cdots \frac{n!}{0!} \right) \right.$$

ways of assigning the values 1 to n^2 to the elements of the matrix, and so exactly E(n) potential permutations that sort the input. Using the fact that $\log E(n) = \Omega(n^2 \log n)$, we conclude that at least this number of comparisons is required.

Now for the meat of the exercise. Lambert's algorithm depends on two simple facts. Define the subtraction operation (\ominus) :: $A \to A \to A$ by $x \ominus y = x \oplus negate y$. Then:

$$x \oplus y = x \ominus negate y \tag{5.1}$$

$$x \ominus y \le x' \ominus y' \equiv x \ominus x' \le y \ominus y' \tag{5.2}$$

Verification of (5.1) is easy, but (5.2), which we leave as an exercise, requires all the properties of an Abelian group. In effect, (5.1) says that the problem of sorting sums can be reduced to the problem of sorting subtractions and (5.2) says that the latter problem is, in turn, reducible to the problem of sorting subtractions over a single list.

Here is how (5.1) and (5.2) are used. Consider the list subs xs ys of labelled subtractions defined by

$$\begin{array}{lll} subs & :: & [A] \rightarrow [A] \rightarrow [Label \ A] \\ subs \ xs \ ys & = & [(x \ominus y, (i,j)) \mid (x,i) \leftarrow zip \ xs \ [1..], \ (y,j) \leftarrow zip \ ys \ [1..]] \end{array}$$

where Label a is a synonym for (a, (Int, Int)). Thus, each term $x \ominus y$ is labelled with the position of x in xs and y in ys. Labelling information will be needed later on. The first fact (5.1) gives

```
sortsums \ xs \ ys = map \ fst \ (sortsubs \ xs \ (map \ negate \ ys))
sortsubs \ xs \ ys = sort \ (subs \ xs \ ys)
```

The sums are sorted by sorting the associated labelled subtractions and throwing away the labels.

The next step is to exploit (5.2) to show how to compute *sortsubs xs ys* with a quadratic number of comparisons. Construct the list *table* by

```
\begin{array}{lll} table & :: & [A] \rightarrow [A] \rightarrow [(Int,Int,Int)] \\ table \ xs \ ys & = & map \ snd \ (map \ (tag \ 1) \ xxs \ \land \ map \ (tag \ 2) \ yys) \\ & & \mathbf{where} \ xxs \ = \ sortsubs \ xs \ xs \\ & yys \ = \ sortsubs \ ys \ ys \\ tag \ i \ (x,(j,k)) & = \ (x,(i,j,k)) \end{array}
```

Here, \wedge merges two sorted lists. In words, table is constructed by merging the two sorted lists xxs and yys after first tagging each list in order to be able to determine the origin of each element in the merged list. According to (5.2), table contains sufficient information to enable sortsubs xs ys to be computed with no comparisons over A. For suppose that $x \ominus y$ has label (i, j) and $x' \ominus y'$ has label (k, ℓ) . Then $x \ominus y \le x' \ominus y'$ if and only if (1, i, k) precedes $(2, j, \ell)$ in table. No comparisons of elements of A are needed beyond those required to construct table.

To implement the idea we need to be able to compute precedence information quickly. This is most simply achieved by converting *table* into a Haskell array:

```
mkArray \ xs \ ys = array \ b \ (zip \ (table \ xs \ ys) \ [1..])

\mathbf{where} \ b = ((1,1,1),(2,p,p))

p = max \ (length \ xs) \ (length \ ys)
```

The definition of mkArray makes use of the library Data.Array of Haskell arrays. The first argument b of array is a pair of bounds, the lowest and highest indices in the array. The second argument of array is an association list of index-value pairs. With this representation, (1, i, k) precedes $(2, j, \ell)$ in table if $a!(1, i, k) < a!(2, j, \ell)$, where a = mkArray xs ys. The array indexing operation (!) takes constant time, so a precedence test takes constant time. We can now compute sortsubs xs ys using the Haskell utility function sortBy:

```
sortsubs \ xs \ ys = sortBy \left(cmp \left(mkArray \ xs \ ys\right)\right) \left(subs \ xs \ ys\right)
cmp \ a \left(x, (i, j)\right) \left(y, (k, \ell)\right)
= compare \left(a \ ! \ (1, i, k)\right) \left(a \ ! \ (2, j, \ell)\right)
```

The function *compare* is a method in the type class Ord. In particular, $sort = sortBy \ compare$ and $(\land\land) = mergeBy \ compare$. We omit the divide and conquer definition of sortBy in terms of mergeBy.

The program so far is summarised in Figure 5.1. It is complete apart from the definition of sortsubs', where sortsubs' xs = sortsubs xs xs. However, this definition cannot be used in sortsums because the recursion would not be

```
sortsums xs us
                  = map fst (sortsubs xs (map negate ys))
sortsubs xs ys
                      sortBy (cmp (mkArray xs ys)) (subs xs ys)
subs\ xs\ ys = [(x\ominus y,(i,j)) \mid (x,i) \leftarrow zip\ xs\ [1..],(y,j) \leftarrow zip\ ys\ [1..]]
cmp\ a\ (x,(i,j))\ (y,(k,\ell) = compare\ (a!(1,i,k))\ (a!(2,j,\ell))
                      array\ b\ (zip\ (table\ xs\ ys)\ [1..])
mkArray xs ys =
                       where b = ((1, 1, 1), (2, p, p))
                               p = max (length xs) (length ys)
table xs ys
                      map \ snd \ (map \ (tag \ 1) \ xxs \land map \ (tag \ 2) \ yys)
                      where xxs = sortsubs' xs
                                          sortsubs' ys
                                     =
                               yys
tag\ i\ (x,(j,k)) = (x,(i,j,k))
```

Fig. 5.1 The complete code for sortsums, except for sortsubs'

well founded. Although computing $sortsubs\ xs\ ys$ takes $O(mn\log mn)$ steps, it uses no comparisons on A beyond those needed to construct table. And table needs only $O(m^2+n^2)$ comparisons plus those comparisons needed to construct $sortsubs'\ xs$ and $sortsubs'\ ys$. What remains is to show how to compute sortsubs' with a quadratic number of comparisons.

Divide and conquer

Ignoring labels for the moment and writing $xs \ominus ys$ for $[x \ominus y \mid x \leftarrow xs, y \leftarrow ys]$, the key to a divide and conquer algorithm is the identity

```
(xs + ys) \ominus (xs + ys)
= (xs \ominus xs) + (xs \ominus ys) + (ys \ominus xs) + (ys \ominus ys)
```

Hence, to sort the list on the left, we can sort the four lists on the right and merge them together. The presence of labels complicates the divide and conquer algorithm slightly because the labels have to be adjusted correctly. The labelled version reads

```
subs (xs + ys) (xs + ys)
= subs xs xs + map (incr m) (subs xs ys) + map (incl m) (subs ys xs) + map (incb m) (subs ys ys)
```

where m = length xs and

```
incl \ m \ (x, (i, j)) = (x, (m+i, j))

incr \ m \ (x, (i, j)) = (x, (i, m+j))

incb \ m \ (x, (i, j)) = (x, (m+i, m+j))
```

```
sortsubs' []
sortsubs'[w]
                    [(w \ominus w, (1,1))]
sortsubs' ws
                   foldr1 (\land \land) [xxs, map (incr m) xus.
                                map (incl m) yxs, map (incb m) yys
  where xxs
                         sortsubs' xs
                         sortBy (cmp (mkArray xs ys)) (subs xs ys)
          xus
                    =
                         map switch (reverse xys)
          yxs
                         sortsubs' us
          yys
                         splitAt m ws
          (xs, ys)
                         length ws div 2
incl\ m\ (x,(i,j))
                        (x,(m+i,j))
incr \ m \ (x,(i,j))
                        (x,(i,m+j))
incb \ m \ (x,(i,j))
                        (x, (m+i, m+j))
switch(x,(i,j))
                   =
                       (negate \ x, (j, i))
```

Fig. 5.2 The code for sortsubs'

```
sortsubs\ ys\ xs = map\ switch\ (reverse\ (sortsubs\ xs\ ys)
switch\ (x,(i,j)) = (negate\ x,(j,i))
```

The program for sortsubs' is given in Figure 5.2. The number C(n) of comparisons required to compute sortsubs' on a list of length n satisfies the recurrence $C(n) = 2C(n/2) + O(n^2)$ with solution $C(n) = O(n^2)$. That means sortsums can be computed with $O(n^2)$ comparisons. However, the total time T(n) satisfies $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + O(n^2 \log n)$ with solution $T(n) = O(n^2 \log n)$. The logarithmic factor can be removed from T(n) if $sortBy \ cmp$ can be computed in quadratic time, but this result remains elusive. In any case, the additional complexity arising from replacing comparisons by other operations makes the algorithm very inefficient in practice.

Final remarks

The problem of sorting pairwise sums is given as Problem 41 in the Open Problems Project (Demaine *et al.*, 2009), a web resource devoted to recording open problems of interest to researchers in computational geometry and related fields. The earliest known reference to the problem is Fedman (1976),

who attributes the problem to Elwyn Berlekamp. All these references consider the problem in terms of numbers rather than Abelian groups, but the idea is the same.

References

- Demaine, E. D., Mitchell, J. S. B. and O'Rourke, J. (2009). The Open Problems Project. http://mave,smith.edu/~orourke/TOPP/.
- Fedman, M. L. (1976). How good is the information theory lower bound in sorting? Theoretical Computer Science 1, 355–61.
- Harper, L. H., Payne, T. H., Savage, J. E. and Straus, E. (1975). Sorting X + Y. Communications of the ACM 18 (6), 347–9.
- Knuth, D. E. (1998). The Art of Computer Programming: Volume 3, Sorting and Searching, second edition. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
- Lambert, J.-L. (1992). Sorting the sums $(x_i + y_j)$ in $O(n^2)$ comparisons. Theoretical Computer Science 103, 137–41.

Making a century

Introduction

The problem of making a century is to list all the ways the operations + and \times can be inserted into the list of digits [1..9] so as to make a total of 100. Two such ways are:

```
100 = 12 + 34 + 5 \times 6 + 7 + 8 + 9
100 = 1 + 2 \times 3 + 4 + 5 + 67 + 8 + 9
```

Note that no parentheses are allowed in expressions and \times binds more tightly than +. The only way to solve the problem seems to be by searching through all possible expressions, in other words to carry out an *exhaustive search*. The primary aim of this pearl is to examine a little of the theory of exhaustive search in order to identify any features that can improve its performance. The theory is then applied to the problem of making a century.

A little theory

We begin with the three types *Data*, *Candidate* and *Value* and three functions:

candidates :: $Data \rightarrow [Candidate]$ value :: $Candidate \rightarrow Value$ qood :: $Value \rightarrow Bool$

These three functions are be used to construct a function solutions:

```
solutions :: Data \rightarrow [Candidate]

solutions = filter(good \cdot value) \cdot candidates
```

The function solutions carries out an exhaustive search through the list of candidates to find all those having good value. No special steps have to be taken if only one answer is required because lazy evaluation will ensure that only the work needed to evaluate the first solution will be performed. Apart

from this general remark about the benefits of lazy evaluation, nothing much more can be said about *solutions* unless we make some assumptions about the ingredients.

The first assumption is that Data is a list of values, say [Datum], and that $candidates :: [Datum] \rightarrow [Candidate]$ takes the form

$$candidates = foldr \ extend \ [\]$$
 (6.1)

where $extend :: Datum \rightarrow [Candidate] \rightarrow [Candidate]$ is some function that builds a list of extended candidates from a given datum and a list of candidates.

The second assumption is in two parts. First, there is a predicate ok such that every good value is necessarily an ok value, so $good\ v \Rightarrow ok\ v$ for all v. Hence

$$filter(qood \cdot value) = filter(qood \cdot value) \cdot filter(ok \cdot value)$$
 (6.2)

The second part is that candidates with ok values are the extensions of candidates with ok values:

$$filter (ok \cdot value) \cdot extend x$$

$$= filter (ok \cdot value) \cdot extend x \cdot filter (ok \cdot value)$$
(6.3)

Using these assumptions, we calculate:

```
solutions
= \{definition of solutions\}
filter (good \cdot value) \cdot candidates
= \{equation (6.1)\}
filter (good \cdot value) \cdot foldr \ extend []
= \{equation (6.2)\}
filter (good \cdot value) \cdot filter (ok \cdot value) \cdot foldr \ extend []
= \{with \ extend' \ x = filter (ok \cdot value) \cdot extend \ x; \ see \ below\}
filter (good \cdot value) \cdot foldr \ extend' []
```

We have shown that

$$solutions = filter (good \cdot value) \cdot foldr \ extend' []$$

The new version of *solutions* is better than the previous one, as a potentially much smaller list of candidates is constructed at each stage, namely only those with an ok value. On the other hand, the function value is recomputed at each evaluation of extend'.

We can avoid recomputing value with the help of yet a third assumption:

$$map\ value \cdot extend\ x = modify\ x \cdot map\ value$$
 (6.4)

Assumption (6.4) states that the values of an extended set of candidates can be obtained by modifying the values of the candidates out of which the extensions are built.

Suppose we redefine *candidates* to read

$$candidates = map(fork(id, value)) \cdot foldr \ extend'[]$$

where fork(f, g)x = (fx, gx). The new version of *candidates* returns a list of pairs of candidates and their values. The form of the new definition suggests another appeal to the fusion law of foldr. For the main fusion condition we have to find a function, *expand* say, satisfying

$$\mathit{map}\;(\mathit{fork}\;(\mathit{id},\mathit{value})) \cdot \mathit{extend'}\;x \quad = \quad \mathit{expand}\;x \cdot \mathit{map}\;(\mathit{fork}\;(\mathit{id},\mathit{value}))$$

Then we obtain $candidates = foldr \ expand \ [\].$

We are going to use simple equational reasoning to discover expand. In order to do so, we need a number of combinatorial laws about fork, laws that are used in many program calculations. The first law is that

$$fst \cdot fork(f, g) = f \quad and \quad snd \cdot fork(f, g) = g$$
 (6.5)

The second law is a simple fusion law:

$$fork(f,g) \cdot h = fork(f \cdot h, g \cdot h)$$
 (6.6)

For the third law, define cross by cross(f, g)(x, y) = (f x, g y). Then we have

$$fork (f \cdot h, g \cdot k) = cross (f, g) \cdot fork (h, k)$$
 (6.7)

The next two laws relate fork to two functions, zip and unzip. The function unzip is defined by

$$unzip$$
 :: $[(a,b)] \rightarrow ([a],[b])$
 $unzip$ = $fork (map fst, map snd)$

and $zip :: ([a], [b]) \to [(a, b)]$ is specified by the condition $zip \cdot unzip = id$. In particular, we can reason:

$$unzip \cdot map (fork (f, g))$$

$$= \{definition of unzip\}$$

$$fork (map fst, map snd) \cdot map (fork (f, g))$$

$$= \{(6.6) \text{ and } map (f \cdot g) = map f \cdot map g\}$$

$$fork (map (fst \cdot fork (f, g)), map (snd \cdot fork (f, g)))$$

$$= \{(6.5)\}$$

$$fork (map f, map g)$$

Hence

$$fork (map f, map g) = unzip \cdot map (fork (f, g))$$
 (6.8)

Using $zip \cdot unzip = id$ we have from (6.8) that

$$map (fork (f, g)) = zip \cdot fork (map f, map g)$$
 (6.9)

The final law relates fork to filter:

$$map (fork (f, g)) \cdot filter (p \cdot g)$$

$$= filter (p \cdot snd) \cdot map (fork (f, g))$$
(6.10)

Evaluating the expression on the right is more efficient than evaluating the expression on the left because g is evaluated just once for each element of the argument list.

Having identified the various plumbing combinators and the rules that relate them, we are ready for the final calculation:

$$map (fork (id, value)) \cdot extend' x$$

$$= \{definition of extend'\}$$

$$map (fork (id, value)) \cdot filter (ok \cdot value) \cdot extend x$$

$$= \{(6.10)\}$$

$$filter (ok \cdot snd) \cdot map (fork (id, value)) \cdot extend x$$

We now focus on the second two terms, and continue:

$$map (fork (id, value)) \cdot extend x$$

$$= \{(6.9) \text{ and } map \ id = id\}$$

$$zip \cdot fork (id, map \ value) \cdot extend x$$

 $^{^1}$ The Haskell function $zip::[a] \rightarrow [b] \rightarrow [(a,b)]$ is defined as a curried function.

```
= \{(6.6)\}
zip \cdot fork \ (extend \ x, map \ value \cdot extend \ x)
= \{(6.4)\}
zip \cdot fork \ (extend \ x, modify \ x \cdot map \ value)
= \{(6.7)\}
zip \cdot cross \ (extend \ x, modify \ x) \cdot fork \ (id, map \ value)
= \{(6.8)\}
zip \cdot cross \ (extend \ x, modify \ x) \cdot unzip \cdot map \ (fork \ (id, value))
```

Putting the two calculations together, we arrive at

```
solutions = map fst \cdot filter (good \cdot snd) \cdot foldr \ expand \ [\ ]
expand \ x = filter (ok \cdot snd) \cdot zip \cdot cross (extend \ x, modify \ x) \cdot unzip
```

This is our final version of *solutions*. It depends only on the definitions of good, ok, extend and modify. The term $foldr\ expand\ [\]$ builds a list of candidates along with their values, and solutions picks those candidates whose values satisfy good. The function $expand\ x$ builds an extended list of candidates, maintaining the property that all extended candidates have values that satisfy ok.

Making a century

Let us now return to the problem in hand, which was to list all the ways the operations + and \times can be inserted into the list of digits [1..9] so as to make a total of 100.

Candidate solutions are expressions built from + and \times . Each expression is the sum of a list of terms, each term is the product of a list of factors and each factor is a list of digits. That means we can define expressions, terms and factors just with the help of suitable type synonyms:

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{type} & \textit{Expression} & = & [\textit{Term}] \\ \textbf{type} & \textit{Term} & = & [\textit{Factor}] \\ \textbf{type} & \textit{Factor} & = & [\textit{Digit}] \\ \textbf{type} & \textit{Digit} & = & \textit{Int} \end{array}
```

Thus, Expression is synonymous with [[[Int]]].

The value of an expression is given by a function valExpr, defined by

```
valExpr :: Expression \rightarrow Int

valExpr = sum \cdot map \ valTerm
```

```
valTerm :: Term \rightarrow Int

valTerm = product \cdot map \ valFact

valFact :: Factor \rightarrow Int

valFact = foldl1 \ (\lambda n \ d \rightarrow 10 * n + d)
```

A good expression is one whose value is 100:

```
good :: Int \rightarrow Bool

good v = (v = 100)
```

To complete the formulation we need to define a function expressions that generates a list of all possible expressions that can be built out of a given list of digits. We can do this in two ways. One is to invoke the standard function partitions of type $[a] \rightarrow [[[a]]]$ that partitions a list into one or more sublists in all possible ways. If we apply partitions to a list of digits xs we get a list of all possible ways of splitting xs into a list of factors. Then, by applying partitions again to each list of factors, we obtain a list of all possible ways a list of factors can be split into lists of terms. Hence

```
expressions :: [Digit] \rightarrow [Expression]

expressions = concatMap\ partitions \cdot partitions
```

Alternatively, we can define expressions by expressions = foldr extend [], where

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{extend} & :: & \textit{Digit} \rightarrow [\textit{Expression}] \rightarrow [\textit{Expression}] \\ \textit{extend} \ x \ [ \ ] & = & [[[[x]]]] \\ \textit{extend} \ x \ \textit{es} & = & \textit{concatMap} \ (\textit{glue} \ x) \ \textit{es} \\ \textit{glue} & :: & \textit{Digit} \rightarrow \textit{Expression} \rightarrow [\textit{Expression}] \\ \textit{glue} \ x \ ((xs:xss):xsss) : xsss) : xsss, \\ & ([x]:xs:xss):xsss, \\ & [[x]]:(xs:xss):xsss] \end{array}
```

To explain these definitions, observe that only one expression can be built from a single digit x, namely [[[x]]]. This justifies the first clause of extend. An expression built from more than one digit can be decomposed into a leading factor (a list of digits, xs say), a leading term (a list of factors, xss say) and a remaining expression (a list of terms, xsss say). A new digit x can be inserted into an expression in exactly three different ways: by extending the current factor on the left with the new digit, by starting a new factor or by starting a new term. This justifies the second clause of extend and the definition of glue. One advantage of the second definition is that it is immediate that there are $6561 = 3^8$ expressions one can build using the digits [1..9]; indeed, 3^{n-1} expressions for a list of n digits.

Evaluating filter $(good \cdot valExpr) \cdot expressions$ and displaying the results in a suitable fashion, yields the seven possible answers:

```
100 = 1 \times 2 \times 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 + 8 \times 9
100 = 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 + 8 \times 9
100 = 1 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 \times 8 + 9
100 = 12 + 3 \times 4 + 5 + 6 + 7 \times 8 + 9
100 = 1 + 2 \times 3 + 4 + 5 + 67 + 8 + 9
100 = 1 \times 2 + 34 + 5 + 6 \times 7 + 8 + 9
100 = 12 + 34 + 5 \times 6 + 7 + 8 + 9
```

The computation does not take too long because there are only 6561 possibilities to check. But on another day the input might consist of a different target value and many more digits, so it is worth spending a little time seeing whether the search can be improved.

According to the little theory of exhaustive search given above, we have to find some definition of ok such that all good expressions are ok expressions, and such that ok expressions are necessarily constructed out of ok sub-expressions. Given that $good\ v=(v=c)$, where c is the target value, the only sensible definition of ok is $ok\ v=(v\leq c)$. Since the only operations are + and \times , every expression with a target value c has to be built out of subexpressions with target values at most c.

We also have to find a definition of modify so that

```
map\ valExpr\cdot extend\ x\ =\ modify\ x\cdot map\ valExpr
```

Here we run into a small difficulty, because not all the values of expressions in $glue\ x\ e$ can be determined simply from the value of e: we need the values of the leading factor and leading term as well. So we define value not to be valExpr but

```
value((xs:xss):xsss) = (10^n, valFact xs, valTerm xss, valExpr xsss)

\mathbf{where} \ n = length \ xs
```

The extra first component 10^n is included simply to make the evaluation of valFact (x : xs) more efficient. Now we obtain

$$modify \ x \ (k, f, t, e) = [(10*k, k*x+f, t, e), (10, x, f*t, e), (10, x, 1, f*t+e)]$$

Accordingly, the definitions of good and ok are revised to read:

$$good\ c\ (k, f, t, e) = (f*t + e = c)$$

 $ok\ c\ (k, f, t, e) = (f*t + e \le c)$

Installing these definitions in the definition of *expand* gives a faster exhaustive search:

```
solutions c = map \ fst \cdot filter \ (good \ c \cdot snd) \cdot foldr \ (expand \ c) \ [\ ]
 expand \ c \ x = filter \ (ok \ c \cdot snd) \cdot zip \cdot cross \ (extend \ x, modify \ x) \cdot unzip
```

The definition of *expand* can be simplified to read:

The result is a program for solutions c that is many times faster than the first version. As just one experimental test, taking c = 1000 and the first 14 digits of π as input, the second version was over 200 times faster.

Final remarks

The problem of making a century is discussed in Exercise 122 of Knuth (2006), which also considers other variants of the problem, such as allowing parentheses and other arithmetical operators; see also the Countdown pearl later in the book (Pearl 20). One moral of the exercise is that, when seeking candidates whose value satisfies some criterion, it is a good idea to combine the generation of the candidates with the generation of their values. That way, we can avoid recomputing values. Usually, it is clear enough how to do this directly without formally instantiating the recipe described above, but it is nice to know that a recipe does exist. The other moral is that it is useful to see whether or not a good value can be weakened to some kind of ok value that can be maintained for all candidates. That way, the set of candidates that have to be considered is reduced in size.

References

Knuth, D. E. (2006). The Art of Computer Programming, Volume 4, Fascicle 4: Generating All Trees. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

Building a tree with minimum height

Introduction

Consider the problem of building a leaf-labelled tree of minimum height with a given list of integers as fringe. Leaf-labelled trees are defined by

data Tree = Leaf Int | Fork Tree Tree

and the fringe of a tree is the list of labels at the leaves in left-to-right order. There are two well-known algorithms for this problem, both of which can be implemented in linear time. One is recursive, or top-down, and works by splitting the list into two equal halves, recursively building a tree for each half, and then combining the two results with a *Fork*. The other method is iterative, or bottom-up, and works by first turning the fringe into a list of leaves and then repeatedly combining all adjacent pairs until just one tree remains. The two methods will lead to different trees, but in each case the result is a tree with minimum height.

The form of the bottom-up algorithm suggests an intriguing generalisation: given an arbitrary list of trees together with their heights, is there a linear-time algorithm to combine them into a single tree of minimum height? The restriction, of course, is that the trees should appear as subtrees of the final tree in the same order as they appear in the list. In the special case that the input is a list of leaves, the problem reduces to the one above, but there is no immediate reason why the more general problem should be solvable in linear time. Nevertheless, our aim in this pearl is to derive precisely such an algorithm.

First steps

An alternative, but equivalent, version of the problem is to ask: given a sequence $xs = [x_1, x_2, ..., x_n]$ of natural numbers (representing the heights of the given trees), can one find a linear-time algorithm to build a tree with fringe xs that minimises cost, where

```
cost (Leaf x) = x

cost (Fork u v) = 1 + (cost u max cost v)
```

Thus, cost has the same definition as height except that the "height" of $Leaf\ x$ is x rather than zero.

Formulated in this way, the problem is to compute

```
mincostTree = minBy cost \cdot trees
```

where *trees* builds all possible trees with a given fringe and *minBy cost* selects one with minimum cost. A constructive definition of *trees* can be formulated in a number of ways, following either a top-down or bottom-up scheme. However, we are going for a third option, namely an inductive algorithm:

```
trees :: [Int] \rightarrow [Tree]

trees [x] = [Leaf x]

trees (x : xs) = concatMap (prefixes x) (trees xs)
```

The Haskell function $concatMap\ f$ abbreviates $concat \cdot map\ f$. The value $prefixes\ x\ t$ is a list of all the ways x can be inserted as a leftmost leaf in the tree t:

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{prefixes} & :: & \textit{Int} \rightarrow \textit{Tree} \rightarrow [\textit{Tree}] \\ \textit{prefixes} \ \textit{x} \ \textit{t}@(\textit{Leaf} \ \textit{y}) & = & [\textit{Fork} \ (\textit{Leaf} \ \textit{x}) \ \textit{t}] \\ \textit{prefixes} \ \textit{x} \ \textit{t}@(\textit{Fork} \ \textit{u} \ \textit{v}) & = & [\textit{Fork} \ (\textit{Leaf} \ \textit{x}) \ \textit{t}] \ \textit{++} \\ & [\textit{Fork} \ \textit{u}' \ \textit{v} \ \mid \ \textit{u}' \leftarrow \textit{prefixes} \ \textit{x} \ \textit{u}] \end{array}
```

We could have taken trees [] = [], and so defined trees as an instance of foldr. But minBy cost is not defined on an empty set of trees and it is best to restrict the input to nonempty lists. Haskell does not provide a general fold function on nonempty lists (the function foldr1 is not quite general enough), but if we define foldrn by

```
\begin{array}{lll} foldrn & :: & (a \rightarrow b \rightarrow b) \rightarrow (a \rightarrow b) \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow b \\ foldrn \ f \ g \ [x] & = & g \ x \\ foldrn \ f \ g \ (x : xs) & = & f \ x \ (foldrn \ f \ g \ xs) \end{array}
```

then trees can be expressed as an instance of foldrn:

```
trees = foldrn (concatMap \cdot prefixes) (wrap \cdot Leaf)

wrap x = [x]
```

Wherever there are trees there are also forests, and many definitions involving the former can be phrased, often more cleanly, in terms of the latter. So it is with *trees*. A cleaner definition is obtained by first building a list of forests (where a forest is itself a list of trees) and then rolling up each forest into a tree:

In this version of *trees* each forest represents the *left spine* of a tree; that is, the sequence of right subtrees along the path from leftmost leaf to the root. The first element in the spine is the leftmost leaf itself. Rolling up the spine gives the tree. We prefer the second definition of *prefixes* to the first because it reveals more clearly what is going on in building the final trees. We will come back to this definition of *trees* later on.

It remains to define $minBy\ cost:[Tree] \to Tree$. The requirement is that it should return some tree with minimum cost:

```
minBy\ cost\ ts \in ts \quad \land \quad (\forall t \in ts: cost\ (minBy\ cost\ ts) \leq cost\ t)
```

The output is not determined uniquely by this specification, so minBy cost is a nondeterministic function. One can implement it by defining

```
minBy f = foldl1 (cmp f)

cmp f u v = if f u \le f v then u else v
```

But this implementation selects the first tree in ts with minimum cost, and so depends on the order in which the trees appear in ts. An unbiased but deterministic implementation can be obtained by inventing a total linear ordering \leq that respects cost, so $u \leq v \Rightarrow cost u \leq cost v$, and replacing cmp f by cmp, where

```
cmp \ u \ v =  if u \leq v  then u  else v
```

But this definition depends on the invention of \leq and is again too specific. So we will leave $minBy\ cost$ as a nondeterministic function.

Fusion

Implemented directly, $minBy\ cost \cdot trees$ takes exponential time, and the obvious way to make it faster is to appeal to the fusion law of foldrn. In its simplest form the fusion law states

```
h (foldrn f g xs) = foldrn f' g' xs
```

for all finite nonempty lists xs provided h(gx) = g'x and h(fxy) = f'x(hy) for all x and y. However, asking for equality of both terms when h is a nondeterministic function is unreasonable: we need only that the right-hand term is a refinement of the left-hand one. Suppose we define $fx \rightsquigarrow gx$ to mean that the set of possible outputs of fx includes the (nonempty) set of possible outputs of fx. In particular, if fx is a normal deterministic function, then $fx \rightsquigarrow gx$ means that fx is a possible output of fx. A weaker statement of fusion is that

$$h (foldrn f g xs) \sim foldrn f' g' xs$$

for all finite nonempty lists xs provided $h(gx) \rightsquigarrow g'x$ for all x, and $hy \rightsquigarrow y'$ implies $h(fxy) \rightsquigarrow f'xy'$ for all x, y and y'.

Since $minBy cost \cdot wrap = id$, we obtain on appeal to fusion that

provided a function *insert* can be defined to satisfy the fusion condition

$$minBy\ cost\ ts \leadsto t$$

$$\Rightarrow minBy cost (concatMap (prefixes x) ts) \rightsquigarrow insert x t$$
 (7.1)

Suppose we specify *insert* by the condition

$$minBy\ cost \cdot prefixes\ x \ \leadsto \ insert\ x$$

In words, insert x t returns some minimum cost tree in prefixes x t. Then we claim that (7.1) holds if the following does:

$$minBy\ cost\ ts \leadsto t$$

 $\Rightarrow minBy\ cost\ (map\ (insert\ x)\ ts) \leadsto insert\ x\ t$ (7.2)

For the proof we need the fact that

$$minBy\ cost \cdot concat = minBy\ cost \cdot map\ minBy\ cost$$

over nonempty lists of nonempty lists. In words, every possible result of the left-hand side is a possible result of the right-hand side and vice versa. Now we argue

$$minBy \ cost \ (concatMap \ (prefixes \ x) \ ts)$$

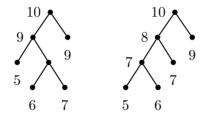
$$= \{expanding \ concatMap \}$$
 $minBy \ cost \ (concat \ (map \ (prefixes \ x) \ ts))$

= {above fact} $minBy \ cost \ (map \ (minBy \ cost \cdot prefixes \ x) \ ts)$ \rightsquigarrow {since $f \rightsquigarrow f'$ implies $map \ f \rightsquigarrow map \ f'$ and $g \cdot f \rightsquigarrow g \cdot f'$ } $minBy \ cost \ (map \ (insert \ x) \ ts)$

The fusion condition (7.2) holds provided that

$$cost \ u \le cost \ v \quad \Rightarrow \quad cost \ (insert \ x \ u) \le cost \ (insert \ x \ v)$$
 (7.3)

for all trees u and v with the same fringe. However (7.3) does not hold. Consider the trees u and v given by



In each tree the left spines have been labelled with cost information, so the cost of both trees is 10. Inserting 8 into the left tree u gives a tree with minimum cost 11, but inserting 8 into the right tree v gives a tree with cost 10. So (7.3) fails.

But notice that the costs [10, 8, 7, 5] reading downwards along the left spine of v are lexicographically less than the costs [10, 9, 5] along the left spine of u. What we can establish is the monotonicity condition

$$cost' u \le cost' v \implies cost' (insert x u) \le cost' (insert x v)$$
 (7.4)

where

$$cost' = map \ cost \cdot reverse \cdot spine$$

The function *spine* is the inverse of rollup, so $spine \cdot rollup = id$. Minimising cost' also minimises cost, since $xs \leq ys \Rightarrow head \ xs \leq head \ ys$. As we will show in a moment, (7.4) implies that

$$\mathit{minBy\ cost'} \cdot \mathit{map}(\mathit{insert\ x}) \ \ \leadsto \ \ \mathit{insert\ x} \cdot \mathit{minBy\ cost'}$$

Since spines have appeared on the scene it is sensible to make use of the definition of *trees* in terms of spines and summarise the calculation so far in the following way:

$$minBy\ cost \cdot trees$$
 $\rightsquigarrow \{refinement\}$

```
minBy cost' · trees

= {definition of trees in terms of forests}
  minBy cost' · map rollup ·
  foldrn (concatMap · prefixes) (wrap · wrap · Leaf)

= {defining costs = map cost · reverse}
  minBy (costs · spine) · map rollup ·
  foldrn (concatMap · prefixes) (wrap · wrap · Leaf)

= {claim: see below}
  rollup · minBy costs ·
  foldrn (concatMap · prefixes) (wrap · wrap · Leaf)

~ {fusion, with minBy costs · prefixes x ~ insert x}
  rollup · foldrn insert (wrap · Leaf)
```

The claim is that

```
minBy\ (costs \cdot spine) \cdot map\ rollup = rollup \cdot minBy\ costs
```

This follows from the definition of minBy and the fact that spine and rollup are each other's inverse.

It remains to implement *insert*, to show that (7.4) holds and to prove that it leads to a linear-time program.

Optimal insertion

Consider the two trees of Figure 7.1. The tree on the left has spine ts, where $ts = [t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_n]$. The one on the right has spine Leaf x : rollup(take j ts) : drop j ts. Each spine is also labelled with cost information: c_k is defined for $2 \le k \le n$ by

$$c_k = 1 + (c_{k-1} \max cost t_k)$$

and c_1 is the value at the leaf t_1 . A similar equation defines c_k' for k in the range $j+1 \leq k \leq n$. Note that $c_j' > c_j$ and $c_k' \geq c_k$ for $j+1 \leq k \leq n$. Bearing (7.4) in mind, we want to choose some j in the range $1 \leq j \leq n$ that minimises

$$[c'_n, c'_{n-1}, \dots, c'_{j+1}, c'_j, x]$$

We claim that the minimum is obtained by choosing j to be the smallest value in the range $1 \le j < n$, if it exists, such that

$$1 + (x \max c_j) < c_{j+1} \tag{7.5}$$

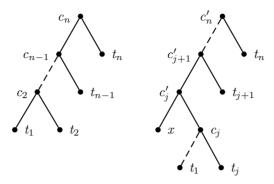


Fig. 7.1 Inserting x into a tree

Otherwise, choose j = n. To prove the claim, observe that if (7.5) holds, then

$$c'_j = 1 + (x \max c_j) < c_{j+1}$$

and so $c'_k = c_k$ for $j+1 \le k \le n$. Moreover, if (7.5) also holds for i < j, then

$$[c'_n, c'_{n-1}, \dots, c'_{i+1}, c'_i, x]$$

$$= \{ because \ c'_k = c_k \ for \ i+1 \le k \le n \ and \ i < j \}$$

$$[c_n, c_{n-1}, \dots, c_{j+1}, c_j, \dots c_{i+1}, c'_i, x]$$

$$< \{ because \ c_j < c'_j \}$$

$$[c_n, c_{n-1}, \dots, c_{j+1}, c'_j, x]$$

$$= \{ because \ c'_k = c_k \ for \ j+1 \le k \le n \}$$

$$[c'_n, c'_{n-1}, \dots, c'_{j+1}, c'_j, x]$$

So, the smaller the j to satisfy (7.5) the better. If (7.5) does not hold for j, then $c'_{j+1} > c_{j+1}$ and $c'_k \ge c_k$ for $j+2 \le k \le n$, so the cost is worse.

Next we prove the monotonicity condition (7.4). Let u and v be two trees with costs cost' u and cost' v. Clearly, if these costs are equal, then so are the costs of inserting an arbitrary x in either of them. Otherwise, suppose

$$cost' u = [c_n, c_{n-1}, \ldots] < [d_m, d_{m-1}, \ldots, d_1] = cost' v$$

Removing the common prefix of these costs, say one of length k, we are left with $[c_{n-k}, \ldots, c_1]$ and $[d_{m-k}, \ldots, d_1]$, where $c_{n-k} < d_{m-k}$. But inserting x into the corresponding subtree of u gives a tree with no larger costs than inserting x into the corresponding subtree of v.

Finally, since (7.5) is equivalent to $x \max c_j < \cos t t_{j+1}$, we can implement insert by

```
insert \ x \ ts = Leaf \ x : split \ x \ ts

split \ x \ [u] = [u]

split \ x \ (u : v : ts) = if \ x \max cost \ u < cost \ v \ then \ u : v : ts

else \ split \ x \ (Fork \ u \ v : ts)
```

Cost computations can be eliminated by a simple data refinement in which each tree t is represented by a pair $(cost\ t,t)$, leading to the final algorithm

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{mincostTree} & = & \textit{foldl1} \; \textit{Fork} \cdot \textit{map} \; \textit{snd} \cdot \textit{foldrn} \; \textit{insert} \; (\textit{wrap} \cdot \textit{leaf}) \\ \textit{insert} \; x \; ts & = & \textit{leaf} \; x : \textit{split} \; x \; ts \\ \textit{split} \; x \; [u] & = & [u] \\ \textit{split} \; x \; (u : v : ts) & = & \textbf{if} \; x \; \text{max} \; \textit{fst} \; u < \textit{fst} \; v \; \textbf{then} \; u : v : ts \\ & & \textbf{else} \; \textit{split} \; x \; (\textit{fork} \; u \; v : ts) \\ \textit{leaf} \; x & = & (x, \textit{Leaf} \; x) \\ \textit{fork} \; (a, u) \; (b, v) & = & (1 + a \; \text{max} \; b, \textit{Fork} \; u \; v) \\ \end{array}
```

The smart constructors *leaf* and *fork* each construct a pair consisting of a cost and a tree.

It remains to time the program, which we can do by counting the calls to split. By induction we prove that $foldrn\ insert\ (wrap\cdot leaf)$ applied to a list of length n and returning a forest of length m involves at most 2n-m calls to split. The base case, n=1 and m=1, is obvious. For the induction step, note that split applied to a list of length m' and returning a list of length m is called m'-m times. And since $2(n-1)-m'+m'-m+1\leq 2n-m$, the induction is established. Hence the algorithm takes linear time.

Final remarks

The minimum-cost tree problem and its derivation is an exercise in constructing a greedy algorithm. Greedy algorithms are tricky, not so much because the final algorithm is opaque, but because of the delicate reasoning required to prove that they work. First, one usually has to invent a strengthening of the cost function and to minimise that at each step. Here, the monotonicity condition (7.4) is crucial to the success of the enterprise. Second, in dealing with most optimisation problems there is a need to bring relations, or nondeterministic functions, into the derivation. The outcome of the derivation is not equivalent to the initial specification, but a refinement of it. Our treatment of relations has been "light touch", and relied on Haskell-like notation for carrying the derivation forward. In Bird and

de Moor (1997), the treatment of relations and their use in program derivation is made much more systematic.

Finally, it is worth mentioning that another way to solve the minimum-cost tree problem is by using, the Hu–Tucker (or the more modern version, the Garsia–Wachs) algorithm; see Hu (1982) or Knuth (1998). The Hu–Tucker algorithm applies because cost is a regular cost function in the sense of Hu (1982). But the best implementation of that algorithm has a running time of $\Theta(n \log n)$.

References

- Bird, R. S. and de Moor, O. (1997). Algebra of Programming. Hemel Hempstead: Prentice Hall.
- Hu, T. C. (1982). Combinatorial Algorithms. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
- Knuth, D. E. (1998). The Art of Computer Programming, Volume 3: Searching and Sorting, second edition. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

Unravelling greedy algorithms

Make you to ravel all this matter out.

Hamlet, Act 3, Scene 4

Introduction

As we said in the previous pearl, greedy algorithms are tricky things. So the subject deserves a second example. Here is another problem that can be solved by a greedy algorithm, and the path to the solution has much in common with the previous one.

An $unravel^1$ of a sequence xs is a bag of nonempty subsequences of xs that when shuffled together can give back xs. For example, the letters of "accompany" can be unravelled into three lists: "acm", "an" and "copy". The order of these lists is not important, but duplications do matter; for example, "peptet" can be unravelled into two copies of "pet". Thus, an unravel is essentially a bag of sequences, not a set or a list.

An unravel is called an *upravel* if all its component sequences are weakly increasing. Since each of "acm", "an" and "copy" is increasing, they give an upravel of "accompany", and so do "aany", "ccmp" and "o". Each nonempty sequence has at least one upravel, namely the upravel consisting of just singleton sequences. However, of all possible upravels, we want to determine one with shortest size.

Specification

Here is the specification of the function supravel (short for shortest upravel):

```
supravel :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [[a]]

supravel = minBy \ length \cdot filter \ (all \ up) \cdot unravels
```

By the way, "to unravel" and "to ravel" mean the same thing, just as "to unloose" and "to loose". The prefix "un-" serves both to negate an action and to emphasize it.

We represent the bag of sequences in a shortest upravel by a list. The function $minBy\ f$ is the non-deterministic function introduced in the previous pearl and specified by

```
minBy f \ xs \in xs \quad \land \quad (\forall x \in xs : f \ (minBy f \ xs) \le f \ x)
```

The predicate *up*, whose definition is omitted, determines whether its argument is in ascending order. The function *unravels* returns all unravels of a sequence and can be defined inductively by

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{unravels} & :: & [a] \rightarrow [[[a]]] \\ \textit{unravels} & = & \textit{foldr} \left( \textit{concatMap} \cdot \textit{prefixes} \right) [[\ ]] \\ \textit{prefixes} \ x \left[\ \right] & = & [[[x]]] \\ \textit{prefixes} \ x \left( \textit{xs} : \textit{xss} \right) & = & [(x : \textit{xs}) : \textit{xss}] + \textit{map} \left( \textit{xs} : \right) \left( \textit{prefixes} \ x \ \textit{xss} \right) \end{array}
```

The function prefixes x adds x as a new first element to an unravel by prefixing it in all possible ways to each sequence in the unravel.

Derivation

The first step is to employ the fusion law of foldr to fuse filter (all up) and unravels. Define upravels by

```
upravels = filter(all\ up) \cdot unravels
```

An easy application of the fusion law of foldr gives the following definition of upravels:

```
\begin{array}{lll} upravels & :: & Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [[[a]]] \\ upravels & = & foldr \ (concatMap \cdot uprefixes) \ [[\ ]] \\ uprefixes \ x \ [\ ] & = & [[[x]]] \\ uprefixes \ x \ (xs:xss) & = & \mathbf{if} \ x \leq head \ xs \ \mathbf{then} \\ & & [(x:xs):xss] + map \ (xs:) \ (uprefixes \ x \ xss) \\ & & \mathbf{else} \ map \ (xs:) \ (uprefixes \ x \ xss) \end{array}
```

Here, uprefixes x adds x as a new first element to an unravel by prefixing it in all possible ways to each sequence in the unravel whose first element is at least x.

Now we have arrived at the nub of the problem, which is how to fuse $minBy\ length$ with upravels. Recall from the previous pearl the meaning of the refinement relation \leadsto : for non-deterministic function f and normal deterministic function g we have that $f \leadsto g$ if for all x the result of g x is a possible result of f x. Suppose the function insert is specified by

```
minBy\ length \cdot uprefixes\ x \ \leadsto \ insert\ x
```

Thus, insert x ur returns some shortest possible way of inserting x into the upravel ur. By appealing to the weaker fusion law of foldr in terms of refinement rather than equality, we then obtain

$$minBy\ length\ (upravels\ xs)\ \leadsto\ foldr\ insert\ [\]\ xs$$

for all finite lists xs, provided the fusion condition

```
minBy\ length\ urs \leadsto ur
\Rightarrow minBy\ length\ (map\ (insert\ x)\ urs) \leadsto insert\ x\ ur
```

holds for all upravels urs of a list. And, in turn, the fusion condition holds if

$$length \ ur \leq length \ vr$$

$$\Rightarrow length (insert x ur) \le length (insert x vr)$$
(8.1)

for any two upravels ur and vr of the same list.

Unfortunately, (8.1) does not hold. Take the two equal-length upravels ["ad", "a"] and ["aa", "d"] of "ada". Inserting "c" in the first upravel gives the best possible upravel ["ad", "a", "c"], but ["aa", "cd"] is a better upravel of the second.

The conclusion is that, just as in the problem of finding a minimum cost tree, we have to strengthen the cost function being minimised. It is fairly clear that the length of $insert\ x\ ur$ depends only on x and the first element of each sequence in ur. Suppose we define heads by

```
heads :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [[a]] \rightarrow [a]

heads = sort \cdot map \ head
```

Informally, the larger (lexicographically speaking) that heads ur is, the more likely it is that x can be prefixed to some sequence in ur, thereby ensuring $insert \ x \ ur$ is no longer than ur. The problem with replacing $minBy \ length$ by $maxBy \ heads$ is that

```
heads \; ur \geq heads \; vr \; \; \not \Rightarrow \; \; length \; ur \leq length \; vr
```

even for upravels ur and vr of the same sequence. So, we need something else.

One way out is to abandon the lexicographic ordering and consider instead the partial preorder \leq , defined by

```
ur \preceq vr = heads \ ur \unlhd heads \ yr
```

where $[x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m] \leq [y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]$ if $m \leq n$ and $x_j \geq y_j$ for all j in the range $1 \leq j \leq n$. Thus, $ur \leq vr$ if length $ur \leq length \ vr$ and the elements

of heads ur are pointwise no smaller than those of heads vr. Since \leq clearly respects length, we can replace minBy length by minWith (\leq), where

$$minWith (\preceq) urs \in urs \quad and \quad (\forall ur \in urs : minWith (\preceq) urs \preceq ur)$$

and establish the monotonicity condition

$$ur \leq vr \Rightarrow insert \ x \ ur \leq insert \ x \ vr$$
 (8.2)

where insert x is some refinement of minWith (\preceq) · uprefixes x. Condition (8.2) then gives

$$minWith (\preceq) \cdot upravels \quad \leadsto \quad foldr \; insert \; [\;]$$

However, there is a slight technical difficulty with partial orderings: in general there is no guarantee that minimum, as distinct from minimal, elements exist. An element is minimum if it is smaller than all other candidates, but minimal only if there is no candidate smaller than it. For example, the set $\{\{a,b\},\{a,c\},\{a,b,c\}\}$ has no minimum elements under \subseteq , but two minimal elements, namely $\{a,b\}$ and $\{a,c\}$. So we have to check that $minWith(\preceq)(upravels\,xs)$ is inhabited. But this is easily proved by induction on xs, given that $minWith(\preceq) \cdot uprefixes\,x \leadsto insert\,x$ and (8.2).

Let us next show how to construct insert x. Suppose

$$heads ur = [x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m]$$

so $x_i \leq x_j$ for $1 \leq i \leq j \leq m$. Define k by the condition $x_k < x \leq x_{k+1}$, where we can set $x_{m+1} = \infty$. Then

$$heads (uprefixes \ x \ ur) = map ([x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k, x] + ++) xss$$

where xss are the lists

$$[x_{k+1}, x_{k+3}, \dots, x_m]$$

$$[x_{k+1}, x_{k+3}, \dots, x_m]$$

$$\dots$$

$$[x_{k+1}, x_{k+2}, \dots, x_{m-1}]$$

$$[x_{k+1}, x_{k+2}, \dots, x_{m-1}, x_m]$$

Of these, the first list is pointwise largest (though not necessarily the only one that is) and hence a minimum under \leq . In words, we can minimise \leq by prefixing x to a sequence whose first element is the shortest one greater than or equal to x. In fact we can define *insert* by

```
insert \ x \ [\ ] = [[x]]
insert \ x \ (xs : xss) = \mathbf{if} \ x \le head \ xs \ \mathbf{then} \ (x : xs) : xss
\mathbf{else} \ xs : insert \ x \ xss
```

It is an invariant on *insert* x ur that $map\ head\ ur$ is in strictly increasing order. Hence the best way to insert x is by prefixing x to the first sequence in ur whose head is at least x. The definition of *insert* x ur takes linear time in the length of ur, but the complexity can be reduced to logarithmic time either by representing upravels as arrays of lists and employing binary search, or by making use of balanced trees. We omit further details and just claim that $foldr\ insert$ [] can be implemented to run in $O(n \log n)$ steps.

Let us now turn to the proof of (8.2). Let heads $ur = [x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m]$ and heads $vr = [y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n]$, so $m \le n$ and $y_i \le x_i$ for $1 \le i \le m$. As we saw above:

```
heads (insert x ur) = [x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k, x, x_{k+2}, x_{k+3}, \dots, x_m]
heads (insert x vr) = [y_1, y_2, \dots, y_\ell, x, x_{\ell+2}, x_{\ell+3}, \dots, y_n]
```

where $x_k < x \le x_{k+1}$ and $y_\ell < x \le y_{\ell+1}$. But $y_k \le x_k$, so $k \le \ell$. Lining up the two lists, as in

```
[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k, x, x_{k+2}, \dots, x_{\ell}, x_{\ell+1}, x_{\ell+2}, \dots, x_m]
[y_1, y_2, \dots, y_k, y_{k+1}, y_{k+2}, \dots, y_{\ell}, x, y_{\ell+2}, \dots, y_m]
```

we see that the first is pointwise larger than the second because $y_{k+1} \leq x$ and $x \leq x_{l+1}$.

In summary, the problem of computing the shortest upravel of a given list can be solved by a greedy algorithm that takes $O(n \log n)$ steps in the length of the list.

Final remarks

The problem of the shortest upravel was first posed and solved by Lambert Meertens in September 1984, at a meeting of IFIP Working Group 2.1 in Pont-à-Mousson, France (Meertens, 1984). Subsequently, Kaldewaij (1985) published a quite different solution. Kaldewaij's (one-page!) solution was based on a constructive proof of a specialisation of Dilworth's theorem: the size of a shortest upravel of xs is equal to the length of the longest decreasing subsequence of xs. This fact can be combined with a well-known algorithm for finding the length of a longest decreasing subsequence in $O(n \log n)$ steps to produce an algorithm for the shortest upravel with the same time complexity. The present pearl is based on Bird (1992), which also considers another greedy algorithm that starts off with the following definition of unravels:

```
unravels[] = [[]]

unravels \ xs = [ys : yss \mid ys \leftarrow subseqs \ xs, \ not \ (null \ ys),

yss \leftarrow unravels \ (xs \setminus ys)]
```

A shortest upravel can then obtained by extracting the rightmost maximal upsequence at each stage, computed by $rmu = foldr \ op \ [$], where

$$op \ x \ [\] = [x]$$

 $op \ x \ (y:ys) = \mathbf{if} \ x \le y \mathbf{then} \ x:y:ys \mathbf{else} \ y:ys$

The derivation of the alternative algorithm is left as an exercise.

References

- Bird, R. S. (1992). The smallest upravel. Science of Computer Programming 18, 281–92.
- Kaldewaij, A. (1985). On the decomposition of sequences into ascending subsequences. *Information Processing Letters* **21**, 69.
- Meertens, L. G. L. T. (1984). Some more examples of algorithmic developments. IFIP WG2.1 Working Paper, Pont-à-Mousson, France. See also An Abstracto Reader prepared for IFIP WG 2.1. Technical Report CWI Note CS-N8702, Centrum voor Wiskunde en Informatica, April 1987.

9

Finding celebrities

The setting is a tutorial on functional algorithm design. There are four students: Anne, Jack, Mary and Theo.

Teacher: Good morning class. Today I would like you to solve the following problem. Imagine a set P of people at a party. Say a subset C of P forms a celebrity clique if C is nonempty, everybody at the party knows every member of C, but members of C know only each other. Assuming there is such a clique at the party, your problem is to write a functional program for finding it. As data for the problem you are given a binary predicate knows and the set P as a list ps not containing duplicates.

Jack: Just to be clear, does every member of a celebrity clique actually know everyone else in the clique? And does everyone know themselves?

Teacher: As to the first question, yes, it follows from the definition: everyone in the clique is known by everyone at the party. As to the second question, the answer is not really relevant to the problem, so ask a philosopher. If it simplifies things to assume that x knows x for all x, then go ahead and do so.

Theo: This is going to be a hard problem, isn't it? I mean, the problem of determining whether there is a clique of size k in a party of n people will take $\Omega(n^k)$ steps, so we are looking at an exponential time algorithm.

Anne: That doesn't follow, since being a celebrity clique is a much stronger property than being a clique. In a directed graph, a clique is a set of nodes in which each pair of nodes has an arc in both directions between them, but a celebrity clique also requires an arc from every node in the graph to every node in the clique, and no arcs from the clique to nodes outside the clique.

Mary: Yes, while there can be many cliques in a graph, there is at most one celebrity clique. Suppose that C_1 and C_2 are two celebrity cliques. Pick any c_1 in C_1 and c_2 in C_2 . We have that c_1 knows c_2 from the fact that everybody in the clique C_2 is known by everybody at the party. But since clique members know only other members of the clique, it follows that $c_2 \in C_1$. Since c_2 was arbitrary, we have $C_2 \subseteq C_1$ and, by symmetry, $C_1 \subseteq C_2$.

Theo: Agreed, they are different problems. Let me formalise the problem. To simplify matters I am going to suppose that x knows x is true for all x. By definition C is a celebrity clique of P if $\emptyset \subset C \subseteq P$ and

```
(\forall x \in P, y \in C :: x \text{ knows } y \land (y \text{ knows } x \Rightarrow x \in C))
```

Let me abbreviate this last condition to $C \triangleleft P$. Given lists ps and cs representing P and C respectively, we can translate the condition into a list comprehension:

```
cs \lhd ps = and [x \text{ knows } y \land (y \text{ knows } x \Rightarrow x \in cs) \mid x \leftarrow ps, y \leftarrow cs]
```

Now define $cclique\ ps = head\ (filter\ (\lhd ps)\ (subseqs\ ps)),$ where $subseqs\ ps$ is a list of all subsequences of ps:

```
subseqs [] = [[]]

subseqs (x : xs) = map (x:) (subseqs xs) + subseqs xs
```

Since subseqs ps generates subsequences in descending order of length, the value of $cclique\ ps$ is either the empty list if there is no celebrity clique, or the unique celebrity clique.

Jack: Theo's exhaustive search program seems a reasonable place to start I would say. Clearly, the way to achieve greater efficiency is to fuse the filtering with the generation of subsequences. For the base case when there are no people at the party we have $filter (\lhd []) (subseqs []) = [[]]$ since $cs \lhd [] = True$. For the inductive case we can reason

```
filter (\lhd(p:ps)) (subseqs (p:ps))
= \{definition of subseqs \}
filter (\lhd (p:ps)) (map (p:) (subseqs ps) + subseqs ps)
= \{since filter distributes over ++\}
filter (\lhd (p:ps)) (map (p:) (subseqs ps)) ++
filter (\lhd (p:ps)) (subseqs ps)
```

What next?

Anne: We have to simplify $(p:cs) \lhd (p:ps)$ and $cs \lhd (p:ps)$ when cs is a subsequence of ps and p is not in cs. Let us deal with the second case first. The definition of \lhd gives that $cs \lhd (p:ps)$ just in the case that $cs \lhd ps$, that no celebrity in cs knows p and that p knows every celebrity in cs. In symbols:

$$cs \lhd (p:ps) = cs \lhd ps \land nonmember p cs$$

where

$$nonmember \ p \ cs \ = \ and \ [p \ knows \ c \land not \ (c \ knows \ p) \ | \ c \leftarrow cs]$$

Now we can reason

$$filter (\lhd (p:ps)) (subseqs ps)$$

$$= \{above simplification of cs \lhd (p:ps)\}$$

$$filter (\lambda cs \to cs \lhd ps \land nonmember p cs) (subseqs ps)$$

$$= \{since filter (\lambda x \to p x \land q x) = filter q \cdot filter p\}$$

$$filter (nonmember p) (filter (\lhd ps) (subseqs ps))$$

Now for the other case. We have that $(p:cs) \triangleleft (p:ps)$ holds just in the case that $cs \triangleleft ps$, and p is a new celebrity, meaning that everyone knows p and p knows all and only members of cs. In symbols:

```
(p:cs) \lhd (p:ps) = cs \lhd ps \land member \ p \ ps \ cs
```

where

```
member \ p \ s \ cs = and \ [x \ knows \ p \land (p \ knows \ x \Leftrightarrow x \in cs) \ | \ x \leftarrow ps]
```

A similar calculation to the one above now gives

```
filter (\lhd (p:ps)) (map (p:) (subseqs ps))
= map (p:) (filter (member p ps) (filter (\lhd ps) (subseqs ps)))
```

Putting the two pieces together, we have $cclique = head \cdot ccliques$, where

```
ccliques[] = [[]]
ccliques(p:ps) = map(p:)(filter(member p ps) css) + filter(nonmember p) css
\mathbf{where} \ css = ccliques \ ps
```

The predicates *member* and *nonmember* can be evaluated in linear time and, as *ccliques* returns at most two lists, a proper celebrity clique and an empty list, we have reduced an exponential algorithm to a quadratic one.

Theo: Well, you can't do better than a quadratic algorithm, at least in the worst case. Suppose there was a sub-quadratic one, so at least one entry in the knows matrix is not inspected. Suppose, furthermore, that all entries are true, so everyone knows everyone else and the celebrity clique is the whole party. Now change the non-inspected entry, $knows\ x\ y$ say, to false. Then y is no longer a celebrity. But everyone apart from x still knows y, so they cannot be celebrities. That leaves x as the only possible celebrity; but unless x and y are the only people at the party, there is some non-celebrity that x knows, so x is not a celebrity either. That means there is no celebrity clique at the modified party, and the sub-quadratic algorithm returns the wrong answer. So, in the worst case, every element of the knows matrix has to be inspected to arrive at the correct answer.

Teacher: Very good, Theo, and quite correct, but the problem was not to determine whether or not there was a celebrity clique. All I asked for was to identify a celebrity clique assuming one exists. In your scenario the answer ps will suffice for both cases: in the first case it is the correct answer and in the second case there is no celebrity clique, so any answer will do.

There is a pause while the class digests this information.

Mary: I have an idea. Anne's reasoning shows that for all xs

$$\mathit{xs} \lhd (\mathit{p} : \mathit{ps}) \ \Rightarrow \ (\mathit{xs} \setminus \backslash [\mathit{p}]) \lhd \mathit{ps}$$

where \setminus denotes list difference. In other words, if $cs \triangleleft ps$ and p is someone new who joins the party ps, then the only possible values of xs satisfying $xs \triangleleft (p:ps)$ are $[\], [p], cs,$ or p:cs. I think this gives us another way of solving the problem. Suppose first that cs is empty, so the only possible celebrity clique of p:ps is [p]. In symbols:

$$null\ (cclique\ ps) \ \Rightarrow \ cclique\ (p:ps) \in \{[\],[p]\}$$

On the other hand, suppose cs is not empty and contains some celebrity c. What are the possible outcomes when a new person p joins the party? Well, assume first that p does not know c. Then c is no longer a celebrity in the extended party, and neither is any other member of cs because they all know c. Hence

$$c \in cclique \ ps \land not \ (p \ knows \ c) \ \Rightarrow \ cclique \ (p : ps)) \in \{[\], [p]\}$$

Assume next that p does know c but c does not know p. In this case cs is also the celebrity clique of the extended party:

```
c \in cclique \ ps \land p \ knows \ c \land not \ (c \ knows \ p)

\Rightarrow cclique \ (p : ps) = cclique \ ps
```

Finally, if p and c know each other, then the only celebrity clique of p:ps is p:cs; in symbols:

```
c \in cclique \ ps \land p \ knows \ c \land c \ knows \ p

\Rightarrow \ cclique \ (p:ps) \in \{[\ ], p:cs\}
```

Theo: While I agree that your reasoning is correct, Mary, I do not see how it leads to a solution. All you have shown is that if we know the value of *cclique ps* and if the party p:ps contains a celebrity clique, then we can quickly determine it. But how do we know the value of *cclique ps* in the first place? You seem to be suggesting that if we define *cclique'* by

```
cclique' = foldr \ op \ [\ ]
op \ p \ cs \mid null \ cs = [p]
\mid not \ (p \ knows \ c) = [p]
\mid not \ (c \ knows \ p) = cs
\mid otherwise = p : cs
where \ c = head \ cs
```

then

$$not (null (cclique ps)) \Rightarrow cclique ps = cclique' ps$$
 (9.1)

But I don't see how your reasoning proves (9.1).

Mary: Let me try again then. I will prove (9.1) by induction on ps. There are two cases:

 $Case\ [\].$ We have $cclique\ [\]=[\],$ so (9.1) is true by default.

Case p:ps. Assume $cclique\ (p:ps)$ is not empty. There are two subcases, depending on whether $cclique\ ps$ is empty or not. If not, then $cclique\ ps = cclique'\ ps$ by induction. We then have

```
cclique (p: ps)
= {my previous reasoning and definition of op}
op p (cclique ps)
= {since cclique ps = cclique' ps}
op p (cclique' ps)
= {definition of cclique'}
cclique' (p: ps)
```

If, on the other hand, *cclique* ps is empty, then

```
cclique (p:ps)
= {assumption that cclique (p:ps) is not empty, and first case of my previous reasoning}

[p]
= {p is the unique celebrity, so not (p \text{ knows } c) for any c \in cclique' ps}

op p (cclique' ps)
= {as before}
cclique' (p:ps)
```

This establishes the case and the induction.

Anne: That's amazing, a simple linear-time algorithm! But we have only arrived at the solution because of Mary's cleverness. I still want a formal derivation of *cclique'* from some suitable fusion law.

Teacher: Thank you, Anne, it's good to have you in the class.

Anne: We can write subseqs using foldr:

```
subseqs = foldr \ add \ [[\ ]]

add \ x \ xss = map \ (x:) \ xss + + xss
```

So it appears that we are appealing to some fusion law of foldr. The textbook statement of the fusion law for foldr states that $f \cdot foldr \ g \ a = foldr \ h \ b$ provided f is strict, $f \ a = b$, and $f \ (g \ x \ y) = h \ x \ (f \ y)$ for all x and y. The strictness condition is not needed if we want only to assert that $f \ (foldr \ g \ a \ xs) = foldr \ h \ b \ xs$ for all finite lists xs. This fusion rule does not apply directly to the celebrity clique problem, namely filter $(\triangleleft ps) \ (subseqs \ ps)$, first because filter $(\triangleleft ps)$ has ps as a parameter and second because we want something more general than the equality of both sides.

Theo: The first restriction is not really a problem. We can always define a version of *subseqs* that returns both the subsequences of a list and the list itself. Suppose we define

```
subseqs' = foldr step ([], [[]])

step x (xs, xss) = (x : xs, map (x:) xss + xss)
```

Then $cclique = f \cdot subseqs'$, where $f(ps, css) = head(filter(\triangleleft ps) css)$. In this way the additional parameter is eliminated.

Mary: The textbook statement of the fusion rule is not general enough for the problem. Let \leadsto be some relation on values; I don't care what. Then it is easy to show by induction that

$$f(foldr \ q \ a \ xs) \rightarrow foldr \ h \ b \ xs$$

for all finite lists xs provided f $a \leadsto b$ and f $y \leadsto z \Rightarrow f$ $(g x y) \leadsto h x z$ for all x, y and z.

Jack: Yes, that's it. We want to define $xs \rightsquigarrow ys$ by

$$xs \leadsto ys = not (null \ xs) \Rightarrow xs = ys$$

Then the conditions we have to establish are first that

$$head\ (filter\ (\lhd\ [\])\ [[\]]) \leadsto [\]$$

and second that

```
head (filter (\lhd ps) css) \leadsto cs
\Rightarrow head (filter (\lhd (p:ps))(map (p:) css + css)) \leadsto op p cs
```

Mary's reasoning establishes exactly these conditions.

Teacher: Yes. The more general statement of fusion is the one provided by parametricity in Wadler's (1989) "Theorems for free!" paper. It is nice to see an example where the more general statement is needed. What is interesting about the problem is that it is the first example I have seen in which it is asymptotically more efficient to find a solution assuming one exists than to check that it actually is a solution. A similar problem is the *majority* voting problem – see, for example, Morgan (1994), Chapter 18 – in which one is given a list xs and it is required to determine whether there is a value in xs that occurs strictly greater than $\lfloor length \ xs/2 \rfloor$ times. It is easier to first compute a putative majority and then check whether it is actually a majority afterwards. But checking for a majority takes linear time rather than quadratic time, so there is no asymptotic gap.

Afterword

The true story of the celebrity clique problem was as follows. I was giving a course of lectures on Formal Program Design, in an imperative rather than functional framework, and thought of the problem as a generalisation of the one in Kaldewaij's (1990) book. But despite a day of struggling with loop invariants, I could not produce a sufficiently simple solution to present to the class, so I set it as a challenge. I also talked about it at a research

meeting the following Friday. Over the weekend, Sharon Curtis produced a simple linear-time algorithm and Julian Tibble, a second-year undergraduate, provided a good way to reason about the problem.

In the belief that whatever can be done with loops and invariants can also be done at least as easily using the laws of functional program derivation, the problem was translated into a functional setting and the dialogue above was composed. Afterwards, the problem was tried out at a WG2.1 meeting in Nottingham in September, 2004. Gratifyingly, the actual discussion followed the early part of the dialogue quite closely. On repeatedly being urged to try harder, Andres Löh and Johan Jeuring came up a day later with the linear-time solution.

References

- Kaldewaij, A. (1990). Programming the Derivation of Algorithms. Hemel Hempstead: Prentice Hall.
- Morgan, C. (1994). Programming from Specifications, 2nd edition. Hemel Hempstead: Prentice Hall.
- Wadler, P. (1989). Theorems for free! Fourth International Symposium on Functional Programming Languages and Computer Architecture. ACM Press, pp. 347–59.

10

Removing duplicates

Introduction

The Haskell library function *nub* removes duplicates from a list:

```
nub :: Eq \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [a]

nub \ [] = []

nub \ (x : xs) = x : nub \ (xs \setminus xs)
```

The value $xs \setminus ys$ is what remains of xs after all the elements in ys have been deleted. For example, nub "calculus" = "calus". Evaluation of nub on a list of length n takes $\Theta(n^2)$ steps. This is the best one can hope for, since any algorithm for the problem requires $\Omega(n^2)$ equality tests in the worst case. With the definition above, nub xs returns a list of the distinct elements in xs in the order in which they first appear in xs. In other words, the position of nub xs as a subsequence of xs is lexicographically the least among the positions of all possible solutions.

Let us now change the problem and ask that $nub :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [a]$ simply returns the lexicographically least solution. Note the subtle difference: before it was the position of the subsequence that was lexicographically the least; now it is the subsequence itself. For example, nub "calculus" = "aclus" under the second definition. The change of type of nub is necessary to make the new problem meaningful. Changing the type of nub changes the lower bound complexity: only $\Omega(n \log n)$ comparison tests are needed in the worst case. A pretty proof of this claim is given by Bloom and Wright (2003). Can we find an $\Theta(n \log n)$ program for the new version of nub? The answer turns out to be yes, but the algorithm is not obvious and calculating it requires some work. So, be prepared.

A first version

We begin with the specification

```
nub = minimum \cdot longest \cdot filter \ nodups \cdot subseqs
```

In words, compute all possible subsequences of the given list (*subseqs*), filter this list of subsequences for just those that do not contain duplicates (*filter nodups*), compute all the longest ones (*longest*) and finally select the smallest one (*minimum*).

It is not too difficult to calculate the following recursive definition of nub from the specification:

```
nub[] = []

nub(x:xs) = if x \notin xs then x:nub xs else

(x:nub(xs \setminus [x])) \min(nub xs)
```

We omit the details, leaving them as an exercise for the interested reader. Anyway, the recursive version is reasonably intuitive: in the case x:xs, either x does not appear in xs, so there is no choice, or it does, in which case the result is the smaller of two alternatives, choosing x now or later on.

The problem with the recursive definition of nub is that it can take exponential time because the number of recursive calls can double at each step. We therefore have some work to do in reaching an $\Theta(n \log n)$ algorithm.

A generalisation

The first thought, given the target time complexity, is a divide and conquer algorithm, seeking a function *join* for which

$$nub (xs + ys) = join (nub xs) (nub ys)$$

$$(10.1)$$

But no such function can exist. For instance, (10.1) requires

$$join$$
 "bca" "c" = $join \; (nub \; \text{"bca"}) \; (nub \; \text{"c"}) = nub \; \text{"bcac"} = \text{"bac"}$

But also (10.1) requires

$$join$$
 "bca" "c" = $join \, (nub$ "bcab") $(nub$ "c") = nub "bcabc" = "abc"

This example also shows that nub cannot be expressed as an instance of foldl. It is also easy to construct an example to show that nub cannot be expressed as an instance of foldr.

We therefore need some generalisation of nub. To see what it might be, consider a list of the form x:y:xs with $x\in xs$ and $y\in xs$ and $x\neq y$. Unfolding the definition of nub(x:y:xs), and exploiting both the associativity of min and the fact that (x:) distributes through min, we find

$$nub\ (x:y:xs) = x:y:nub\ (xs \setminus [x,y]) \ \min$$
 $x:nub\ (xs \setminus [x])) \ \min$
 $y:nub\ (xs \setminus [y]) \ \min$
 $nub\ xs$

Now suppose that x < y, so the second term is lexicographically smaller than the third. That means the third term can be dropped:

$$nub\ (x:y:xs) = x:y:nub\ (xs\setminus [x,y]) \min$$

 $x:nub\ (xs\setminus [x])) \min$
 $nub\ xs$

If, on the other hand, x > y, then the first two terms can be dropped:

$$nub(x : y : xs) = y : nub(xs \setminus [y]) \min$$

 $nub(xs)$

The forms of these two expressions suggest our generalisation, which we will call hub. To help keep expressions reasonably short, abbreviate minimum to min in all that follows. The definition of hub is

$$hub \ ws \ xs = min \left[is + nub \left(xs \setminus is \right) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ ws \right]$$
 (10.2)

where ws is a list in strictly increasing order. The standard function inits returns a list of all the initial segments, or prefixes, of a list. The example above now reads

$$nub(x : y : xs) = \mathbf{if} x < y \mathbf{then} \ hub[x, y] xs \mathbf{else} \ hub[y] xs$$

The function hub generalises nub, for inits [] = [[]] and $xs \setminus [] = xs$, so nub xs = hub [] xs. Two other immediate facts about hub are that hub ws xs begins with a prefix of ws, and that $hub ws xs \le nub xs$ since the empty list is a prefix of every list.

The aim now is to derive an inductive definition of hub. For the base case we reason

```
hub \ ws \ [\ ]
= \quad \{\text{definition}\}
min \ [is + nub \ ([\ ] \setminus is) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ ws]
= \quad \{\text{since } [\ ] \setminus is \leftarrow [\ ] \text{ and } nub \ [\ ] = [\ ]\}
min \ [is \mid is \leftarrow inits \ ws]
= \quad \{\text{since } [\ ] \text{ is the lexicographically least list in } inits \ ws\}
[\ ]
```

Hence $hub\ ws\ [\]=[\].$ For the inductive case, (10.2) gives

$$hub\ ws\ (x:xs) = min\ [is + nub\ ((x:xs) \setminus is) \mid is \leftarrow inits\ ws] \ (10.3)$$

To simplify the right-hand side we need to know whether or not $x \in ws$, so we start by splitting ws into two lists, us and vs, defined by

$$(us, vs) = (take While (< x) ws, drop While (< x) ws)$$

More briefly, (us, vs) = span (< x) ws, where span is a standard Haskell library function. Since ws = us + vs and ws is in increasing order, both us and vs are also in increasing order. Moreover, if $x \in ws$, then x = head vs; if not, then either vs is empty or x < head vs.

The following property of *inits* is key to the simplification of (10.3):

$$inits (us + vs) = inits us + map (us + vs) (inits vs)$$
 (10.4)

where $inits^+$ vs returns the list of nonempty prefixes of vs. Using this expression for inits in (10.3) and splitting the comprehension into two parts, we obtain that hub ws (x:xs) = A min B, where

$$A = min [is + nub ((x : xs) \setminus is) | is \leftarrow inits us]$$
 (10.5)

$$B = min \left[us + is + nub \left((x : xs) \setminus (us + is) \right) \mid is \leftarrow inits^{+} vs \right] \quad (10.6)$$

To discover A min B we deal with A first, distinguishing the two cases $x \notin xs$ and $x \in xs$. In the first case, $x \notin xs$, we argue:

```
A
= \{\text{definition } (10.5)\}
min [is + nub ((x : xs) \setminus \ is) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ us]
= \{\text{recursive definition of } nub \ \text{since } x \notin xs \ \text{and } x \notin us\}
min [is + [x] + nub (xs \setminus \ is) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ us]
= \{\text{since } us < is + [x] \ \text{for } is \in inits \ us\}
us + [x] + nub (xs \setminus \ us)
= \{\text{since } nub \ xs = hub \ [\ ] \ xs\}
us + [x] + hub \ [\ ] \ (xs \setminus \ us)
```

In the second case, $x \in xs$, we argue:

A= {recursive definition of nub since $x \in xs$ and $x \notin us$ } $min [is + ([x] + nub (xs \setminus (is + [x])) \min nub (xs \setminus is))$ $| is \leftarrow inits \ us|$

$$= \{ \text{taking min outside the comprehension} \}$$

$$\min [is + [x] + nub (xs \setminus (is + [x])) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ us] \text{ min }$$

$$\min [is + nub (xs \setminus is) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ us]$$

$$= \{ \text{since } us < is + [x] \text{ for } is \in inits \ us \}$$

$$(us + [x] + nub (xs \setminus (us + [x]))) \text{ min }$$

$$\min [is + nub (xs \setminus is) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ us]$$

$$= \{ \text{since } inits (us + [x]) = inits \ us + [us + [x]] \}$$

$$\min [is + nub (xs \setminus is) \mid is \leftarrow inits (us + [x])]$$

$$= \{ \text{definition } (10.2) \}$$

$$hub (us + [x]) xs$$

Summarising, A equals

if
$$x \in xs$$
 then $hub(us + [x])xs$ else $us + [x] + hub[](xs \setminus us)$

Now we turn to B. According to (10.6), if vs is empty (so $inits^+ vs$ is empty), then B is the fictitious value min []. Otherwise, we reason:

```
B = \{ \text{definition } (10.6) \}
min [us + is + nub ((x : xs) \setminus (us + is)) \mid is \leftarrow inits^{+} (v : vs') ]
= \{ \text{since } inits^{+} (v : vs') = map (v :) (inits vs') \}
min [us + [v] + is + nub ((x : xs) \setminus (us + [v] + is)) \mid is \leftarrow inits vs']
= \{ \text{since } min \cdot map (ys + ) = (ys + ) \cdot min \}
us + [v] + min [is + nub ((x : xs) \setminus (us + [v] + is)) \mid is \leftarrow inits vs']
```

In particular, B begins with us + [v]. Without going further we now have enough information to determine hub ws (x:xs) in the case $x \notin ws$. In this case, either vs is empty, so A < B, or vs is not empty and begins with v where x < v. In the latter situation we again have A < B because A begins with a prefix of us + [x] and us + [x] < us + [v]. Hence

$$x \notin ws \implies hub \ ws \ (x : xs) = A$$

It remains to deal with the case $x \in ws$, so x = v. In this case B simplifies to $us + [x] + min [is + nub (xs \setminus (us + [x] + is)) \mid is \leftarrow inits vs']$

Now we need a final case analysis. Assume first that $x \notin xs$. We calculate:

$$B$$

$$= \{above\}$$

$$us + + [x] + min [is + nub (xs \setminus (us + + [x] + + is)) \mid is \leftarrow inits vs']$$

```
\begin{array}{lll} nub & = & hub \ [ \ ] \\ hub \ ws \ [ \ ] & = & [ \ ] \\ hub \ ws \ (x:xs) & = & \mathbf{case} \ (x \in xs, x \in ws) \ \mathbf{of} \\ & & (False, False) \ \rightarrow & us + [x] + hub \ [ \ ] \ (xs \setminus \ us) \\ & & (False, True) \ \rightarrow & us + [x] + hub \ (tail \ vs) \ (xs \setminus \ us) \\ & & (True, False) \ \rightarrow & hub \ (us + [x]) \ xs \\ & & (True, True) \ \rightarrow & hub \ ws \ xs \\ & & \mathbf{where} \ (us, vs) = span \ (< x) \ ws \end{array}
```

Fig. 10.1 Second definition of nub

```
= \{ \text{since } xs \setminus (us + [x] + is) = xs \setminus (us + is) = (xs \setminus us) \setminus is \}
us + [x] + min [is + nub ((xs \setminus us) \setminus is) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ vs']
= \{ \text{definition } (10.2) \}
us + [x] + hub \ vs' (xs \setminus us)
```

Hence:

```
hub \ ws \ (x : xs)
= \{ \text{expressions for } A \text{ and } B, \text{ assuming } x \notin xs \}
(us ++ [x] ++ nub \ (xs \setminus us)) \ \min \ (us ++ [x] ++ hub \ vs' \ (xs \setminus us) \}
= \{ \text{since } hub \ vs' \ (xs \setminus us) \leq nub \ (xs \setminus us) \}
us ++ [x] ++ hub \ vs' \ (xs \setminus us)
```

In the final case $x \in xs$ we can reason:

```
hub \ ws \ (x : xs)
= \{ \text{expressions for } A \text{ and } B, \text{ assuming } x \in xs \}
hub \ (us + [x]) \ xs \text{ min}
us + [x] + min \ [is + nub \ (xs \setminus (us + [x] + is)) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ vs'] \}
= \{ \text{since } ws = us + [x] + vs' \text{ and } (10.4) \}
min \ [is + nub \ (xs \setminus is) \mid is \leftarrow inits \ ws] \}
= \{ \text{definition of } hub \}
hub \ ws \ xs
```

The result of these calculations is summarised in Figure 10.1. Each membership test, list difference operation and evaluation of span takes linear time, so evaluation of hub takes linear time at each recursive call and quadratic time in total.

Introducing sets

The final step is to introduce an efficient representation of sets to reduce the complexity of the subsidiary operations from linear to logarithmic. Rather than program the set operations ourselves, we can invoke the Haskell library *Data.Set*. This library provides a data type *Set a* and the following operations (among others):

empty :: Set a

member :: $Ord \ a \Rightarrow a \rightarrow Set \ a \rightarrow Bool$ insert :: $Ord \ a \Rightarrow a \rightarrow Set \ a \rightarrow Set \ a$

split :: $Ord \ a \Rightarrow a \rightarrow Set \ a \rightarrow (Set \ a, Set \ a)$

elems :: $Ord \ a \Rightarrow Set \ a \rightarrow [a]$

The value *empty* denotes the empty set, *member* is the membership test, insert x xs inserts a new element x into the set xs, while split x splits a set into those elements less than x and those greater than x, and elems returns the elements of a set in increasing order. As to the costs, empty takes constant time, member, insert and split take $O(\log n)$ steps on a set of size n, while elems takes O(n) steps.

In order to introduce sets into the definition of nub we need a preprocessing phase that associates with each element x of xs the set of elements that come after it. That is, we need to compute

$$(x_1, \{x_2, x_3, \dots x_n\}), (x_2, \{x_3, \dots, x_n\}), \dots (x_n, \{\})$$

This list can be computed using the Haskell function scanr:

```
preprocess :: Ord a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [(a, Set \ a)]
preprocess xs = zip \ xs \ (tail \ (scanr \ insert \ empty \ xs))
```

The expression scanr insert empty $[x_1, x_2, \dots x_n]$ returns the list

$$[\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}, \{x_2, \dots, x_n\}, \dots, \{x_n\}, \{\}]$$

and takes $O(n \log n)$ steps to do so.

The result of installing sets in Figure 10.1 is given in Figure 10.2. Unfortunately, its running time is not $O(n \log n)$. To see why, let us estimate the costs of the various operations. Each membership test contributes $O(\log n)$ steps to the cost at each recursive call. So does *split*. Let m be the size of n us. Since n takes n takes n at a does concatenating the result with the rest of the list, and there are at most n elements in the final list, the total contribution of n and n to the final cost is n to the size of n to the final cost is n the size of n to the final cost is n to the size of n to the size of n the

```
hub\ empty \cdot preprocess
nub
                     zip xs (tail (scanr insert empty xs))
preprocess xs
hub \ ws \ [\ ]
hub\ ws\ ((x,xs):xss) =
   case (member\ x\ xs, member\ x\ ws) of
        (False, False) \rightarrow
                              eus + [x] + hub \ empty \ uss
        (False, True)
                              eus + [x] + hub vs yss
        (True, False)
                              hub (insert x us) xss
        (True, True)
                              hub ws xss
   where (us, vs) = split x ws
                      = elems us
           eus
                      = [(x, xs) \mid (x, xs) \leftarrow xss, not (member x us)]
           uss
```

Fig. 10.2 Introducing sets

cost of computing yss is $\Omega(n \log m)$ steps at each call, and summing this cost gives $\Omega(n^2)$ steps. As a specific example, consider the input

```
[1 ... n] + [j \mid j \leftarrow [1 ... n], j \mod 3 \neq 0]
```

The output is [1 ... n]. Each multiple of 3 causes the program to flush two elements from the set ws, namely [1,2], [4,5], [7,8] and so on, and the total cost of computing yss is quadratic in n.

One way to solve this problem is to introduce an additional argument ps into hub, defining hub' by

```
hub' :: Set \ a \rightarrow Set \ a \rightarrow [(a, Set \ a)] \rightarrow [a]
hub' \ ps \ ws \ xss = hub \ ws \ [(x, xs) \mid (x, xs) \leftarrow xss, \ x \notin ps]
```

Then we obtain the program of Figure 10.3. The cost of computing qs is $O(m \log n)$, where m is the size of us, rather than the $O(n \log m)$ cost of computing yss in the previous version. Since the combined size of the sets us for which this operation is performed is at most n, the total running time is $O(n \log n)$ steps.

Final remarks

It was quite a lot of work to achieve the result, and the final algorithm is neither pretty nor intuitive. A nagging doubt remains that there might be a much simpler solution to such a simply stated problem. But so far I have not been able to find one. The main calculation turned out to be quite intricate and bedevilled by case analysis. Nevertheless, the battle plan is common enough: obtain a recursive formulation of the problem and then

```
nub
               = hub' emptu emptu \cdot preprocess
preprocess xs
                   zip xs (tail (scanr insert empty xs))
hub' ps ws []
               = []
hub' ps ws ((x, xs) : xss) =
  if member x ps then hub' ps ws xss else
  case (member\ x\ xs, member\ x\ ws) of
       (False, False) \rightarrow
                            eus + + [x] + + hub' qs empty xss
       (False, True)
                            eus+[x]+hub' qs vs xss
       (True, False)
                            hub' ps (insert x us) xss
       (True, True) \rightarrow hub' ps ws xss
                   = split x ws
  where (us, vs)
                    = elems us
          eus
                    = foldr insert ps eus
          qs
```

Fig. 10.3 The final version

seek a generalised version that can be implemented efficiently. The same plan arises in the derivation of many efficient algorithms.

References

Bloom, S. L. and Wright, R. S. (2003). Some lower bounds on comparison-based algorithms. Unpublished research paper. Department of Computer Science, Steven's Institute of Technology, Hoboken, NJ, USA.

11

Not the maximum segment sum

Introduction

The maximum segment sum problem enjoyed a burst of popularity at the end of the 1980s, mostly as a showcase for programmers to illustrate their favourite style of program development or their particular theorem prover. The problem is to compute the maximum of the sums of all possible segments of a list of integers, positive or negative. But this pearl is not about the maximum segment sum. Instead, it is about the maximum non-segment sum. A segment of a list is a contiguous subsequence, while a non-segment is a subsequence that is not a segment. For example,

$$[-4, -3, -7, +2, +1, -2, -1, -4]$$

has maximum segment sum 3 (from the segment [+2,+1]) and maximum non-segment sum 2 (from the non-segment [+2,+1,-1]). There are no non-segments of a list with two or fewer elements. While there are $\Theta(n^2)$ segments of a list of length n, there are $\Theta(2^n)$ subsequences, and so many more non-segments than segments. Can one compute the maximum non-segment sum in linear time? Yes. There is a simple linear-time algorithm, and the aim of this pearl is to calculate it.

Specification

Here is the specification of mnss, the maximum non-segment sum:

mnss :: $[Int] \rightarrow Int$

 $mnss = maximum \cdot map \ sum \cdot nonsegs$

The function *nonsegs* returns a list of all non-segments of a list. To define this function we can mark each element of the list with a Boolean value: *True* to signify it is to be included in the non-segment and *False* to indicate it is not. We mark in all possible ways, filter the markings for those that correspond to non-segments and then extract those non-segments whose

elements are marked *True*. The function *markings* returns all possible markings:

```
markings :: [a] \rightarrow [[(a, Bool)]]

markings xs = [zip \ xs \ bs \ | \ bs \leftarrow booleans \ (length \ xs)]

booleans 0 = [[\ ]]

booleans (n+1) = [b:bs \ | \ b \leftarrow [True, False], \ bs \leftarrow booleans \ n]
```

Markings are in one-to-one correspondence with subsequences. We can now define

```
nonsegs :: [a] \rightarrow [[a]]

nonsegs = extract \cdot filter \ nonseg \cdot markings

extract :: [[(a, Bool)]] \rightarrow [[a]]

extract = map \ (map \ fst \cdot filter \ snd)
```

The function $nonseg :: [(a, Bool)] \to Bool$ returns True on a list xms if and only if $map \ snd \ xms$ describes a non-segment marking. The Boolean list ms is a non-segment marking if and only if it is an element of the set represented by the regular expression

$$F^*T^+F^+T(T+F)^*$$

in which True is abbreviated to T and False to F. The regular expression identifies the leftmost gap T^+F^+T that makes the sequence a non-segment.

The finite automaton for recognising members of the corresponding regular set needs four states:

```
data State = E \mid S \mid M \mid N
```

State E (for Empty) is the starting state; when the automaton is in state E, markings only in the set F^* have been recognised. State S (for Suffix) is when the automaton has processed one or more Ts, so indicates markings in the set F^*T^+ , a non-empty suffix of Ts. State M (for Middle) is to indicate markings in the set $F^*T^+F^+$, a middle segment, and state N (for Non-segment) for non-segment markings. We can now define

```
nonseg = (= N) \cdot foldl \ step \ E \cdot map \ snd
```

where the middle term $foldlstep\,E$ executes the steps of the finite automaton:

```
egin{array}{ll} step \ E \ False = E & step \ M \ False = M \ step \ E \ True = S & step \ M \ True = N \ step \ S \ False = M & step \ N \ False = N \ step \ N \ True = N \ \end{array}
```

Finite automata process their input from left to right, which explains the use of *foldl*. We could equally as well have processed lists from right to left, and looked for the rightmost gap, but why break with convention unnecessarily? Notice also that there is nothing special here about the *nonseg* property: any property of markings that can be recognised by a finite-state automaton yields to exactly the same treatment.

Derivation

Here is the definition of mnss again:

```
mnss = maximum \cdot map \ sum \cdot extract \cdot filter \ nonseg \cdot markings
extract = map \ (map \ fst \cdot filter \ snd)
nonseg = (== N) \cdot foldl \ step \ E \cdot map \ snd
```

Our plan of attack is to express $extract \cdot filter\ nonseg \cdot markings$ as an instance of foldl and then to apply the fusion law of foldl to complete the passage to a better algorithm. To this end, define pick by

```
\begin{array}{lll} pick & :: & State \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [[a]] \\ pick \ q & = & extract \cdot filter \ ((==q) \cdot foldl \ step \ E \cdot map \ snd) \cdot markings \end{array}
```

In particular, nonsegs = pick N. We claim that the following seven equations hold:

```
\begin{array}{lll} pick \; E \; xs & = & [[\;]] \\ pick \; S \; [\;] & = & [\;] \\ pick \; S \; (xs + [x]) & = & map \; (++[x]) \; (pick \; S \; xs \; + \; pick \; E \; xs) \\ pick \; M \; [\;] & = & [\;] \\ pick \; M \; (xs + [x]) & = & pick \; M \; xs \; + \; pick \; S \; xs \\ pick \; N \; [\;] & = & [\;] \\ pick \; N \; (xs + [x]) & = & pick \; N \; xs \; + \\ & & map \; (++[x]) \; (pick \; N \; xs \; + \; pick \; M \; xs) \end{array}
```

The pukka way to derive these equations is through due process of calculation from the definition of $pick\ q$, but the steps are tedious and we will not bother. Instead, each equation can be justified by appeal to step. For example, the equation for $pick\ E$ is justified because step returns E only on empty subsequences. Similarly for $pick\ S$, because step returns S only when S is marked S and preceded either by an element of S and S are the other definitions can be justified in a similar way. Again, there is nothing specific to non-segments: any finite automaton with S states that recognises correct markings can be systematically transformed into essentially S functions that operate directly on the given input.

The next step is to recast the definition of pick as an instance of foldl. Consider the function pickall, specified by

```
pickall \ xs = (pick \ E \ xs, pick \ S \ xs, pick \ M \ xs, pick \ N \ xs)
```

The following definition of *pickall* as an instance of *foldl* follows from the definitions above:

```
pickall = foldl step ([[]],[],[],[])
step (ess, nss, mss, sss) x = (ess, map (++[x]) (sss ++ ess), mss ++ sss, mss ++ map (++[x]) (nss ++ mss))
```

Our problem now takes the form

```
mnss = maximum \cdot map \ sum \cdot fourth \cdot pickall
```

where *fourth* returns the fourth element of a quadruple. We can move the *fourth* to the front of the expression on the right by introducing

$$tuple f(w, x, y, z) = (f w, f x, f y, f z)$$

Then we have

```
maximum \cdot map \ sum \cdot fourth = fourth \cdot tuple \ (maximum \cdot map \ sum)
```

so $mnss = fourth \cdot tuple (maximum \cdot map sum) \cdot pickall.$

As hoped for, we are now in a position to apply the fusion law of *foldl*. This law states that f(foldl g a xs) = foldl h b xs for all finite lists xs provided that f(a) = b and f(g(x)) = h(f(x))y for all x and y. In our problem we have the instantiations

```
\begin{array}{lcl} f & = & tuple \; (maximum \cdot map \; sum) \\ g & = & step \\ a & = & ([[\;]],[\;],[\;],[\;]) \end{array}
```

It remains to find h and b to satisfy the fusion conditions. First:

```
tuple \; (maximum \cdot map \; sum) \; ([[\;]], [\;], [\;], [\;]) \;\; = \;\; (0, -\infty, -\infty, -\infty)
```

because the maximum of an empty set of numbers is $-\infty$. This gives the definition of b. For h we need to satisfy the equation

```
tuple (maximum \cdot map \ sum) (step (ess, sss, mss, nss) x)
= h (tuple (maximum \cdot map \ sum) (ess, sss, mss, nss)) x
```

To derive h we look at each component in turn. To keep expressions short, abbreviate maximum to max. For the fourth component we reason:

```
max (map sum (nss + map (++[x]) (nss + mss)))
= \{definition of map\}
max (map sum nss + map (sum \cdot (++[x])) (nss + mss))
= \{since sum \cdot (++[x]) = (+x) \cdot sum\}
max (map sum nss + map ((+x) \cdot sum) (nss + mss))
= \{since max (xs + ys) = (max xs) max (max ys)\}
max (map sum nss) max max (map ((+x) \cdot sum) (nss + mss))
= \{since max \cdot map (+x) = (+x) \cdot max\}
max (map sum nss) max (max (map sum (nss + mss)) + x)
= \{introducing n = max (map sum nss) and
m = max (map sum mss)\}
n max ((n max m) + x)
```

The other three components are treated similarly, and we arrive at

```
h(e, s, m, n) x
= (e, (s \max e) + x, m \max s, n \max ((n \max m) + x))
```

and $mnss = fourth \cdot foldl \ h \ (0, -\infty, -\infty, -\infty).$

That, basically, is it. Well, we still have to deal with the fictitious $-\infty$ values. Perhaps the best method is to eliminate them entirely by considering the first three elements of the list separately:

```
\begin{array}{lll} mnss \ xs & = \ fourth \ (foldl \ h \ (start \ (take \ 3 \ xs)) \ (drop \ 3 \ xs)) \\ start \ [x,y,z] & = \ (0, max \ [x+y+z,y+z,z], max \ [x,x+y,y], x+z) \end{array}
```

Not quite as pretty, but more effective.

Final remarks

The origins of the maximum segment sum problem go back to about 1975, and its history is described in one of Bentley's (1987) programming pearls. For a derivation using invariant assertions, see Gries (1990); for an algebraic approach, see Bird (1989). The problem refuses to go away, and variations are still an active topic for algorithm designers because of potential applications in data-mining and bioinformatics; see Mu (2008) for recent results.

The interest in the non-segment problem is what it tells us about any maximum marking problem in which the marking criterion can be formulated

as a regular expression. For instance, it is immediate that there is an O(nk) algorithm for computing the maximum at-least-length-k segment problem because $F^*T^nF^*$ ($n \geq k$) can be recognised by a k-state automaton. And even non-regular conditions such as $F^*T^nF^*T^nF^*$ ($n \geq 0$), whose recogniser requires an unbounded number of states, is susceptible to the same method. What is more, the restriction to lists is not necessary either; one can solve maximum marking problems about a whole variety of data types in a similar way.

References

- Bentley, J. R. (1987). Programming Pearls. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
- Bird, R. S. (1989). Algebraic identities for program calculation. *Computer Journal* **32** (2), 122–6.
- Gries, D. (1990). The maximum segment sum problem. In Formal Development of Programs and Proofs, ed. E. W. Dijkstra et al. University of Texas at Austin Year of Programming Series. Menlo Park. Addison-Wesley, pp. 43–5.
- Mu, S.-C. (2008). The maximum segment sum is back. Partial Evaluation and Program Manipulation (PEPM '08), pp. 31–9.

12

Ranking suffixes

Introduction

The idea of ranking the elements of a list crops up frequently. An element x is assigned rank r if there are exactly r elements of the list less than x. For example, rank [51, 38, 29, 51, 63, 38] = <math>[3, 1, 0, 3, 5, 1]. This scheme ranks from 0 and from lowest to highest, but one can also rank from 1 and from highest to lowest, as when ranking candidates by their marks in an examination. Rankings are distinct if and only if the list does not contain duplicates, in which case rank xs is a permutation of [0...length xs - 1].

In this pearl we consider the problem of ranking the suffixes of a list rather than the list itself. It takes $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps to rank a list of length n, assuming a test x < y takes constant time. Since in the worst case it takes $\Theta(n)$ such tests to make one lexicographic comparison between two suffixes of a list of length n, it seems that ranking the suffixes of a list should require $\Theta(n^2 \log n)$ basic comparisons. The point of this pearl is to show that only $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps are necessary. Asymptotically speaking, it takes no more time to rank the suffixes of a list than it does to rank the list itself. Surprising but true.

Specification

In Haskell the suffixes of a list are called its *tails*, and henceforth we will refer to tails rather than suffixes. The function *tails* returns the *nonempty* tails of a list in decreasing order of length:

```
tails :: [a] \rightarrow [[a]]

tails [] = []

tails xs = xs : tails (tail xs)
```

This definition of tails differs from the standard Haskell function of the same name, which returns all the tails, including the empty tail. The function rank can be specified by

```
rank :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [Int]

rank \ xs = map \ (\lambda x \rightarrow length \ (filter \ (< x) \ xs)) \ xs
```

This definition takes $\Theta(n^2)$ steps on a list of length n, but rank can be improved to take $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps, something we will take up later on.

The required function, ranktails say, can now be defined by

```
ranktails :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [Int]

ranktails = rank \cdot tails
```

Our task is to implement ranktails to take $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps.

Properties of rank

We will need various properties of rank, the most important of which is that rank maintains order: if we know only rank xs, then we know everything about the relative order of the elements of xs, though nothing about the nature of the elements themselves. Suppose we define $xs \approx ys$ to mean rank xs = rank ys. Then $xs \approx ys$ if the elements in xs have the same relative order as the elements in ys. As two examples among many:

$$xs \approx zip \ xs \ xs$$
 and $zip (zip \ xs \ ys) \ zs \approx zip \ xs (zip \ ys \ zs)$

We will also need the following property of rank. Let $select :: [a] \rightarrow [a]$ be any function such that:

- (i) every element in select xs is in xs;
- (ii) $select \cdot map f = map f \cdot select$ for any f.

Then

$$rank \cdot select \cdot rank = rank \cdot select$$
 (12.1)

In particular, taking select = id we have $rank \cdot rank = rank$, and taking select = tail, we have $rank \cdot tail \cdot rank = rank \cdot tail$. The proof of (12.1) is left as an instructive exercise to the interested reader.

Finally, a useful idea associated with ranking is that of refining one ranking by another one. Suppose we define the operation \ll , pronounced "refined by", by

$$xs \ll ys = rank (zip \ xs \ ys)$$
 (12.2)

For example, $[3,1,3,0,1] \ll [2,0,3,4,0] = [2,1,3,0,1]$. Thus, equal ranks in xs may be refined to distinct ranks in $xs \ll ys$. The operation \ll is

associative. Here is the proof:

```
(xs \ll ys) \ll zs
= \{(12.2)\}
rank (zip (rank (zip xs ys)) zs)
= \{since zip us vs \approx zip (rank us) vs\}
rank (zip (zip xs ys) zs)
= \{since zip (zip xs ys) zs \approx zip xs (zip ys zs)\}
rank (zip xs (zip ys zs))
= \{as before\}
xs \ll (ys \ll zs)
```

Observe also that if a ranking xs consists of distinct elements, and therefore is a permutation of [0 ... n-1], where n = length xs, then $xs \ll ys = xs$ for any ys of the same length as xs. In words, once a ranking is a permutation it cannot be further refined.

A better algorithm

One obvious approach to improving the performance of *ranktails*, given its target complexity, is to look for a divide and conquer solution based on the decomposition

$$tails (xs + ys) = map (++ys) (tails xs) + tails ys$$

But this does not seem to lead anywhere. Instead, we take another approach and first generalise ranktails to a function rats by replacing the lexicographic comparison test (<) with ($<_k$), where $xs <_k ys = take k xs < take k ys$. In other words, we rank the tails of a list by looking only at the first k elements of each tail. Define rats by

$$rats \ k = rank \cdot map \ (take \ k) \cdot tails \tag{12.3}$$

We have $ranktails\ xs = rats\ (length\ xs)\ xs$, so rats is a generalisation of ranktails. The main reason for the name rats, apart from being a compression of both rank and tails, is that it is pronounceable and short enough to avoid lengthy expressions in calculations.

The key to the derivation of a faster algorithm for *ranktails* is the following property of *rats*:

$$rats (2*k) xs = rats k xs \ll shiftBy k (rats k xs)$$
 (12.4)

We will prove this, and also give the definition of shiftBy, later on. Since $xs \approx map\ (take\ 1)\ (tails\ xs)$ we have $rats\ 1 = rank$. The idea is to use (12.4) to successively rank $map\ (take\ 2)\ (tails\ xs)$, $map\ (take\ 4)\ (tails\ xs)$ and so on until we reach a permutation. Thus, we propose the following algorithm for ranktails:

```
ranktails = apply Until is perm rerankings \cdot rank

rerankings = map rerank (iterate (*2) 1)

rerank k rs = rs \ll shift By k rs
```

The function applyUntil is a variant of the standard function until and is defined by

```
applyUntil :: (a \rightarrow Bool) \rightarrow [a \rightarrow a] \rightarrow a

applyUntil\ p\ (f:fs)\ x = if p\ x then x else applyUntil\ p\ fs\ (f\ x)
```

The function *isperm* tests whether a ranking is a permutation and can be defined using a Haskell array:¹

```
isperm :: [Int] \rightarrow Bool

isperm is = and (elems

(accumArray (\lor) False (0, n-1) (zip is (repeat True))))

where n = length is
```

This definition of *isperm* takes linear time.

In words, ranktails first ranks the elements of the input and then successively applies rerank 1, rerank 2, rerank 4 and so on until the result is a permutation. Note that it is only the very first ranking that inspects the input; the remaining rerankings deal exclusively with ranks; that is, lists of integers. At worst, ranktails xs requires $\log n$ rerankings where $n = \operatorname{length} xs$. Assuming rank takes $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps and shiftBy takes $\Theta(n)$ steps, the new version of ranktails takes $\Theta(n \log^2 n)$ steps. Better than $\Theta(n^2 \log n)$, but not yet at our target complexity of $\Theta(n \log n)$.

Proof

Now we prove (12.4), and at the same time discover a definition of shiftBy. We are going to need a number of additional properties involving lists, tails and rankings, the first of which is that

```
all\ (not \cdot null)\ xss \ \Rightarrow xss = zip\ With\ (:)\ (map\ head\ xss)\ (map\ tail\ xss)
```

 $^{^{1}}$ An almost identical program was used in the pearl "The smallest free number"; see pearl 1.

To reduce the parenthesis count in expressions we rewrite the consequent in the form

$$id = zipWith(:) \cdot fork(map\ head, map\ tail)$$
 (12.5)

where fork(f, g) = (f x, g x) and zipWith(:) is quietly assumed to be non-curried. Proofs of this and other properties are omitted.

We start by calculating

=

$$\begin{array}{ll} rats \ (k+1) \\ = & \{(12.3)\} \\ rank \cdot map \ (take \ (k+1)) \cdot tails \\ = & \{(12.5) \ \text{since all} \ (not \cdot null) \cdot map \ (take \ (k+1)) \cdot tails \} \\ rank \cdot zip With \ (:) \cdot fork \ (map \ head, map \ tail) \cdot \\ map \ (take \ (k+1)) \cdot tails \end{array}$$

Now, $fork(f, g) \cdot h = fork(f \cdot h, g \cdot h)$ and

$$map\ head \cdot map\ (take\ (k+1)) \cdot tails = id$$
 $map\ tail \cdot map\ (take\ (k+1)) \cdot tails = snoc\ [\] \cdot tail \cdot map\ (take\ k) \cdot tails$

where $snoc \ x \ xs = xs + [x]$. Hence we can continue:

```
rank \cdot zip With (:) \cdot fork (map \ head, map \ tail) \cdot map (take (k+1)) \cdot tails {above} rank \cdot zip With (:) \cdot fork (id, snoc [] \cdot tail \cdot map (take \ k) \cdot tails)
```

The next step is to see that zip With (:) $xs xss \approx zip xs xss$, or, more briefly, zip With (:) $\approx zip$, where zip is also quietly assumed to be non-curried. Hence we obtain

$$rats\ (k+1) = rank \cdot zip \cdot fork\ (id, snoc\ [\] \cdot tail \cdot map\ (take\ k) \cdot tails)$$

Now $rank \cdot zip = (\ll)$ by (12.2). And since $xs \ll ys = xs \ll rank \ ys$, that gets us to

$$rats\ (k+1) = (\ll) \cdot fork\ (id, rank \cdot snoc\ [\] \cdot tail \cdot map\ (take\ k) \cdot tails)$$

Now
$$rank \cdot snoc[] = lift \cdot rank$$
, where $lift = snoc \ 0 \cdot map \ (+1)$, so

$$rats(k+1) = (\ll) \cdot fork(id, lift \cdot rank \cdot tail \cdot map(take k) \cdot tails)$$

Next we claim that $lift \cdot rank \cdot tail \approx lift \cdot tail \cdot rank$. Here is the proof:

$$lift (rank (tail xs)) \approx lift (tail (rank xs))$$

Hence $rats(k+1) = (\ll) \cdot fork(id, lift \cdot tail \cdot rats k)$. Equivalently:

$$rats (k+1) xs = rank xs \ll shift (rats k xs)$$
 (12.6)

where $shift = lift \cdot tail$ and lift is = map(+1) is + [0].

The next step is to exploit the fact that

$$shift (is \ll js) = shift is \ll shift js$$

and the associativity of \ll . Then we obtain from (12.6) that

$$rats \ k \ xs = rs \ll shift \ rs \ll shift^2 \ rs \ll \cdots \ll shift^{k-1} \ rs$$

where $rs = rank \ xs$ and $shift^k$ is the k-fold composition of shift with itself. It is now easy to group terms in this series expansion for rats to obtain

$$rats (2*k) xs = rats k xs \ll shift^k (rats k xs)$$

Finally, we can set $shiftBy k = shift^k$ to establish (12.4). In fact, we have

$$shiftBy \ k \ rs = map \ (+k) \ (drop \ k \ rs) + [k-1, k-2 \dots 0]$$

Evaluation of shiftBy k rs takes $\Theta(n)$ steps where n = length rs.

A better rank

We turn next to a better method for computing rank. As every examiner knows, the way to rank a list of candidate—mark pairs, given in candidate order, is first to partition the candidates by sorting them according to their marks, and placing candidates with equal marks into groups. Then each candidate in the first group receives rank 0, each candidate in the second group receives rank g_0 , where g_0 is the size of the first group, each candidate in the third group receives rank $g_0 + g_1$, where g_1 is the size of the second group, and so on. The result is then resorted in the original candidate order. This method is formalised by

$$rank = resort \cdot concat \cdot label \cdot psort \cdot zip [0..]$$

```
\begin{array}{lll} psort & :: & Ord \ b \Rightarrow [(a,b)] \rightarrow [[a]] \\ pass \ [ \ ] xss & = & pass \ xys \ [ \ ] \\ pass \ (e@(x,y):xys) \ xss & = & step \ xys \ [ \ ] \ [x] \ [ \ ] xss \\ \hline \textbf{where} & \\ step \ [ \ ] as \ bs \ cs \ xss & = & pass \ as \ (bs:pass \ cs \ xss) \\ step \ (e@(x,y'):xys) \ as \ bs \ cs \ xss & | \ y' < y = step \ xs \ as \ (x:bs) \ cs \ xss \\ | \ y' > y = step \ xs \ as \ bs \ (e:cs) \ xss \\ | \ y' > y = step \ xs \ as \ bs \ (e:cs) \ xss \\ \end{array}
```

Fig. 12.1 Partition sorting

The function psort, short for partition sort, partitions a list of candidate—mark pairs by sorting by mark and grouping candidates with equal marks into runs. The marks, having served their purpose, are discarded. One way of implementing psort is presented in Figure 12.1. The method used is a version of ternary quicksort in which the head of a list is chosen as the pivot in the partitioning step. As a consequence, psort takes $\Theta(n^2)$ steps in the worst case. Choosing the pivot to be the median element brings the cost down to $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps.

The function *label* is defined by

```
 \begin{array}{lll} label & :: & [[a]] \rightarrow [[(a,Int)]] \\ label \ xss & = & zip\ With \ tag \ xss \ (scanl \ (+) \ 0 \ (map \ length \ xss)) \\ tag \ xs \ k & = & [(x,k) \mid x \leftarrow xs] \end{array}
```

Finally, resort can be implemented by using a Haskell array:

```
resort :: [(Int, Int)] \rightarrow [Int]
resort ijs = elems (array (0, length ijs - 1) ijs)
```

The value array (0, n-1) ijs builds an array indexed from 0 to n-1 whose index-value pairs are given by the association list ijs. The first components of ijs have to be a permutation of [0..n-1] for the result to be well defined. Both array and elems take linear time, so resort takes linear time.

The final algorithm

The revised implementation of *rank* leads to an alternative implementation of *ranktails* in which ranking is subordinated to partitioning. Suppose we introduce

```
partition :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [[Int]]

partition = psort \cdot zip [0..]
```

Then $rank = resort \cdot concat \cdot label \cdot partition$. Furthermore, \ll can be expressed in terms of partition because it is expressed in terms of partition. That means we can regroup terms and express partition rather than partition advantage of doing so is that partition returns a permutation if and only if partition returns a list all of whose elements are singletons, so partition can be replaced by partition where partition elements are singletons, so partition can be replaced by partition where partition elements are singletons, so partition can be replaced by partition these changes leads to

```
ranktails = resort \cdot concat \cdot label \cdot applyUntil (all single) repartitions \cdot partition
repartitions = map repartition (iterate (*2) 1)
repartition k iss = partition(zip rs (shiftBy k rs))
\mathbf{where} \ rs = resort (concat (label iss))
```

This version has the same time complexity as the previous one, but it opens up the route for further optimisation. In fact, we are now just two steps away from our goal of a $\Theta(n \log n)$ algorithm for ranktails.

The first of these is to make use of the identity

```
partition (zip xs ys)
= concatMap (psort \cdot map (install ys)) (partition xs) 
(12.7)
```

where

$$install \ ys \ i = (i, ys !! \ i) \tag{12.8}$$

In words, one can partition a list of pairs by first partitioning with respect to first components and refining the result using the second components. The correct second components can be installed in each run because each run is a list of positions. After installation, each run is partition sorted and the results concatenated.

To be accurate, (12.7) holds only if *psort* is a *stable* sorting algorithm and the implementation in Figure 12.1 is not stable. If *psort* is not stable then the elements in each run will appear in a different order in the left-and right-hand sides. But (12.7) does hold if we interpret equality of two partitions to mean equal up to some permutation of the elements in each run. Since the computation of *ranktails* does not depend on the precise order of the elements in a run, that is all that is required.

We are now ready to rewrite repartition:

```
repartition k iss

\{\text{definition, setting } rs = resort \left(concat \left(label \ iss\right)\right)\}

partition(zip \ rs \left(shiftBy \ k \ rs\right))
```

```
= \{(12.7)\}
concatMap (psort \cdot map (install (shiftBy k rs))) (partition rs)
= \{since iss = partition xs implies rs = rank xs 
and partition \cdot rank = partition\}
concatMap (psort \cdot map (install (shiftBy k rs))) iss
```

Hence

```
repartition k iss = concatMap(psort \cdot map(install \ rs)) iss

where rs = shiftBy \ k \ (resort \ (concat \ (label \ iss)))
```

We are nearly there, but (12.8) gives an inefficient way of computing *install* because it uses list-indexing (!!) which is not constant time. Better is to use array-indexing (!) which does take constant time. The final step is to rewrite *install*:

```
(shiftBy \ k \ (resort \ (concat \ (label \ iss)))) \ !! \ i
= \  \{ \text{definition of } shiftBy \} 
(map \ (+k) \ (drop \ k \ (resort \ (concat \ (label \ iss)))) \ !! \ i
[k-1,k-2..0]) \ !! \ i
= \  \{ \text{arithmetic, with } n = length(concat \ (label \ iss)) \ and \ j = i+k \} 
\text{if } j < n \ \text{then } k + (resort \ (concat \ (label \ iss))) \ !! \ j \ \text{else } n-i-1 
= \  \{ \text{definition of } resort \ \text{and } elems \ a \ !! \ i = a \ ! \ i \} 
\text{if } j < n \ \text{then } k + array \ (0, n-1) \ (concat \ (label \ iss)))) \ ! \ j 
\text{else } n-i-1
```

The final program for *ranktails* is recorded in Figure 12.2. The length of the input is computed once and passed to the various subsidiary functions that need it.

Analysis

It remains to time ranktails. We will do this by estimating the total number of comparisons T(n,k) required to carry out k repartitions on a list of length n. The key to the analysis is to appreciate that the computation of ranktails is essentially the same as partition sorting a list of n vectors, each of dimension k, by sorting on each dimension in turn. The first components of these vectors consist of the elements of the input, but each subsequent component is an integer which is determined dynamically from the result of sorting with respect to previous components. Unlike the implementation of psort given in Figure 12.1 we will suppose that each partition step chooses

```
ranktails
                            Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [Int]
                            (resort \ n \cdot concat \cdot label \cdot 
ranktails xs
                             applyUntil\ (all\ single)\ (repartitions\ n) .
                             psort \cdot zip [0..]) xs
                            where n = length xs
resort n
                            elems \cdot array(0, n-1)
                       =
                            zip With tag iss (scanl (+) 0 (map length iss))
label iss
                            [(i,j) \mid i \leftarrow is]
taa is i
                       =
                            map (repartition n) (iterate (*2) 1)
repartitions n
                       =
                            concatMap (psort \cdot map install) iss
repartition n k iss
                       =
                            (i, if j < n then k + a ! j else n-i-1)
  where install i
                       =
                            array(0, n-1)(concat(label iss))
           a
```

Fig. 12.2 The final algorithm for ranktails

a pivot that is the median of the possible pivots. For example, in sorting on the first component, a pivot p is chosen so that some positive number, say x, of elements of the list have first components equal to p and an equal number, namely (n-x)/2, of elements whose first components are less than p, and elements whose second components are greater than p. The run of x elements are sorted on first component, so it remains to sort them on the remaining components. But the other two lists have still to be sorted on all components. Since partitioning n elements requires n-1 comparisons, we can define T(n,k) by the recurrence relation

```
\begin{array}{lcl} T(0,k) & = & 0 \\ T(n,0) & = & 0 \\ T(n,k) & = & (\max x : 1 \le x \le n : n{-}1{+}T(x,k{-}1){+}2T((n{-}x)/2,k)) \end{array}
```

We now show that $T(n,k) \leq n(\log n + k)$. By induction, this inequality follows if

```
n-1+x(\log x+k-1)+(n-x)[\log(n-x)+k-1] \le n(\log n+k)
```

for $1 \le x \le n$. This inequality can be established by high-school calculus. Finally, since $k = \log n$, we have that the number of comparisons required to evaluate ranktails on a list of length n is at most $2n \log n$, and the total running time is $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps.

Experimental results

That was quite a lot of calculational effort to obtain the final algorithm, but is it actually better in practice than the naive one? We profiled three versions of the algorithm:

File	Size	Chars	AlgA1	AlgB1	AlgC1	AlgA2	AlgB2	AlgC2
dna	10424	5	0.08	0.10	0.08	0.04	0.08	0.16
ps	367639	87	2.76	10.96	2.32	3.18	22.50	3.54
txt	148480	72	0.48	3.08	0.72	0.86	6.06	1.28
ptt5	513216	159	_	136.38	8.70	611.3	37.78	6.32
alla	1000	1	2.96	0.10	0.02	0.18	0.06	0.02

Fig. 12.3 Running times of three versions for various files

- (A) the specification of *ranktails* but with the definition of *rank* based on partition sorting;
- (B) the improved algorithm that used repeated rerankings;
- (C) the final program of Figure 12.2.

All algorithms were run with the implementation of psort described in Figure 12.1 (AlgA1, AlgB1 and AlgC1), and then with a guaranteed $\Theta(n \log n)$ algorithm based on mergesort (AlgA2, AlgB2 and AlgC2). The programs were compiled with GHC. Five different kinds of input were used: (i) a DNA file; (ii) a postscript file; (iii) the file alice29.txt from the Canterbury corpus and containing the text of Alice in Wonderland; (iv) a picture file ptt5 from the same corpus; and (v) a text file containing 1000 occurrences of the letter "a". Running times in Figure 12.3 are in seconds. The second column gives the number of characters in the file and the third column the number of distinct characters. The entry for AlgA1 in the ptt5 row is blank because the computation was abandoned after 12 hours. Highlighted entries show the best performance for each row.

The figures reveal a complicated picture. First, as expected, the AlgB1 and AlgB2 variants showed no advantage over either the naive or superior versions. But, apart from the last two rows, the naive algorithms performed about as well as the superior ones. Moreover, the algorithms based on ternary quicksort were roughly twice as fast as those based on mergesort. But the picture changes with ptt5, a file that mostly contains null characters, and with alla, the file that contains just the letter "a". Here, the superior algorithm is much better. Although not better than the others in all situations, AlgC1 seems to be the best overall.

Final remarks

Our final algorithm for *ranktails* is closely related to an algorithm for sorting the suffixes of a list proposed by Larsson and Sadakane (1999). Indeed, the

whole pearl was inspired by their work. Ranking a list and sorting a list are closely related operations and each can be computed quickly from the other. In particular, the function sorttails that returns the unique permutation that sorts the tails of a list can be obtained from the final program for ranktails simply by replacing resort concat label in the first line of ranktails by concat. The function sorttails is needed as a preliminary step in the Burrows-Wheeler algorithm for data compression, a problem we will take up in the following pearl. The problem of sorting the suffixes of a string has been treated extensively in the literature because it has other applications in string matching and bioinformatics; a good source is Gusfield (1997).

This pearl was rewritten a number of times. Initially we started out with the idea of computing *perm*, a permutation that sorts a list. But *perm* is too specific in the way it treats duplicates: there is more than one permutation that sorts a list containing duplicate elements. One cannot get very far with *perm* unless one generalises to either *rank* or *partition*. We reformulated the problem in terms of *rank*, but ended up with the idea of partitioning a list rather than ranking it. Nevertheless, *rank* entered the picture again for the final optimisation step.

References

Larsson, N. J. and Sadakane, K. (1999). Faster suffix sorting. Research Report LU-CS-TR-99-214, Department of Computer Science, Lund University, Sweden.

Gusfield, D. (1997). Algorithms on Strings, Trees and Sequences. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.

13

The Burrows–Wheeler transform

Introduction

The Burrows–Wheeler transform (BWT) is a method for permuting a list with the aim of bringing repeated elements together. Its main use is as a preprocessing step in data compression. Lists with many repeated adjacent elements can be encoded compactly using simple schemes such as run length or move-to-front encoding. The result can then be fed into more advanced compressors, such as Huffman or arithmetic coding,¹ to compress the input even more.

Clearly, the best way of bringing repeated elements together is just to sort the list. But the idea has a major flaw as a preliminary to compression: there is no way to recover the original list unless the complete sorting permutation is also produced as part of the output. Without the ability to recover the original input, data compression is pointless; and if a permutation has to be produced as well, then compression is ineffective. Instead, the BWT achieves a more modest permutation, one that brings some but not all repeated elements into adjacent positions. The main advantage of the BWT is that the transform can be inverted using a single additional piece of information, namely an integer k in the range $0 \le k < n$, where n is the length of the (nonempty) input list. In this pearl we describe the BWT, identify the fundamental reason why inversion is possible, and use it to derive the inverse transform from its specification.

Defining the BWT

Applied to a list xs the BWT sorts the rotations of xs, producing a matrix of rotated lists, and then returns the last column of the sorted matrix together with the position of xs in the matrix. As an illustration, consider the string yokohama. The rotations and the sorted rotations are pictured in

¹ Arithmetic coding is considered in two subsequent pearls; see Pearls 24 and 25.

```
vokohama
                    amavokoh
 okohamay
                    avokoham
2 kohamayo
                  2
                   hamayoko
3
 ohamavok
                  3
                   kohamavo
 hamayoko
                   mayokoha
                    ohamayok
5
                  5
 amayokoh
6 mayokoha
                  6
                    okohamay
 ayokoham
                   yokohama
```

Fig. 13.1 Rotations and sorted rotations

Figure 13.1. The output of the transform is the string hmooakya, the last column of the second matrix, and the number 7 because row 7 is the position of yokohama in the second matrix.

It is straightforward to specify the BWT:

```
transform :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow ([a], Int)

transform \ xs = (map \ last \ xss, position \ xs \ xss)

\mathbf{where} \ xss = sort \ (rots \ xs)
```

The position of row xs in the matrix xss is defined by

```
position \ xs \ xss = length \ (take While \ (\neq xs) \ xss)
```

and the rotations of a nonempty list by

```
rots :: [a] \rightarrow [[a]]

rots xs = take (length xs) (iterate lrot xs)

where lrot (x : xs) = xs + + [x]
```

The subsidiary function lrot performs a single left rotation. The code for transform is not efficient, but we will ignore that problem for now.²

The function *transform* is helpful for compression because, applied to a text, it brings together characters with a common context. To give a brief illustration, an English text will contain many occurrences of words such as "this", "the", "that" and so on, as well as many occurrences of "where", "which", "when" and so on. Consequently, many of the rotations beginning with "h" will end with either a "t" or a "w". As a contrived example, transforming "this, that or the other" produces

```
(te,rshhhtttth oeia or, 22)
```

In this example all but one of the "t"s have been brought together.

² We will also ignore the fact that transform[] = ([], 0) and consider only nonempty lists as valid arguments to transform.

The inverse untransform :: Ord $a \Rightarrow ([a], Int) \rightarrow [a]$ is, naturally enough, specified (over nonempty lists) by

```
untransform \cdot transform = id
```

The problem is how to compute *untransform*. The obvious method, if it can be made to work, is to use the first component of the result of *transform* to recreate the sorted matrix of rotations and then to use the second component to select the appropriate row. Fleshing out the idea, suppose recreate :: Ord $a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [[a]]$ can be constructed to satisfy

```
recreate \cdot map\ last \cdot sort \cdot rots = sort \cdot rots
```

Then we can define untransform $(ys, k) = (recreate\ ys) !!\ k$, where (!!) is the list-indexing operator. But can we really recreate the whole matrix of sorted rotations simply by knowing its last column? Yes we can, and the derivation of recreate is a fascinating exercise in program calculation.

Recreational calculation

Suppose in all that follows that the input to recreate is a list of length n, so recreate has to recreate an $n \times n$ matrix. The idea is to recreate the matrix column by column. Define takeCols by

```
takeCols :: Int \rightarrow [[a]] \rightarrow [[a]]

takeCols j = map(take j)
```

Thus, $takeCols\ j$ takes the first j columns of an $n \times n$ matrix. In particular, $takeCols\ n$ is the identity function. We therefore replace recreate with the function $recreate\ n$, specified by the property

```
recreate \ j \cdot map \ last \cdot sort \cdot rots = takeCols \ j \cdot sort \cdot rots (13.1)
```

Thus, recreatej recreates the first j columns of the sorted matrix of rotations from its last column.

The plan of attack is to construct an inductive definition of *recreate*. The base case is easy:

```
recreate 0 = map (const [])
```

Applied to a list ys of length n, the result of recreate 0 is a column of n empty lists. Since $takeCols\ 0$ applied to any $n \times n$ matrix also produces n empty lists, (13.1) is established for the case j = 0.

The fun begins with the inductive case. We will need three additional ingredients to make up the recipe. The first ingredient is a function *rrot* for performing a single right rotation:

$$rrot$$
 :: $[a] \rightarrow [a]$
 $rrot xs = [last xs] + init xs$

Equivalently, rrot(xs + |x|) = |x| + xs. The crucial property of rrot is

$$map \ rrot \cdot rots = rrot \cdot rots \tag{13.2}$$

Here is a proof:

```
 map \ rrot \ (rots \ xs) 
 = \{ \text{definition of } rots \} 
 map \ rrot \ [xs, lrot \ xs, lrot^2 \ xs, \dots, lrot^{n-1} \ xs] 
 = \{ \text{definition of } map, \text{ using } rrot \cdot lrot = id \} 
 [rrot \ xs, xs, lrot \ xs, \dots, lrot^{n-2} \ xs] 
 = \{ \text{definition of } rrot \} 
 rrot \ [xs, lrot \ xs, \dots, lrot^{n-2} \ xs, rrot \ xs] 
 = \{ \text{since } rrot \ xs = lrot^{n-1} \ xs \} 
 rrot \ [xs, lrot \ xs, \dots, lrot^{n-2} \ xs, lrot^{n-1} \ xs] 
 = \{ \text{definition of } rots \} 
 rrot \ (rots \ xs)
```

The second ingredient is a function hdsort that sorts a matrix on its first column. We can define hdsort using the Haskell function sortBy:

```
hdsort :: Ord a \Rightarrow [[a]] \rightarrow [[a]]
hdsort = sortBy cmp where cmp (x : xs) (y : ys) = compare x y
```

The third ingredient is a function *consCol* that adds a new column to a matrix:

```
consCol :: ([a], [[a]]) \rightarrow [[a]]

consCol(xs, xss) = zipWith(:) xs xss
```

The ingredients above satisfy various identities that we will need in cooking up a constructive definition of *recreate* to satisfy (13.1). First of all, for j < n we have

```
takeCols\ (j+1) \cdot map\ rrot = consCol \cdot fork\ (map\ last, takeCols\ j)\ (13.3)
```

where fork(f, g) = (f x, g x). The right-hand side describes the operation of placing the last column of a matrix at the front of the first j columns; the

left-hand side describes the operation of performing a single right rotation on each row and then taking the first j+1 columns. The identity expresses the fact that these two operations give the same result.

The second identity is

$$takeCols(j+1) \cdot hdsort = hdsort \cdot takeCols(j+1)$$
 (13.4)

In words, sorting an $n \times n$ matrix on its first column and then taking a positive number of columns of the result yields exactly the same result as first taking the same number of columns and then sorting on the first column.

The third identity, the key one, is not so obvious:

$$hdsort \cdot map \ rrot \cdot sort \cdot rots = sort \cdot rots$$
 (13.5)

In words, the following transformation on a matrix of sorted rotations is the identity: move the last column to the front and then resort the rows on the new first column. In fact, (13.5) is true only if hdsort is a stable sorting algorithm, meaning that columns with the same first element appear in the output in the same order that they appeared in the input. Under this assumption we have, applied to an $n \times n$ matrix, that

```
sort = (hdsort \cdot map \ rrot)^n
```

This identity states that one can sort an $n \times n$ matrix (in fact, an arbitrary list of lists all of which have length n) by repeating n times the operation of rotating the last column into first position and then stably sorting according to the first column only. Since it captures essentially the operation of radix sort, we will call it the radix sort property. It can be proved by induction on n, but we omit details. It leads, with a little help, to the proof of (13.5):

```
hdsort \cdot map \ rrot \cdot sort \cdot rots
= \{ radix \ sort \ property \} 
(hdsort \cdot map \ rrot)^{n+1} \cdot rots
= \{ composition \} 
(hdsort \cdot map \ rrot)^{n} \cdot hdsort \cdot map \ rrot \cdot rots
= \{ radix \ sort \ property \} 
sort \cdot hdsort \cdot map \ rrot \cdot rots
= \{ identity \ (13.2) \} 
sort \cdot hdsort \cdot rrot \cdot rots
= \{ since \ sort \cdot hdsort = sort \}
```

```
sort \cdot rrot \cdot rots
= \{since \ sort \cdot rrot = sort\}
sort \cdot rots
```

The two identities used in the last two steps generalise to $sort \cdot perm = sort$ for any permutation perm of the input.

We are now ready to deal with recreate. Writing $sr = sort \cdot rots$ for brevity, we calculate:

```
recreate (j+1) \cdot map \ last \cdot sr
= \{ specification (13.1) \} 
takeCols (j+1) \cdot sr
= \{ property (13.5) \} 
takeCols (j+1) \cdot hdsort \cdot map \ rrot \cdot sr
= \{ property (13.4) \} 
hdsort \cdot takeCols (j+1) \cdot map \ rrot \cdot sr
= \{ property (13.3) \} 
hdsort \cdot consCol \cdot fork (map \ last, takeCols \ j) \cdot sr
= \{ specification (13.1) \} 
hdsort \cdot consCol \cdot fork (map \ last, recreate \ j \cdot map \ last) \cdot sr
= \{ since \ fork (f \cdot h, g \cdot h) = fork (f, g) \cdot h \} 
hdsort \cdot consCol \cdot fork (id, recreate \ j) \cdot map \ last \cdot sr
```

A faster algorithm

Hence, recreate $(j+1) = hdsort \cdot consCol \cdot fork (id, recreate j)$.

But, and it is a big but, the idea of recreating the complete matrix of sorted rotations before selecting one particular row leads to an unacceptably inefficient method for computing untransform. Recreating an $n \times n$ matrix takes $\Omega(n^2)$ steps and a quadratic time algorithm for untransform is simply no good. In fact, the above definition of recreate n takes $\Omega(n^2 \log n)$ steps because hdsort is computed a total of n times. In this section we show how to compute untransform in $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps.

In order to calculate a better algorithm for *untransform*, we need yet more ingredients. First of all, note that head-sorting a list of singletons is equivalent to sorting a list:

```
hdsort \cdot map \ wrap = map \ wrap \cdot sort
```

Here, $wrap \ x = [x]$. Second, it is not necessary to apply hdsort repeatedly, since each sort involves one and the same permutation. More precisely, suppose

```
sort \ ys = apply \ p \ ys
```

where p, which depends on ys, is a permutation of [0..n-1] and apply applies a permutation to a list. The permutation p is defined by

$$p = map \ snd \ (sort \ (zip \ ys \ [0 \dots n-1]))$$

and apply by

$$apply \ p \ xs = [xs \, !! \, (p \, !! \, i) \mid i \leftarrow [0 \dots n-1]]$$

The first fact about apply is that for any permutation p

$$apply \ p \cdot consCol = consCol \cdot pair (apply \ p)$$
 (13.6)

where pair f(x, y) = (f x, f y). More generally, if beside(M, N) denotes the operation of placing matrix M beside matrix N, then

$$apply \ p \cdot beside = beside \cdot pair (apply p)$$

Property (13.6) is the special case in which M is a $1 \times n$ matrix. Using (13.6), we reason:

```
recreate (j+1)
= {definition}
hdsort \cdot consCol \cdot fork (id, recreate j)
= {taking hdsort = apply \ p, where p is as defined above}
apply \ p \cdot consCol \cdot fork (id, recreate j)
= {(13.6)}
consCol \cdot pair (apply \ p) \cdot fork (id, recreate j)
= {since pair \ f \cdot fork \ (g, h) = fork \ (f \cdot g, f \cdot h)}
consCol \cdot fork \ (apply \ p, apply \ p \cdot recreate j)
```

Hence, recreate satisfies

```
\begin{array}{lcl} \textit{recreate} \; 0 & = & \textit{map} \; (\textit{const} \; [ \; ]) \\ \textit{recreate} \; (j+1) & = & \textit{consCol} \cdot \textit{fork} \; (\textit{apply} \; p, \textit{apply} \; p \cdot \textit{recreate} \; j) \end{array}
```

In this version of recreate, repeated applications of hdsort are replaced by repeated applications of apply p.

The next step is to use this recursive definition of *recreate* to find an alternative definition of *recreate*. In a word, we *solve* the recursion. We are going to show that

$$recreate j = tp \cdot take j \cdot tail \cdot iterate (apply p)$$
 (13.7)

is just such a solution. The new ingredient is a function tp, short for transpose, a standard Haskell function that transposes a matrix. We will need three properties of tp:

$$tp \cdot take \ 0 = map \ (const \ [\])$$
 (13.8)

$$tp \cdot take (j+1) = consCol \cdot fork (head, tp \cdot take j \cdot tail)$$
 (13.9)

$$apply \ p \cdot tp = tp \cdot map \ (apply \ p) \tag{13.10}$$

Property (13.8) says in effect that the transpose of a $0 \times n$ matrix is an $n \times 0$ matrix. The transpose of an empty list, a list containing no lists of length n, is a list of length n of empty lists. Property (13.9) says that to transpose a $(j+1) \times n$ matrix one can prefix the first row as a new first column to the transpose of a $j \times n$ matrix formed from the remaining rows. Finally, (13.10), which can be phrased in the equivalent form

$$apply p = tp \cdot map (apply p) \cdot tp$$

says that one can apply a permutation to the rows of a matrix by transposing the matrix, applying the permutation to each column and then transposing back again.

Property (13.8) immediately justifies (13.7) in the case j = 0. For the inductive step we start with

$$recreate\ (j+1) = consCol \cdot fork\ (apply\ p,\ apply\ p \cdot recreate\ j)$$

and reason:

```
fork (apply p, apply p \cdot recreate j)
= \{assuming (13.7)\} 
fork (apply p, apply p \cdot tp \cdot take j \cdot tail \cdot iterate (apply p))
= \{(13.10)\} 
fork (apply p, tp \cdot map (apply p) \cdot take j \cdot tail \cdot iterate (apply p))
= \{since map f \cdot take j = take j \cdot map f \text{ and } map f \cdot tail = tail \cdot map f\} 
fork (apply p, tp \cdot take j \cdot tail \cdot map (apply p) \cdot iterate (apply p))
= \{since map f \cdot iterate f = tail \cdot iterate f\} 
fork (apply p, tp \cdot take j \cdot tail \cdot tail \cdot iterate (apply p))
```

$$= \{ since f = head \cdot tail \cdot iterate f \text{ and}$$

$$fork (f \cdot h, g \cdot h) = fork (f, g) \cdot h \}$$

$$fork (head, tp \cdot take j \cdot tail) \cdot tail \cdot iterate (apply p)$$

Now we use (13.9) to obtain

$$recreate(j+1) = tp \cdot take(j+1) \cdot tail \cdot iterate(apply p)$$

This completes the proof of (13.7).

We are ready for our last calculation. Recall that

$$untransform (ys, k) = (recreate n ys) !! k$$

where n = length ys. We reason:

$$(!!k) \cdot recreate \ n$$

$$= \{(13.7)\}$$

$$(!!k) \cdot tp \cdot take \ n \cdot tail \cdot iterate \ (apply \ p)$$

$$= \{since \ (!!k) \cdot tp = map \ (!!k)\}$$

$$map \ (!!k) \cdot take \ n \cdot tail \cdot iterate \ (apply \ p)$$

$$= \{since \ map \ f \cdot take \ n = take \ n \cdot map \ f \ and \ map \ f \cdot tail = tail \cdot map \ f\}$$

$$take \ n \cdot tail \cdot map \ (!!k) \cdot iterate \ (apply \ p)$$

For the final step we need a law of iterate, namely

```
map (\oplus y) (iterate f x) = map (x \oplus) (iterate g y)
```

provided that $f x \oplus y = x \oplus g y$. The proof uses induction on n to show that $f^n x \oplus y = x \oplus g^n y$; details are left to the reader.

Since $(apply \ p \ ys) !! \ k = ys !! \ (p !! \ k)$, the above law gives

$$map(!!k)(iterate(apply p ys)) = map(ys!!)(iterate(p!!)k)$$

In summary, untransform(ys, k) is computed by

$$take (length ys) (tail (map (ys!!) (iterate (p!!) k)))$$

If only (!!) were a constant-time operation, this computation would take linear time. But (!!) is not constant time, so the dish is not quite ready to leave the kitchen. The very last step is to bring in Haskell arrays:

```
 \begin{array}{lll} untransform \ (ys,k) & = & take \ n \ (tail \ (map \ (ya!) \ (iterate \ (pa!) \ k))) \\ \mathbf{where} \ n & = & length \ ys \\ ya & = & listArray \ (0,n-1) \ ys \\ pa & = & listArray \ (0,n-1) \ (map \ snd \ (sort \ (zip \ ys \ [0..]))) \end{array}
```

The revised definition of untransform makes use of the library Data.Array of Haskell arrays. The expression listArray (0, n-1) ys builds an array with bounds 0 to n-1 whose values are the elements of ys. This function takes linear time. Unlike the list-indexing operation (!!), the array-indexing operation (!) takes constant time. The computation of pa takes $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps, but the rest of the computation takes $\Theta(n)$ steps.

Transform revisited

Finally, let us revisit transform to see whether we can improve its performance too. The key fact is that sorting the rotations of a list can be expressed in terms of sorting the suffixes of a related list. Suppose $tag\ xs = xs + [eof]$, where eof (short for "end of file") is some element guaranteed not to be in the list xs. For example, when xs is a string, we can take eof to be the null character; and when xs is a list of natural numbers, we can take x = -1. Because eof is different from all other elements of xs, the permutation that sorts the first n suffixes of $tag\ xs$ is the same permutation that sorts the n rotations of xs. Hence:

```
sort (rots xs) = apply p (rots xs)
where
```

$$p \hspace{0.2cm} = \hspace{0.2cm} map \hspace{0.1cm} snd \hspace{0.1cm} (sort \hspace{0.1cm} (zip \hspace{0.1cm} (tails \hspace{0.1cm} (tag \hspace{0.1cm} xs)) \hspace{0.1cm} [0 \ldots n\!-\!1]))$$

The standard function *tails* returns the suffixes or tail segments of a list in decreasing order of length. Now we reason:

```
 map\ last \cdot sort \cdot rots 
 = \{ \text{with above definition of } p \} 
 map\ last \cdot apply\ p \cdot rots 
 = \{ \text{since } map\ f \cdot apply\ p = apply\ p \cdot map\ f \} 
 apply\ p \cdot map\ last \cdot rots 
 = \{ \text{since } map\ last \cdot rots = rrot \} 
 apply\ p \cdot rrot 
Hence, map\ last \cdot sort \cdot rots = apply\ p \cdot rrot. Moreover:
```

position xs (sort (rots xs)) $= \{ with above definition of p \}$ position xs (apply p (rots xs))

$$= \{ since position xs (rots xs) = 0 \}$$

$$position 0 p$$

Hence:

```
\begin{array}{lll} \mathit{transform} \; \mathit{xs} &=& ([\mathit{xa} \, ! \, (\mathit{pa} \, ! \, i) \mid i \leftarrow [0 \cdots n-1]], k) \\ \mathbf{where} \; n &=& \mathit{length} \; \mathit{ys} \\ k &=& \mathit{length} \; (\mathit{takeWhile} \; (\neq 0) \; \mathit{ps}) \\ xa &=& \mathit{listArray} \; (0, n-1) \; (\mathit{rrot} \; \mathit{xs}) \\ pa &=& \mathit{listArray} \; (0, n-1) \; \mathit{ps} \\ ps &=& \mathit{map} \; \mathit{snd} \; (\mathit{sort} \; (\mathit{zip} \; (\mathit{tails} \; (\mathit{tag} \; \mathit{xs}))[0 \ldots n-1])) \end{array}
```

The bottleneck in this algorithm is the computation of ps; apart from that, the rest of the computation takes $\Theta(n)$ steps. As we saw in the previous pearl, finding the permutation that sorts the tails of a list of length n can be done in $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps. In fact, if the list is a list of elements over a fixed finite alphabet, then one can sort its suffixes in linear time by building a suffix tree; see Gusfield (1997).

Final remarks

The BWT was first described by Burrows and Wheeler (1994), though the algorithm was actually discovered by Wheeler in 1983. Nelson (1996), in writing the article that brought the BWT to the world's attention, showed that the resulting compression algorithm could outperform many commercial programs available at the time. The BWT has now been integrated into a high-performance utility bzip2, available from www.bzip.org. Radix sort is treated in Gibbons (1999), where it is derived using pointless calculation from tree sort.

References

Burrows, M. and Wheeler, D. J. (1994). A block-sorting lossless data compression algorithm. Research report 124, Digital Systems Research Center, Palo Alto, USA.

Gibbons, J. (1999). A pointless derivation of radix sort. *Journal of Functional Programming* **9** (3) 339–46.

Gusfield, D. (1997). Algorithms on Strings, Trees and Sequences. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Nelson, M. (1996). Data compression with the Burrows–Wheeler transform. Dr. Dobb's Journal, September.

14

The last tail

Introduction

Suppose the tails of a list are sorted into dictionary order. What tail comes last? For example, the last tail of "introduction" is "uction" but the last tail of "tomato" is "tomato" itself, since "to" precedes "tomato" in dictionary order. It follows from an earlier pearl on ranking and sorting suffixes (see Pearl 12) that this problem can be solved in $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps for a list of length n. But can we compute the last tail in $\Theta(n)$ steps? The answer turns out to be yes, but the algorithm is surprisingly complicated for such a simply stated problem, and its derivation seems to require substantial effort. So, be warned.

An inductive definition

Our problem is to compute

```
maxtail :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [a]

maxtail = maximum \cdot tails
```

Here, tails is the standard Haskell function that returns the possibly empty tails of a possibly empty list, so maxtail [] = []. The function maximum returns the largest list in lexicographic order. Direct execution of maxtail takes quadratic time in the worst case, for example when the list consists of n repetitions of the same value.

$$maxtail (xs + [x]) = op (maxtail xs) x$$
 (14.1)

In other words, we seek an op so that $maxtail = foldl \ op \ [\].$

To this end, let maxtail xs = ys and maxtail (xs + [x]) = zs + [x]. To satisfy (14.1) we have to show that $zs \in tails\ ys$. Since both ys and zs are tails of xs we have $zs \leq ys$ and $ys + [x] \leq zs + [x]$ by the definition of maxtail. But these inequalities imply that zs is a prefix of ys; in symbols, $zs \sqsubseteq ys$. Suppose $zs \leq ys$ but zs is not a prefix of ys. Let us be the longest common prefix of zs and ys. Then $us + [z] \sqsubseteq zs$ and $us + [y] \sqsubseteq ys$, where z < y. In such a case zs + [x] < ys + [x].

Thus, zs is a prefix of ys. But both are tails of xs, so zs is both a prefix and a suffix of ys. Consequently, op can be defined in two ways:

$$op \ ys \ x = maximum \ [zs + [x] \mid zs \leftarrow tails \ ys]$$

$$op \ ys \ x = maximum \ [zs + [x] \mid zs \leftarrow tails \ ys, \ zs \sqsubseteq ys]$$

$$(14.2)$$

The first step has been accomplished, though neither definition provides a linear-time algorithm.

Borders

Definition (14.2) of op has more structure than its companion and so merits further investigation. Consider the function borders, defined by

$$borders \ xs = [ys \mid ys \leftarrow tails \ xs, \ ys \sqsubseteq xs] \tag{14.3}$$

In "stringology" (Crochemore and Rytter, 2003), the borders of a list are those suffixes that are also prefixes. Two examples are

```
borders "7412741274" = ["7412741274", "741274", "74", ""]
borders "mammam" = ["mammam", "mam", "m", ""]
```

Rather than define border by (14.3) we can also define

```
borders [] = [[]]

borders xs = xs : borders (border xs)
```

where border xs is the longest proper common prefix and suffix of xs. The second definition has the same form as that of tails:

```
tails [] = [[]]

tails xs = xs : tails (tail ys)
```

Restated in terms of borders, (14.2) now reads:

```
op \ ys \ x = maximum \ [zs + + [x] \mid zs \leftarrow borders \ ys]
```

Suppose borders $ys = [zs_0, zs_1, ..., zs_n]$, so $zs_0 = ys$ and $zs_{i+1} = border zs_i$ for $0 \le i < n$ and $zs_n = []$. Let us see what information we can extract about the value of $op \ ys \ x$ from these ingredients.

First, for $0 \le i < j \le n$ we have

$$zs_i + [x] \ge zs_j + [x] \equiv head(zs_i \downarrow zs_j) \ge x$$
(14.4)

where $us \downarrow vs$ (pronounced "us after vs") is specified by $(xs + ys) \downarrow xs = ys$. The proof of (14.4) is:

$$zs_i + [x] \ge zs_j + [x]$$

$$\equiv \{\text{definition of lexicographic order since } zs_j \sqsubseteq zs_i\}$$

$$(zs_i \downarrow zs_j) + [x] \ge [x]$$

$$\equiv \{\text{since } zs_i \downarrow zs_j \text{ is nonempty if } i < j\}$$

$$head (zs_i \downarrow zs_j) \ge x$$

Second, in the case $ys = maxtail\ xs$ for some xs, we have, for $0 < i < j \le n$, that

$$head (zs_{i-1} \downarrow zs_i) \le head (zs_{j-1} \downarrow zs_j)$$

$$(14.5)$$

The proof is:

$$head (zs_{i-1} \downarrow zs_i) \leq head (zs_{j-1} \downarrow zs_j)$$

$$= \{ \text{since } 0 < k \text{ implies } head (zs_{k-1} \downarrow zs_k) = head (ys \downarrow zs_k) \}$$

$$head (ys \downarrow zs_i) \leq head (ys \downarrow zs_j)$$

$$\leq \{ \text{lexicographic ordering} \}$$

$$zs_j + (ys \downarrow zs_i) \leq zs_j + (ys \downarrow zs_j)$$

$$\equiv \{ \text{since } ys = zs_k + (ys \downarrow zs_k) \text{ for any } k \}$$

$$zs_j + (ys \downarrow zs_i) \leq ys$$

$$\leq \{ \text{since } ys \text{ is a maximum suffix} \}$$

$$zs_j + (ys \downarrow zs_i) \in tails \ ys$$

$$\equiv \{ \text{since } ys = zs_i + (ys \downarrow zs_i) \text{ and } zs_j \in tails \ zs_i \}$$

$$true$$

It follows from (14.4) and (14.5) that op $ys \ x = zs_i + [x]$, where i is the smallest i in the range $0 \le i < n$ satisfying $head (zs_i \downarrow zs_{i+1}) \ge x$, if such an i exists. If it does not, then $op \ ys \ x = [x]$. A straightforward implementation of the search yields

$$op \ ys \ x \mid null \ ys = [x]$$

$$\mid head \ (ys \downarrow zs) \ge x = ys + [x]$$

$$\mid otherwise = op \ zs \ x$$

$$where \ zs = border \ ys$$

To complete this definition of op we need to derive a definition of border.

Border

Recall that *border* ys is the longest proper common prefix and suffix of ys. The value *border* ys is defined only for nonempty ys. Heading for an inductive definition, it is clear that *border* [x] = []. For the inductive case, *border* (ys + [x]), we need the following property of the prefix ordering:

$$zs + [x] \sqsubseteq ys + [x] \equiv zs \sqsubseteq ys \land (zs \neq ys \Rightarrow x = head (ys \downarrow zs))$$

We now reason, for nonempty ys:

borders
$$(ys + [x])$$

= $\{(14.3)\}$
 $[zs \mid zs \leftarrow tails (ys + [x]), zs \sqsubseteq ys + [x]]$
= $\{\text{since } tails (ys + [x]) = map (+ [x]) (tails ys) + [[]]\}$
 $[zs + [x] \mid zs \leftarrow tails ys, zs + [x] \sqsubseteq ys + [x]] + [[]]$
= $\{\text{above property}\}$
 $[zs + [x] \mid zs \leftarrow tails ys, zs \sqsubseteq ys, zs \neq ys \Rightarrow x = head (ys \downarrow zs)] + [[]]$
= $\{(14.3)\}$
 $[zs + [x] \mid zs \leftarrow borders ys, zs \neq ys \Rightarrow x = head (ys \downarrow zs)] + [[]]$

Hence, since $border = head \cdot tail \cdot borders$ and $head \cdot borders = id$, we obtain

$$border (ys + [x])$$

$$= head ([zs + [x] | zs \leftarrow tail (borders ys), x = head (ys \downarrow zs)] + [[]])$$

This list comprehension can be replaced by an explicit search:

$$border (ys + [x]) \mid head (ys \downarrow zs) = x = zs + [x]$$

 \mid **otherwise** $= border (zs + [x])$
 where $zs = border ys$

Under the assumption that ys = maxtail xs for some xs, we can appeal to (14.5) and optimize the search:

border
$$(ys + [x])$$
 | head $(ys \downarrow zs) < x = border (zs + [x])$
| head $(ys \downarrow zs) = x = zs + [x]$
| head $(ys \downarrow zs) > x = []$
| where $zs = border ys$

The recursive definitions of *maxtail* and *border* have turned out to be similar, so logically the next step is to combine them into one function.

Cocktail

Consider the function *cocktail* (a combination of two ingredients!) defined by

$$cocktail \ xs =$$
 if $null \ xs$ **then** ([],[]) **else** ($border \ (maxtail \ xs), maxtail \ xs \downarrow border \ (maxtail \ xs)$)

In particular, $maxtail = uncurry(++) \cdot cocktail$.

We now derive a recursive definition of cocktail, using the recursive definitions of maxtail and border. Setting cocktail xs = (zs, ws), we compute cocktail (xs + [x]) by a case analysis.

Case
$$ws = []$$
. In this case $xs = ys = zs = []$, so $cocktail(xs + [x]) = ([], [x])$

In the remaining cases, where $ws \neq []$, we have $ys = maxtail\ xs$, where ys = zs + ws, and $zs = border\ ys$, so $ws = ys \downarrow zs$.

Case head ws < x. In this case the definition maxtail gives

$$maxtail (xs + [x]) = maxtail (zs + [x])$$

so
$$cocktail(xs + [x]) = cocktail(zs + [x]).$$

Case head ws = x. In this case

$$maxtail (xs + [x]) = ys + [x]$$

 $border (ys + [x]) = zs + [x]$

Since
$$(ys + [x]) \downarrow (zs + [x]) = tail \ ws + [x]$$
, we have

$$cocktail\ (xs ++ [x]) = (zs ++ [x], tail\ ws ++ [x])$$

Case head ws > x. In this case

$$maxtail (xs + [x]) = ys + [x]$$

 $border (ys + [x]) = []$

so
$$cocktail\ (xs + [x]) = ([\], ys + [x]).$$

In summary, we have shown that

```
maxtail = uncurry (++) \cdot cocktail
cocktail = foldl op ([],[])
op (zs, ws) x \mid null ws = ([],[x])
\mid w < x = cocktail (zs + [x])
\mid w = x = (zs + [x], tail ws + [x])
\mid w > x = ([], zs + ws + [x])
\mathbf{where} \ w = head ws
```

So far, so good, but the new version of maxtail still takes quadratic time. One reason is that (#) is not a constant-time operation. But even assuming it were, the computation would still be quadratic. Consider an input of the form 1^n2 , where 1^n denotes n repetitions of 1. After n steps the computation of cocktail 1^n2 reduces to evaluation of op $(1^{n-1},1)$ 2. Since 1 < 2, the next step is to evaluate cocktail $1^{n-1}2$. Hence, the total computation takes quadratic time.

The problem lies with the call cocktail (zs + [x]). If we could somehow restrict the length of zs to be at most half the length of the current maximum tail ys = zs + ws, then computation of cocktail would take linear time (ignoring the cost of the + operations). Spending a linear amount of time to reduce a problem to one of at most half the size leads to a linear-time algorithm. Fortunately, as we will now show, the length of zs can be so restricted.

Reducing the problem size

Let $cocktail\ xs=(zs,ws)$, so ys=zs+ws is the maximum tail of xs and $zs=border\ ys$. Suppose $|zs|\geq |ws|$, where |xs| denotes the length of xs. In this case ws is a tail of zs. For example, if ys="7412741274", then zs="741274" and ws="1274".

Define zs' by zs = zs' + ws. Then zs' is both a prefix and a tail of zs and hence also a prefix and tail of ys. In the example above, zs' = "74". The reasoning can be repeated if $|zs'| \ge |ws|$. It follows that if we define q and r by

```
(q, r) = (|zs| \operatorname{div} |ws|, |zs| \operatorname{mod} |ws|)
```

and set $zs' = take \ r \ zs$, then $zs' \in borders \ ys$ and $zs = zs' + ws^q$, where ws^q is the concatenation of q copies of ws. Furthermore, since |zs'| < |ws| we have that zs' is a tail of ws (so $zs' = drop(|ws| - r) \ ws$, a fact we will exploit below) and each of $zs' + ws^p$ for $1 \le p < q$ are also borders of zs.

But $(zs' + ws^p) \downarrow (zs' + ws^{p-1}) = ws$, so in the case head ws < x none of these borders need be inspected in the computation of op(zs, ws) x. It follows that we can replace op by

```
op (zs, ws) x | null ws = ([], [x])
| w < x = cocktail (take <math>r zs + [x])
| w = x = (zs + [x], tail ws + [x])
| w > x = ([], zs + ws + [x])
| where w = head ws
| r = (length zs) \mod (length ws)
```

Moreover, 2r < |zs + ws|, since $r \le |zs|$ and r < |ws|. Armed with this fact we can show that computation of *cocktail xs* involves a total of at most 2n - m calls to op, where n = |xs| and m = |maxtail xs|.

The proof is by induction. In the case n=0 we have m=0 and there are no calls to op. When n=1 we have m=1 and there is one call to op. This establishes the base cases.

For the inductive case, consider the computation of cocktail (xs + [x]), which first evaluates cocktail xs and then computes op(cocktail xs)x. Assume by induction that cocktail xs involves 2n-m calls of op and returns (zs, ws), where |zs+ws|=m and head ws=w. If $w\geq x$ there are no more calls of op, so the total count is 2n-m+1. But in this case the resulting maximum tail has length m+1, and as 2n-m+1=2(n+1)-(m+1) the case is established. If w< x, then we have to add in the count for cocktail $(take\ r\ zs+[x])$. By induction, this is 2(r+1)-m', where m' is the length of the final maximum tail. The total, therefore, is 2n-m+1+2(r+1)-m', which is at most 2(n+1)-m' since $2r+1\leq m$.

Hence, ignoring the cost of length and # operations, the computation of cocktail and maxtail take linear time. It remains to eliminate the length and # operations.

Final optimisations

We first eliminate the length calculations in the definition of op, together with the first ++ in the final clause. This is achieved by a data refinement in which the state (zs, ws) is replaced by a quadruple (p, q, ys, ws) in which ys = zs ++ ws and p = length zs and q = length ws. The reason we can drop the argument zs is that $take \ r \ zs = drop \ (q - r) \ ws$. We need, however, to retain the length of zs. Installing this change is easy and we omit details. It leads to the program of Figure 14.1, in which cocktail now names the refined version and thd selects the third component of a quadruple.

```
\begin{array}{lll} maxtail & = & thd \cdot cocktail \\ cocktail & = & foldl \ op \ (0,0,[\ ],[\ ]) \\ op \ (p,q,ys,ws) \ x \\ | \ q = 0 & = & (0,1,[x],[x]) \\ | \ w < x & = & cocktail \ (drop \ (q-r) \ ws + [x]) \\ | \ w = x & = & (p+1,q,ys + [x],tail \ ws + [x]) \\ | \ \ \textbf{otherwise} & = & (0,p+q+1,ys + [x],ys + [x]) \\ \textbf{where} \ w & = & head \ ws \\ r & = & p \ \text{mod} \ q \end{array}
```

Fig. 14.1 The result of data refinement

Now we are left only with (++[x]) operations. One way to ensure that (++[x]) takes constant time is to convert all the lists into queues and to use an efficient implementation of queues that guarantees insertion at the rear of the queue as well as that removal from the front takes constant time. But another method is suggested by the observation that each of the lists ys and ys arising during the computation of ys is a tail of ys. The operation ys constructs these tails step by step, but a more efficient method is to construct them all at once. The way to do this is to convert what we have into an iterative algorithm.

More precisely, suppose we define *step* by

```
step(p, q, ys', ws', xs) = thd(foldlop(p, q, ys' \uparrow xs, ws' \uparrow xs) xs)
```

where $us \uparrow vs$ (pronounced "us before vs") is what remains when the tail vs of us is removed from us. Thus, $us = (us \uparrow vs) + vs$. In particular:

Next we derive a recursion for step(p, q, ys', ws', xs). Since $us \uparrow [] = us$ we obtain

```
step(p, q, ys', ws', []) = ys'
```

In the case that xs is not empty (so neither of ys' or ws' is empty) we have

```
step (p, q, ys', ws', x : xs)
= thd (foldl op (p, q, ys' \(\gamma\)(x : xs), ws' \(\gamma\)(x : xs)) (x : xs))
= thd (foldl op (op (p, q, ys' \(\gamma\)(x : xs), ws' \(\gamma\)(x : xs)) x) xs)
```

Now we need a case analysis.

Case head $(ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) < x$. In this case

$$op (p, q, ys' \uparrow (x : xs), ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) x = cocktail' (drop (q-r) (ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) + [x])$$

where $r = p \mod q$. Abbreviating $drop (q-r) (ws' \uparrow (x : xs))$ to vs, we argue

$$step (p, q, ys', ws', x : xs)$$

$$= \{definition and case assumption\}$$

$$thd (foldl op (cocktail' (vs + [x])) xs)$$

$$= \{definition of cocktail'\}$$

$$thd (foldl op (foldl op (0, 0, [], [], []) (vs + [x])) xs)$$

$$= \{since foldl f (foldl f e xs) ys = foldl f e (xs + ys)\}$$

$$thd (foldl op ([], [], []) (vs + x : xs))$$

$$= \{since drop (q-r) (ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) + x : xs = drop (q-r) ws'\}$$

$$thd (foldl op ([], [], []) (drop (q-r) ws'))$$

$$= \{definition of maxtail\}$$

$$maxtail (drop (q-r) ws')$$

Case head $(ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) = x$. In this case

op
$$(p, q, ys' \uparrow (x : xs), ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) x =$$

 $(p+1, q, ys' \uparrow (x : xs) + [x], tail (ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) + [x])$
 $= (p+1, q, ys' \uparrow xs, tail (ws' \uparrow xs))$

Hence, step(p, q, ys', ws', x : xs) = (p+1, q, ys', tail ws', xs).

Case head $(ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) > x$. In this case

$$op (p, q, ys' \uparrow (x : xs), ws' \uparrow (x : xs)) x = (0, p+q+1, ys' \uparrow (x : xs) + [x], ys' \uparrow (x : xs) + [x])$$

= $(0, p+q+1, ys' \uparrow xs, ys' \uparrow xs)$

Hence, step(p, q, ys', ws', x : xs) = (0, p+q+1, ys', ys', xs). Summarising all the above, we have arrived at our final program:

```
maxtail[] = []

maxtail(x:xs) = step(0,1,x:xs,x:xs,xs)
```

The last tail 111

```
\begin{array}{lll} step \; (p,q,ys,ws,[\;]) \; = \; ys \\ step \; (p,q,ys,w:ws,x:xs) \\ | \; \; w < x \; = \; maxtail \; (drop \; (q-r) \; (w:ws)) \\ | \; \; w = x \; = \; step \; (p+1,q,ys,ws,xs) \\ | \; \; w > x \; = \; step \; (0,p+q+1,ys,ys,xs) \\ & \; \text{ } \textbf{where } r = p \; \text{mod } q \end{array}
```

Final remarks

It is very easy to turn the final version of maxtail into a simple while loop. Perhaps this is not surprising, because we set out with the intention of deriving an inductive definition, and the form we were led to, namely an instance of foldl, is essentially a while loop in functional clothing. Nevertheless, the final algorithm has a very imperative feel, and it would be interesting to see a derivation in a procedural style using loop invariants. Our derivation was quite long and involved some fairly subtle reasoning, basically because a good deal of underlying structure is inherent in the problem. But maybe there is a simpler solution to what must be the shortest specification in this book.

References

Crochemore, M. and Rytter, W. (2003). Jewels of Stringology. Hong Kong: World Scientific.

All the common prefixes

Introduction

Let llcp xs ys denote the length of the longest common prefix of two lists xs and ys. For example llcp "common" "computing" = 3. Now consider the function allcp, short for all the common prefixes, defined by

$$allcp xs = map (llcp xs) (tails xs)$$

where tails xs returns the nonempty tails of xs. For example:

The first element of allcp xs is, of course, length xs. Executed directly, the definition of allcp gives a quadratic-time algorithm. But can it be done in linear time? Yes it can, and the aim of this pearl is to show how. The function allcp is an important component of the Boyer–Moore algorithm for string matching, a problem we will take up in the following pearl, so a linear-time solution is of practical as well as theoretical interest.

A key property

The key property of llcp on which the fast algorithm rests is the following one. Let us, vs and ws be any three lists. Then, with llcp us vs = m and llcp vs ws = n, we have

$$llcp us ws = \begin{cases} min m n & \text{if } m \neq n \\ m + llcp (drop m us) (drop m ws) & \text{if } m = n \end{cases}$$
 (15.1)

For the proof, observe that the first $min\ m\ n$ elements are common to all three lists. If m< n, then the next element of us (if any) is different from the next element of vs, while the next element of vs is the same as the next element of ws. Hence $llcp\ us\ ws\ =\ m$. The reasoning is dual if m>n. Finally, if m=n, then matching has to continue with $drop\ m\ us$ and $drop\ m\ ws$.

To use (15.1), take i and j in the range $1 \le i, j < n$, where n = length xs, and let

$$p = llcp xs (drop i xs)$$

 $q = llcp xs (drop j xs)$

In other words, the elements at positions i and j in all cp cx are p and q respectively. Furthermore, suppose $j \leq p$. Then, by definition of llcp, we have

$$p = j + llcp (drop j xs) (drop (i + j) xs)$$

Setting us = xs, vs = drop j xs and ws = drop k xs, where k = i + j, (15.1) now gives

$$llcp xs (drop k xs) = \begin{cases} min (p-j) q & \text{if } q \neq p-j \\ q + llcp (drop q xs) (drop (q+k) xs) & \text{if } q = p-j \end{cases}$$

In other words, we can determine the kth entry in all cp xs from the ith and jth entries with either no extra work (the first clause) or with maybe a little extra work (the second clause). Of course, work is avoided only if 1 < i < k and j = k - i < p because the second clause gives no computational shortcut if j = p. In particular, the cases k = 0 and k = 1 have to be calculated directly.

Here is how we use this information to compute the kth entry of allcp in the order $k=1,2,\ldots,n$. Suppose at each step we choose i by the condition that i+p is as large as possible subject to $1 \le i < k$. If k < i + p, then the shortcut above applies with j=k-i. If $k \ge i+p$, then there is no alternative but to calculate $llcp\ xs\ (drop\ k\ xs)$ directly. We can start off with (i,p)=(0,0) to ensure the case k=1 is computed directly, and thereafter update (i,p) whenever a better choice is found.

All that leads to the program of Figure 15.1, which takes the form of a simple loop. To check that i and p are updated correctly, observe in the first clause of step that $k \geq i+p \Rightarrow k+a \geq i+p$, and in the third clause that $k+b \geq k+q = k+r = i+p$.

We claim that this program takes linear time under the assumption that each snoc, !! and drop operation takes constant time. To prove the claim it suffices to show that the total number of equality comparisons in llcp is linear in n. Such comparisons result in True (a match) or False (a mismatch). Each call of step ends with at most one mismatch, so there are at most n-1 mismatches. To bound the number of matches, observe that in any step in which m matches occur, so a=m or b=m, the value of i+p is increased by m at least. Since $i+p \leq n$, the total number of matches is at most n.

```
allcp xs = fst4 (until (done n) (step xs) ([n], 0, 0, 1))
              where n = length xs
done \ n \ (as, i, p, k) = k = n
step \ xs \ (as, i, p, k)
     k \ge i + p = (snoc \ as \ a, k, a, k + 1)
     q \neq r
                 = (snoc\ as\ (min\ q\ r), i, p, k+1)
                 = (snoc \ as \ b, k, b, k+1)
                 = as!!(k-i)
     where q
                 = p - (k-i)
                 = llcp xs (drop k xs)
                     q + llcp (drop q xs) (drop (q + k) xs)
fst4(a, b, c, d) =
                     xs + [x]
snoc xs x
llcp xs []
                     = 0
llcp [] ys
                          0
llcp(x:xs)(y:ys) = if x = y then 1 + llcp xs ys else 0
```

Fig. 15.1 The initial program

Data refinement

However, snoc, (!!), and drop do not take constant time. The remainder of the development is just data refinement to ensure that they can be implemented by constant-time operations.

Let us deal with drop first. The idea is to bring in the library Data.Array of Haskell arrays and replace llcp by another version that uses index operations on a (global) array xa = listArray (0, n-1) xs, where n = length xs:

```
llcp'jk \mid j = n \lor k = n = 0

\mid xa!j = xa!k = 1 + llcp'(j+1)(k+1)

\mid otherwise = 0
```

That means we can replace the definitions of a and b in step by

$$a = llcp' 0 k$$

 $b = q + llcp' q (q + k)$

It remains to deal with the *snoc* and (!!) operations. The obvious step is again to use an array. However, adding an element to the end of an array is only a constant-time operation if we embed the whole computation in a suitable monad, and that is something we choose to avoid. Another option is to use Haskell's *Data.Sequence* library. This library provides a constant-time *snoc*, but only a logarithmic-time indexing operation. Good enough in

```
allcp xs
                              extract (until done step (as, empty, 0, 1)))
  where
  extract(as, qs, h, k)
                              elems as
  done\left(as, qs, h, k\right)
                         =
                              (k = n)
  n
                              length xs
                              insert emptu n
  as
                          =
                              listArray(0, n-1) xs
  xa
  step(as, qs, h, k)
                              k > h = (insert \ as \ a, insert \ as' \ a, k + a, k + 1)
                              q \neq r = (insert \ as \ m, insert \ qs' \ m, h, k+1)
                              q = r = (insert \ as \ b, insert \ as' \ b, k + b, k + 1)
                              where as'
                                             = snd (remove as)
                                      (q, qs') = remove qs
                                                    h-k
                                                    min \ a \ r
                                      m
                                                    llcp' \ 0 \ k
                                      a.
                                                =
                                                    q + llcp' q (q + k)
  llcp'jk
                              i = n \lor k = n = 0
                              xa!j = xa!k = 1 + llcp(j+1)(k+1)
                              otherwise = 0
```

Fig. 15.2 The final program

practice, but we promised a linear-time solution, so we have to work a little harder.

Our solution is to use a queue, in fact two of them. Chris Okasaki's implementation of queues (Okasaki, 1995) provides a type $Queue\ a$ with the following four operations:

```
insert :: Queue \ a \rightarrow a \rightarrow Queue \ a

remove :: Queue \ a \rightarrow (a, Queue \ a)

empty :: Queue \ a

elems :: Queue \ a \rightarrow [a]
```

The function *insert* inserts a new element at the rear of the queue, *remove* returns the first element and the remaining elements of a nonempty queue, *empty* gives an empty queue, and *elems* returns the list of elements in a queue. The first three operations take constant time, while *elems* takes time proportional to the length of the queue.

We replace the component as in the argument of step with a queue, also called as, and add in a second queue qs, representing the suffix drop(k-i)as. Then q = as!!(k-i) is the first element of qs. There is no need to maintain argument i, so we can remove it and replace p by h = i + p. Installing these changes is straightforward and leads to the final program of Figure 15.2.

Final remarks

The problem of computing allcp is identified as the fundamental preprocessing step of string matching by Gusfield (1997), where it is called "the Z algorithm". The same problem is dealt with by Crochemore and Rytter, under the name "table of prefixes". Our treatment follows Gusfield quite closely, except for the identification of (15.1) as the key property of llcp that enables everything to work, and the use of queues to make the snoc and !! operations efficient.

References

- Crochemore, M. and Rytter, W. (2003). Jewels of Stringology. Hong Kong: World Scientific.
- Gusfield, D. (1997). Algorithms on Strings, Trees and Sequences. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Okasaki, C. (1995). Simple and efficient purely functional queues and deques. *Journal of Functional Programming*, **5** (4), 583–92.

16

The Boyer–Moore algorithm

Introduction

The problem of string matching consists of finding all occurrences of one nonempty string, called the *pattern*, in another string, called the *text*. Here is the specification:

```
matches :: Eq \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [Int]

matches \ ws = map \ length \cdot filter \ (endswith \ ws) \cdot inits
```

The function *inits* returns a list of the prefixes of the text in order of increasing length. The expression *endswith* ws xs tests whether the pattern ws is a suffix of xs. The value matches ws xs is a list of integers p such that ws is a suffix of take p xs. For example:

```
matches "abcab" "ababcabcab" = [7, 10]
```

In other words, $matches\ ws\ xs$ returns a list integers p such that ws appears in xs ending at position p (counting positions from 1).

The function matches is polymorphic, so any algorithm for the problem has to rely only on an equality test (==) :: $a \to a \to Bool$ for information about the elements of the two lists. Polymorphic string matching rules out any algorithm that depends upon a being finite. Assuming it takes constant time to carry out an equality test, the running time of $matches\ ws\ xs$ is $\Theta(mn)$ steps in the worst case, where $m = length\ ws$ and $n = length\ xs$. Our aim in this pearl is to derive the famous Boyer–Moore (BM) algorithm for string matching, which reduces the time to $\Theta(m+n)$ steps. In the following pearl we will derive the equally famous Knuth–Morris–Pratt (KMP) algorithm for the same problem with the same complexity. And the trick is simply to apply appropriate efficiency-improving laws dictated by the form of the expression under manipulation.

The scan lemma

For string matching, indeed for any problem involving the function *inits*, the most important law is known as the *scan lemma*:

$$map (foldl op e) \cdot inits = scanl op e$$

The expression on the left is evaluated on a list of length n with $\Theta(n^2)$ evaluations of op, while the equivalent expression in terms of the standard Haskell function scanl requires only $\Theta(n)$ evaluations.

Although there is a *map* in the definition of *matches*, there is also a *filter*, so the first step in transforming *matches* is to rewrite the specification using another law:

$$map \ f \cdot filter \ p = map \ fst \cdot filter \ snd \cdot map \ (fork \ (f, p))$$
 (16.1)

where fork(f, p) x = (f x, p x). The law is used simply to bring a map next to inits in preparation for applying the scan lemma. Use of (16.1) leads to

matches ws

```
= map fst \cdot filter snd \cdot map (fork (length, ends with ws)) \cdot inits
```

The next question to ask is: can fork (length, endswith ws) be cast as an instance of foldl? Certainly, length = foldl count 0 where count n x = n + 1. Suppose for the moment that we can also find e and op, both of which will depend on ws, so that

$$ends with \ ws = foldlop \ e$$
 (16.2)

Then we are in a position to apply another standard law: the tupling law for foldl. This law states that

```
fork\ (foldl\ op1\ e1,foldl\ op2\ e2)\ =\ foldl\ op\ (e1,e2)
```

where $op(a, b) x = (op1 \ a \ x, op2 \ b \ x)$. Use of the tupling law results in

$$fork (length, ends with ws) = foldl step (0, e)$$

 $step (n, x) y = (n + 1, op x y)$

Finally, we can apply the scan lemma to arrive at

```
matches\ ws = map\ fst \cdot filter\ snd \cdot scanl\ step\ (0,e)
```

If op takes constant time, or at least amortized constant time, then so does step, and the result is a linear-time program. That, in a nutshell, is the genesis of all efficient polymorphic string-matching algorithms.

The problem is that there is no op and e to satisfy (16.2). The function endswith ws returns a single Boolean value and this is insufficient information

to express it as an instance of foldl. The next best thing is to express $ends with \ ws$ as a composition

$$ends with ws = p \cdot foldl \ op \ e \tag{16.3}$$

The form of (16.3) is dictated solely by the desire to apply the scan lemma. Instead of (16.1) we can use a slight generalisation:

$$map \ f \cdot filter \ (p \cdot g) = map \ fst \cdot filter \ (p \cdot snd) \cdot map \ (fork \ (f,g)) \ (16.4)$$

Then we obtain

```
matches\ ws = map\ fst \cdot filter\ (p \cdot snd) \cdot scanl\ step\ (0,e)
```

Provided p and op take amortized constant time, matches will still take linear time.

What remains is to find p, op and e to satisfy (16.3). But we have not yet defined *endswith* formally. Here are two reasonable definitions:

```
endswith ws \ xs = reverse \ ws \sqsubseteq reverse \ xs
endswith ws \ xs = ws \in tails \ xs
```

In the first definition, $us \sqsubseteq vs$ if us is a prefix of vs. It is clear that ws is a suffix of xs if and only if the reverse of ws is a prefix of the reverse of xs. The prefix relation is easier to implement than the suffix relation:

Although both definitions of *endswith* define the same function, they have different forms. And, since it is form rather than function that dictates the course of development, we are at a crossroads. As we will see, taking the first path leads to the BM algorithm, while taking the second leads to the KMP algorithm. In the rest of this pearl we will take the first path. In the following pearl we will explore the second path.

The Boyer–Moore algorithm

The first definition of *endswith* can be restated as a composition:

```
ends with \ ws = (reverse \ ws \sqsubseteq) \cdot reverse
```

Consequently, appeal to (16.4) leads to

matches ws

```
= map \ fst \cdot filter \ ((sw \sqsubseteq) \cdot snd) \cdot map \ (fork \ (length, reverse)) \cdot inits

where sw = reverse \ ws
```

But reverse = foldl (flip (:)) [], so we can again make use of the tupling law of foldl, followed by the scan lemma, to obtain

```
matches\ ws = map\ fst \cdot filter\ ((sw\ \sqsubseteq) \cdot snd) \cdot scanl\ step\ (0,[\ ])

\mathbf{where}\ sw = reverse\ ws

step\ (n,sx)\ x = (n+1,x:sx)
```

This is the basic form of the BM algorithm. Application of *scanl* generates successive "windows" of the text together with their position. Each window contains the reversal of some initial segment of the text, with successive windows differing in just one position, so there is a "shift" of length one at each stage. The terms "window" and "shift" are from Lecroq (2003), which contains a very readable introduction to string matching. Each of these windows is processed by matching against the pattern *ws* from right to left.

Shifting

As it stands, the BM algorithm still takes $\Omega(mn)$ steps in the worst case because the test $(sw \sqsubseteq)$ can take $\Omega(m)$ steps (in all that follows we fix $m = length \ ws$ and assume $m \neq 0$). For example, one worst case arises when the pattern is a list of m repetitions of a single value and the text is a list of n repetitions of the same value. The way to make the worst case better is to see if we can shift over some windows because they cannot be candidates for matching. Such shifts depend on how much of a match there is at the current window.

Let $llcp \ sw \ sx$ denote the length of the longest common prefix of sw and sx. We encountered this function in the previous pearl. Clearly, $sw \sqsubseteq sx$ if and only if $m = llcp \ sw \ sx$. Given $i = llcp \ sw \ sx$ for the current window (n, sx), can we put a lower bound on the position n + k of the next window at which there can be a match? Certainly, we must have $0 < k \le m$ or we might miss a match. Suppose the next window has the form (n+k, ys + sx), where $k = length \ ys$. If there is a match at this window, so $sw \sqsubseteq ys + sx$, then $take \ k \ sw = ys$ and $drop \ k \ sw \sqsubseteq sx$.

Using this information and setting $i = llcp \ sw \ sx$, we can now show that

$$llcp sw (drop k sw) = min i (m-k)$$
(16.5)

First, assume i < m-k. Then

$$take \ i \ (drop \ k \ sw)$$

$$= \{ since \ drop \ k \ sw \sqsubseteq sx \ implies \ drop \ k \ sw = take \ (m-k) \ sx \}$$

$$take \ i \ (take \ (m-k) \ sx)$$

$$= \{ since \ i \le m-k \}$$

$$take \ i \ sx$$

$$= \{ since \ i = llcp \ sw \ sx \}$$

$$take \ i \ sw$$

Similar reasoning gives

$$take(i+1)(drop \ k \ sw) \neq take(i+1) \ sw$$

In other words, if i < m-k, then $llcp\ sw\ (drop\ k\ sw) = i$. In the other case, $i \ge m-k$, we reason:

```
drop \ k \ sw
= \{since \ length \ (drop \ k \ sw) = m-k \le i\}
take \ i \ (drop \ k \ sw)
\sqsubseteq \{since \ drop \ k \ sw \sqsubseteq sx\}
take \ i \ sx
= \{since \ i = llcp \ sw \ sx\}
take \ i \ sw
\sqsubseteq \{definition \ of \ \sqsubseteq\}
sw
```

But $drop \ k \ sw \subseteq sw \equiv llcp \ sw \ (drop \ k \ sw) = m-k$, establishing (16.5).

Now, given any i in the range $0 \le i \le m$, let k be the smallest positive value in the range $1 \le k \le m$ satisfying (16.5). Provided $m \ne 0$, the value k = m satisfies (16.5) if nothing smaller does. It follows that we can skip the next k-1 windows without missing a match. The value k is specified as $k = shift \ sw \ i$, where

```
shift\ sw\ i = head\ [k\ |\ k \leftarrow [1\ ..\ m], llcp\ sw\ (drop\ k\ sw) = min\ i\ (m-k)]
```

This is not a very good way to compute *shift* sw i, as the computation can take $\Omega(m^2)$ steps in the worst case. In the following section we will show how to compute map (shift sw) [0...m] in O(m) steps.

In summary, after a match of length i at the current window (n, sx), the next shift sw i windows can safely be ignored without missing any additional

matches. That means we can redefine matches to read

```
 \begin{array}{lll} \textit{matches ws} & = & \textit{test} \cdot \textit{scanl step} \ (0, [\ ]) \\ \textbf{where} \\ \textit{test} \ [\ ] & = & [\ ] \\ \textit{test} \ ((n, sx) : nxs) & = & \textbf{if} \ \ i = m \\ & & \textbf{then} \ \ n : \textit{test} \ (\textit{drop} \ (k-1) \ \textit{nxs}) \\ & & \textbf{else} \ \ \textit{test} \ (\textit{drop} \ (k-1) \ \textit{nxs}) \\ & & \textbf{where} \ \ i & = & \textit{llcp} \ \textit{sw} \ \textit{sx} \\ & & k & = & \textit{shift} \ \textit{sw} \ i \\ (\textit{sw}, m) & = & (\textit{reverse} \ \textit{ws}, \textit{length} \ \textit{ws}) \\ \end{array}
```

Note that two versions of matches are equivalent only if $m \neq 0$.

A final improvement

There is one final improvement we can make. As before, let i = llcp sw sx and k = shift sw i. Furthermore, suppose $m-k \le i$, so llcp sw (drop k sw) = m-k. That means that drop k sw is a prefix of sw. Since $m-k \le i$, it follows that llcp (drop k sw) sx = m-k.

Now, the next window to be tried is (n+k, ys + sx), where length ys = k. We reason:

```
llcp sw (ys + sx)
= \{\text{setting } i' = llcp sw ys, \text{ so } i' \leq k \}
\mathbf{if } i' = k \mathbf{then } k + llcp (drop k sw) sx \mathbf{else } i'
= \{\text{above, since } llcp (drop k sw) sx = m - k \mathbf{if } m - k \leq i \}
\mathbf{if } i' = k \mathbf{then } m \mathbf{else } i'
```

Hence, provided $m-k \leq i$, the length of the longest common prefix of sw and the text at the next window can be computed by comparing only the first k elements. If m-k > i, then there is no saving and the next window may require up to m comparisons.

The improvement can be implemented by equipping the function test with an additional parameter j, indicating how much of the next candidate window to check. Installing this final refinement, we obtain the program of Figure 16.1, which is complete except for the definitions of llcp and shift. This program is Galil's (1979) version of the BM algorithm. Ignoring the time to compute shift, the running time of matches is O(m+n) steps for a text of length n. For a proof of this claim, which is non-trivial, see Theorem 3.2.3 of Gusfield (1997).

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{matches ws} & = & \textit{test } m \cdot \textit{scanl step} \ (0, [\ ]) \\ \textbf{where} \\ \textit{test } j \ [\ ] & = & [\ ] \\ \textit{test } j \ ((n, sx) : nxs) & | & \textit{i == } m & = n : \textit{test } k \ (\textit{drop} \ (k-1) \ nxs) \\ | & m-k \leq i & = \textit{test } k \ (\textit{drop} \ (k-1) \ nxs) \\ | & \textbf{otherwise} & = \textit{test } m \ (\textit{drop} \ (k-1) \ nxs) \\ | & \textbf{where} \ i' & = & \textit{llcp } \textit{sw} \ (\textit{take} \ j \ sx) \\ | & i & = & if \ i' = & j \ then \ m \ else \ i' \\ | & k & = & \textit{shift } \textit{sw} \ i \\ | & (\textit{sw}, m) & = & (\textit{reverse } \textit{ws}, \textit{length } \textit{ws}) \\ \end{array}
```

Fig. 16.1 The final program

Computing shifts

The definition of shift sw given in the previous section leads to a cubic-time algorithm for computing shifts sw = map (shift sw) [0 ... m]: computation of shift sw i can take quadratic time and there are m+1 values of i. If we can compute shifts sw in linear time and store the result in an array a, then replacing shift sw i by a!i gives a linear-time algorithm for matches. The aim of this section is to show how to compute shifts sw in linear time. Arguably, this is the most subtle aspect of the BM algorithm.

First of all, set $f(k) = llcp \ sw \ (drop \ k \ sw)$ for brevity. Note that f(m) = 0 and $f(k) \le m-k$. We first reason, for any i in the range $0 \le i \le m$:

```
shift \ sw \ i \\ = \{ \text{definition} \} \\ minimum \ [k \mid k \leftarrow [1 ... m], \ f(k) = min \ i \ (m-k)] \\ = \{ \text{case analysis on } min \} \\ minimum \ ([k \mid k \leftarrow [1 ... m-i], \ f(k) = i] + \\ [k \mid k \leftarrow [m-i+1 ... m], \ f(k)+k = m]) \\ = \{ \text{since } f(k) = i \Rightarrow k \leq m-i \} \\ minimum \ ([k \mid k \leftarrow [1 ... m], \ f(k) = i] + \\ [k \mid k \leftarrow [m-i+1 ... m], \ f(k)+k = m]) \\ \end{cases}
```

Next we bring in the Haskell library Data.Array and, in particular, the function accumArray. This function first made an appearance in Pearl 1. The following fact about accumArray is immediate from its definition:

```
(accumArray\ op\ e\ (0,m)\ vks)\ !\ i\ =\ foldl\ op\ e\ [k\ |\ (v,k)\leftarrow vks,\ v=i]
```

for all i in the range $0 \le i \le m$, provided $map fst vks \subseteq [0..m]$. The proviso is necessary because accumArray is undefined if any index is out of the given range. In particular, with

$$a = accumArray min m (0, m) vks$$

 $vks = [(f(k), k) | k \leftarrow [1 .. m]]$

we have

$$a!i = minimum([k \mid k \leftarrow [1 .. m], f(k) == i] ++ [m])$$

for $0 \le i \le m$. That deals with the first term in the definition of *shift sw i*. We now have to factor in the second term. The idea is to replace a by

$$a = accumArray min m (0, m) (vks + vks')$$

where the list vks' is any convenient permutation of

$$[(i, minimum [k \mid k \leftarrow [m-i+1 \dots m], f(k)+k == m]) \mid i \leftarrow [1 \dots m]]$$

Then we have shift sw i = a ! i.

We claim that the following definition of vks', which computes the list above in reverse order, does the job:

```
\begin{array}{lll} vks' & = & zip \ [m,m-1 \ldots 1] \ (foldr \ op \ [\ ] \ vks) \\ vks & = & [(f(k),k) \mid k \leftarrow [1 \ldots m]] \\ op \ (v,k) \ ks & = & \mathbf{if} \ v+k = m \ \mathbf{then} \ k : ks \ \mathbf{else} \ head \ ks : ks \end{array}
```

Note that op(f(m), m)[] = [m] because f(m) = 0 and so f(m) + m = m. For example, with $xs = foldr \ op[] \ vks$ we have

The *i*th element of xs (counting from 0) is the smallest k > i such that f(k)+k=m. In vks' the index m-i is paired with xs !! i; equivalently, i is paired with xs !! (m-i), which is just what is required.

As the final step, recall the function all cp from the previous pearl:

$$allcp \ xs = [llcp \ xs \ (drop \ k \ xs) \mid k \leftarrow [0 .. \ length \ xs - 1]]$$

There we showed how to compute allcp in linear time. For present purposes we need a variant of allcp xs in which the first element is dropped and an additional element llcp xs [] is added at the end. This additional value is zero, so we define

$$allcp'xs = tail(allcp xs) + [0]$$

Finally, we can reason:

```
[(f(k), k) \mid k \leftarrow [1 .. m]]
= \{\text{definition of } f\}
[(llcp sw (drop k sw), k) \mid k \leftarrow [1 .. m]]
= \{\text{definition of } zip\}
zip [llcp sw (drop k sw) \mid k \leftarrow [1 .. m]] [1 .. m]
= \{\text{definition of } allcp'\}
zip (allcp' sw) [1 .. m]
```

Putting these pieces together, we obtain

```
\begin{array}{lll} a & = & accumArray \; min \; m \; (0,m) \; (vks \; + \; vks') \\ \mathbf{where} & \\ m & = & length \; sw \\ vks & = & zip \; (allcp' \; sw) \; [1 \ldots m] \\ vks' & = & zip \; [m,m{-}1 \ldots 1] \; (foldr \; op \; [\;] \; vks) \\ op \; (v,k) \; ks & = & \mathbf{if} \; v + k = m \; \mathbf{then} \; k : ks \; \mathbf{else} \; head \; ks : ks \end{array}
```

Replacing shift sw i by a ! i in Figure 16.1 gives a linear-time algorithm for matches.

Final remarks

The BM algorithm was first described in Boyer and Moore (1977); see also Cormen et al. (2001), Crochemore and Rytter (2003) and Gusfield (1997) for further exploration and discussion of the method. Most often the algorithm is explained in terms of two rules, the bad character rule and the good suffix rule, neither of which appear explicitly above. Our derivation of the BM algorithm, at least in its basic form, was a simple exercise in symbolic manipulation, applying appropriate efficiency-improving laws dictated solely by the form of the expressions being considered. Chief among these laws were the scan lemma and the tupling law of foldl. Moreover, the key idea of the BM algorithm, namely the idea of matching the pattern to the text in right-to-left order, emerged simply as the consequence of one very reasonable way to define endswith. Subsequent optimisations depended more on the content of the expressions than their form, but this is to be expected in any algorithm containing subtle ideas.

References

Boyer, R. S. and Moore, J. S. (1977). A fast string searching algorithm. *Communications of the ACM* **20**, 762–72.

- Cormen, T. H., Leiserson, C. E., Rivest, R. L. and Stein, C. (2001). *Introduction to Algorithms*, second edition. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
- Crochemore, M. and Rytter, W. (2003). Jewels of Stringology. Hong Kong: World Scientific.
- Galil, Z. (1979). On improving the worst cast of the Boyer–Moore string matching algorithm. Communications of the ACM 22 (9), 505–8.
- Gusfield, D. (1997). Algorithms on Strings, Trees and Sequences. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Lecroq, T. (2003). Experimental results on string matching algorithms. Software Practice and Experience 25 (7), 727–65.

17

The Knuth-Morris-Pratt algorithm

Introduction

In this pearl we continue with the problem of string matching and take the other fork in the road, the one that begins with the following definition of endswith:

```
ends with \ ws \ xs = ws \in tails \ xs
```

The path turns out to lead to the KMP algorithm. Remember, the goal is to find functions p and op, and value e, so that $endswith \ ws = p \cdot foldl \ op \ e$. Then we have

```
matches :: Eq \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [nt]

matches ws = map fst · filter (p \cdot snd) \cdot scanl \ step \ (0, e)

step \ (n, x) \ y = (n + 1, op \ x \ y)
```

The value of $matches\ ws\ xs$ is a list of integers n for which the pattern ws appears in the text xs ending at position n. Provided p and op take constant time, or at least amortized constant time, the computation of matches takes $\Theta(m+n)$ steps on a pattern of length m and a text of length n.

First steps

One way of writing endswith ws as a composition is

```
ends with \ ws = not \cdot null \cdot filter \ (= ws) \cdot tails
```

But filter $(= ws) \cdot tails$ cannot be defined as an instance of foldl because it returns either an empty list or [ws], and this is insufficient information to define the function inductively. More promising is filter $(\sqsubseteq ws) \cdot tails$. Applied to xs, this function returns in decreasing order of length all tails of xs that are prefixes of ws. The first element of this list is ws if and only if endswith ws xs. Thus:

```
endswith ws = (= ws) \cdot head \cdot filter (\sqsubseteq ws) \cdot tails
```

Of course, the first function (=ws) is no longer a constant-time test. That problem is solved by generalising filter $(\sqsubseteq ws) \cdot tails$ to a function split, defined by

```
split \ ws \ xs = head \ [(us, ws \downarrow us) \mid us \leftarrow tails \ xs, \ us \sqsubseteq ws]
```

The operation \downarrow is defined by $(us + vs) \downarrow us = vs$. Hence, *split ws xs* splits ws into two lists us and vs so that us + vs = ws. The value of us is the longest suffix of xs that is a prefix of ws. For example:

```
split "endnote" "append" = ("end", "note")
```

Now we have endswith $ws = null \cdot snd \cdot split \ ws$. It remains to find op and e so that $split \ ws = foldl \ op \ e$. Equivalently, we want e and op to satisfy

```
split \ ws \ [\ ] = e

split \ ws \ (xs + [x]) = op \ (split \ ws \ xs) \ x
```

We have split ws[] = ([], ws), which gives us e, so it remains to discover op. The crucial observation is that

```
split \ ws \ xs = (us, vs) \ \Rightarrow \ split \ ws \ (xs + [x]) = split \ ws \ (us + [x])
```

In words, the longest suffix of xs + [x] that is a prefix of ws is a suffix of us + [x]. It cannot be a longer suffix, for that would mean there is a longer suffix of xs than us that is a prefix of ws, contradicting the definition of us as the longest such suffix.

To discover op we first express split recursively:

```
split \ ws \ xs = \mathbf{if} \ xs \sqsubseteq ws \ \mathbf{then} \ (xs, ws \downarrow xs) \ \mathbf{else} \ split \ ws \ (tail \ xs)
```

Now, setting split $ws \ xs = (us, vs)$, so ws = us + vs, we reason:

```
split\ ws\ (xs + [x])
= \{observation\ above\}
split\ ws\ (us + [x])
= \{recursive\ definition\ of\ split\}
\mathbf{if}\ us + [x] \sqsubseteq ws\ \mathbf{then}\ (us + [x], ws \downarrow (us + [x]))
\mathbf{else}\ split\ ws\ (tail\ (us + [x]))
= \{since\ ws = us + vs\ and\ definitions\ of\ \sqsubseteq\ and\ \downarrow\}
\mathbf{if}\ [x] \sqsubseteq vs\ \mathbf{then}\ (us + [x], tail\ vs)
\mathbf{else}\ split\ ws\ (tail\ (us + [x]))
```

= {case analysis on
$$us$$
}
if $[x] \sqsubseteq vs$ then $(us + [x], tail vs)$
else if $null us$ then $([], ws)$
else $split ws (tail us + [x])$

This calculation gives us our definition of op:

```
op(us, vs) x \mid [x] \sqsubseteq vs = (us + [x], tail vs)

\mid null us = ([], ws)

\mid  otherwise = op(split ws(tail us)) x
```

Summarising where we are at this point:

```
matches ws = map fst \cdot filter (null \cdot snd \cdot snd) \cdot \\ scanl step (0, ([], ws)) \\ step (n, (us, vs)) x = (n + 1, op (us, vs) x)
```

This is the basic form of the KMP algorithm: each step maintains a current split (us, vs) of the pattern ws in which us is the longest prefix of ws matching some suffix of the current portion of the text. Positions for which vs = [] are those where the pattern matches exactly and are recorded.

The problem with op is that it is inefficient: the third clause requires computation of $split\ ws\ (tail\ us)$, which in turn may involve computing and possibly recomputing $split\ ws\ zs$ for an arbitrary substring zs of ws. Clearly, op does too much work and we need something better.

Data refinement

One way to improve efficiency is to seek a change of representation of the first argument to op, namely the current split (us, vs) of the pattern ws. Specifically, suppose abs and rep are functions with types

```
abs :: Rep([a], [a]) \rightarrow ([a], [a])

rep :: ([a], [a]) \rightarrow Rep([a], [a])
```

for some data type Rep. The function rep is the representation function, while abs is the abstraction function. The terminology is standard in data refinement. We also want $abs \cdot rep = id$, so abs is left-inverse to rep. This condition states that the abstract value can be recovered from any representation of it. The other direction $rep \cdot abs = id$ will only hold if the change of representation is a bijection, which is not normally the case in data refinement.

If we can find the necessary ingredients to ensure

$$foldl \ op ([], ws) = abs \cdot foldl \ op' (rep ([], ws))$$

$$(17.1)$$

as well as ensure that abs and op' take constant time, then we can redefine matches to read

```
matches \ ws = map \ fst \cdot filter \ (null \cdot snd \cdot abs \cdot snd) \cdot \\ scanl \ step \ (0, rep \ ([\ ], ws)) \\ step \ (n, r) \ x = (n + 1, op' \ r \ x)
```

To find abs, op' and rep satisfying (17.1) we appeal to the fusion law of foldl. This laws states the $f \cdot foldl$ g a = foldl h b provided three conditions are met: (i) f is a strict function; (ii) f a = b; and (iii) f (g y x) = h (f y) x for all x and y. The first condition is not needed if we want to assert that the fusion law holds only for all finite lists. The twist here is that we want to apply the law in the anti-fusion or fission direction, splitting a fold into two parts.

The second fusion condition is immediate: abs (rep ([], ws)) = ([], ws). And there is an obvious definition of op' that satisfies the third fusion condition, namely

$$op' r = rep \cdot op (abs r)$$
 (17.2)

Then we have

$$abs(op'rx) = abs(rep(op(abs r)x)) = op(abs r)x$$

Installing the definition of op in (17.2) we obtain

$$op' \ r \ x$$
 | $[x] \sqsubseteq vs = rep \ (us + [x], tail \ vs)$
| $null \ us = rep \ ([\], ws)$
| $otherwise = op' \ (rep \ (split \ ws \ (tail \ us))) \ x$
| $where \ (us, vs) = abs \ r$

It remains to choose *Rep* and the two functions *abs* and *rep*.

Trees

In functional programming, practically all efficient representations involve a tree of some kind, and this one is no different. We define

$$\mathbf{data} \ \mathit{Rep} \ a \ \ = \ \ \mathit{Null} \ | \ \mathit{Node} \ a \ (\mathit{Rep} \ a) \ (\mathit{Rep} \ a)$$

So Rep is a binary tree. The function abs is defined by

$$abs (Node (us, vs) \ell r) = (us, vs)$$

$$(17.3)$$

and clearly takes constant time. The function rep is defined by

$$rep(us, vs) = Node(us, vs) (left us vs) (right us vs)$$
 (17.4)

where

```
\begin{array}{lll} \mathit{left} \; [\;] \; \mathit{vs} & = & \mathit{Null} \\ \mathit{left} \; (\mathit{u} : \mathit{us}) \; \mathit{vs} & = & \mathit{rep} \; (\mathit{split} \; \mathit{ws} \; \mathit{us}) \\ \mathit{right} \; \mathit{us} \; [\;] & = & \mathit{Null} \\ \mathit{right} \; \mathit{us} \; (\mathit{v} : \mathit{vs}) & = & \mathit{rep} \; (\mathit{us} \; +\!\!+ \; [\mathit{v}], \mathit{vs}) \end{array}
```

The reason for choosing rep in the above way is that op' takes the simple form

$$op' \left(Node \left(us, vs\right) \ell \ r\right) x \quad | \quad [x] \sqsubseteq vs = r$$

$$\mid \quad null \ us = root$$

$$\mid \quad \mathbf{otherwise} = op' \ell \ x$$

where root = rep ([], ws). For instance, the first clause is justified by

$$op' (Node (us, vs) \ell r) x$$

$$= \{definition of op' \text{ in the case } [x] \sqsubseteq vs\}$$

$$rep (us + [x], tail vs)$$

$$= \{definition of right and x = head vs\}$$

$$right us vs$$

$$= \{definition of rep\}$$

The other clauses are similar. If we also set op' Null x = root, then op' takes an even simpler form:

```
\begin{array}{llll} op' \ Null \ x & = & root \\ op' \ (Node \ (us, vs) \ \ell \ r) \ x & \mid & [x] \sqsubseteq vs & = & r \\ & \mid & \mathbf{otherwise} \ = & op' \ \ell \ x \end{array}
```

Although op' does not take constant time, it does take amortized constant time. The tree root has height m, the length of the pattern; taking a right branch decreases the height of the current tree by exactly one, while taking a left-branch increases the height, possibly by more than one. A standard amortization argument now shows that evaluating $foldl\ op'\ root$ on a list of length n involves at most 2m + n calls of op'.

What remains is to show how to compute *rep* efficiently. It is here that a final standard technique of program transformation enters the picture: use of an accumulating parameter. The idea is to specify a generalised version, *grep* say, of *rep* by

$$rep(us, vs) = grep(left us vs)(us, vs)$$

and then to derive a direct definition of grep. From (17.4) we have

$$grep \ \ell \ (us, vs) = Node \ (us, vs) \ \ell \ (right \ us \ vs)$$

Now, by the definition of right, we have right us [] = Null and

$$right \ us \ (v : vs) = rep \ (us + [v], vs)$$
$$= grep \ (left \ (us + [v]) \ vs) \ (us + [v], vs)$$

To simplify left (us + [v]) vs we need a case analysis on us. In the case us = [] we reason:

$$left ([] + [v]) vs$$

$$= \{definition of left\}$$

$$rep (split ws [])$$

$$= \{definition of split\}$$

$$rep ([], ws)$$

$$= \{definition of root\}$$

$$root$$

In the inductive case u:us we reason:

$$left (u: us + [v]) vs$$

$$= \{definition of left\} \\ rep (split ws (us + [v]))$$

$$= \{definition of split\} \\ rep (op (split ws us) v)$$

$$= \{definition (17.2) of op'\} \\ op' (rep (split ws us)) v$$

$$= \{definition of left\} \\ op' (left (u: us) vs) v$$

Summarising this calculation:

$$left(us + [v]) vs = \mathbf{if} \ null \ us \ \mathbf{then} \ root \ \mathbf{else} \ op'(left \ us \ vs) \ v$$

Hence, grep can be defined by

```
matches ws
                                  map\ fst \cdot filter\ (ok \cdot snd) \cdot scanl\ step\ (0, root)
where
ok (Node \ vs \ \ell \ r)
                                 null \ vs
step(n,t)x
                                 (n+1, op t x)
                             =
op Null x
                             =
                                 root
                             = op \ell x
op (Node [\ ]\ell r) x
op (Node (v:vs) \ell r) x
                             = if v = x then r else op \ell x
                             = arep Null ws
grep \ell
                             = Node [] \ell Null
                                Node (v:vs) \ell (qrep (op \ell v) vs)
qrep \ \ell \ (v:vs)
```

Fig. 17.1 The final program for matches

Let us now put all the pieces together. We have

```
matches\ ws = map\ fst \cdot filter\ (ok \cdot snd) \cdot scanl\ step\ (0, root) where
```

```
ok (Node (us, vs) \ell r) = null vs

step (n, t) x = (n + 1, op t x)

root = grep Null ([], ws)
```

The function op (which is op' renamed) is defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} op \ Null \ x & = \ root \\ op \ (Node \ (us, [\ ]) \ \ell \ r) \ x & = \ op \ \ell \ x \\ op \ (Node \ (us, v : vs) \ \ell \ r) \ x & = \ \mathbf{if} \ \ v = x \ \mathbf{then} \ \ r \ \mathbf{else} \ \ op \ \ell \ x \end{array}
```

and the function grep by

```
grep \ \ell \ (us, [\ ]) = Node \ (us, [\ ]) \ \ell \ Null
grep \ \ell \ (us, v : vs) = Node \ (us, v : vs) \ \ell \ (grep \ (op \ \ell \ v) \ (us + + [v], vs))
```

Inspection of the right-hand sides of these definitions shows that the first component us of the pair (us, vs) plays no part in the algorithm, as its value is never used. Hence, we simply drop us and obtain our final program, recorded in Figure 17.1.

The tree root is cyclic: left subtrees point backwards to earlier nodes in the tree, or to Null. This tree encapsulates the failure function of the KMP algorithm as a cyclic graph. The operation op takes amortized constant time, assuming the cost of an equality test is constant. The time to compute root is $\Theta(m)$ steps, where $m = length \ ws$. Hence, matches takes $\Theta(m)$ steps to build root and thereafter $\Theta(n)$ steps, where n is the length of the text, to compute the occurrences of the pattern in the text.

The program above is not quite the full KMP algorithm, but corresponds to what is known as the Morris-Pratt algorithm. The full KMP algorithm contains an extra wrinkle. Suppose we introduce a function *next*, defined by

```
next \ Null \ x = Null
next \ (Node \ [\ ] \ \ell \ r) \ x = Node \ [\ ] \ \ell \ r
next \ (Node \ (v : vs) \ \ell \ r) \ x = \mathbf{if} \ \ v = x \ \mathbf{then} \ \ next \ \ell \ x
\mathbf{else} \ \ Node \ (v : vs) \ \ell \ r
```

Essentially, $next \ t \ x$ replaces the tree t with the first tree on the list of left subtrees of t whose associated label does not begin with x. The point about next is that, as can be seen from the definition of op, we have

```
op\ (Node\ (v:vs)\ \ell\ r)\ x = op\ (Node\ (v:vs)\ (next\ \ell\ v)\ r)\ x
```

It follows that evaluation of op can be made more efficient by replacing each node $Node\ (v:vs)\ \ell\ r$ in the tree with a new node $Node\ (v:vs)\ (next\ \ell\ v)\ r$. But we won't go into further details.

Final remarks

The KMP algorithm was first described in Knuth et al. (1977). However, many other descriptions of the algorithm exist (e.g. Gusfield, 1997; Cormen et al., 2001; Crochemore and Rytter, 2002). In fact, there are over a hundred papers devoted to string matching in general, and the KMP and BM algorithms in particular. In fact, we have written two previous papers about the KMP ourselves (Bird, 1977; Bird et al., 1989), one over 30 years ago, before the laws of functional programming were firmly established. The above presentation of the KMP algorithm is a more polished and revised version of the one contained in Bird et al. (1989). Recently, Olivier Danvy and his colleagues at BRICS have written a number of papers showing how to obtain the KMP and BM algorithms by partial evaluation. For example, Ager et al. (2003) uses similar ideas to those in Bird (1977) to solve a long-outstanding open problem in partial evaluation, namely how to obtain the KMP from a naive algorithm by a process of partial evaluation that takes linear time. And Danvy and Rohde (2005) present a derivation of the search phase of the BM algorithm using partial evaluation, by identifying the bad character rule as a binding-time improvement.

References

Ager, M. S., Danvy, O. and Rohde, H. K. (2003). Fast partial evaluation of pattern matching in strings. BRICS Report Series, RS-03-11, University of Aarhus, Denmark.

- Bird, R. S. (1977). Improving programs by the introduction of recursion. *Communications of the ACM* **20** (11), 856–63.
- Bird, R. S., Gibbons, J. and Jones, G. (1989). Formal derivation of a pattern matching algorithm. Science of Computer Programming 12, 93–104.
- Cormen, T. H., Leiserson, C. E., Rivest, R. L. and Stein, C. (2001). *Introduction to Algorithms*, second edition. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Crochemore, M. and Rytter, W. (2002). Jewels of Stringology. Hong Kong: World Scientific.
- Danvy, O. and Rohde, H. K. (2005). On obtaining the Boyer–Moore string-matching algorithm by partial evaluation. BRICS Research Report RS-05-14, University of Aarhus, Denmark.
- Gusfield, D. (1997). Algorithms on Strings, Trees and Sequences. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Knuth, D. E., Morris, J. H. and Pratt, V. B. (1977). Fast pattern matching in strings. SIAM Journal on Computing 6, 323–50.

18

Planning solves the Rush Hour problem

Introduction

Rush Hour is an intriguing sliding-block puzzle, invented some years ago by the celebrated puzzlist Nob Yoshigahara and marketed by Think Fun. It is played on a 6×6 grid and can be solved in reasonable time by a brute-force breadth-first search. The generalised version – played on an $n \times n$ grid – is known to be PSPACE-complete, so a better than exponential-time solver is very unlikely. Still, with the help of a suitable planning algorithm, it is possible to improve significantly on the brute-force approach, and the aim of this pearl is to show how. Further details of how Rush Hour is played are postponed until later, because we want to start out with a more abstract formulation of puzzles, breadth-first search and planning.

Puzzles

Consider an abstract puzzle defined in terms of two finite sets, a set of states and a set of moves. Given are three functions

moves :: $State \rightarrow [Move]$

 $move \quad :: \quad State \rightarrow Move \rightarrow State$

 $solved :: State \rightarrow Bool$

The function *moves* determines the legal moves that can be made in a given state and *move* returns the new state that results when a given move is made. The function *solved* determines which states are a solution to the puzzle. Described in this way, a puzzle is essentially a deterministic finite automaton. Solving the puzzle means finding some sequence of moves, preferably a shortest such sequence, that leads from a given initial state to some solved state:

 $solve :: State \rightarrow Maybe [Move]$

¹ Rush Hour is obtainable from http://www.puzzles.com/products/rushhour.htm.

The value of solve q is Nothing if there is no sequence of moves beginning in state q that leads to a solved state and returns Just ms otherwise, where ms satisfies solved (foldl move q ms).

We can implement *solve* by carrying out either a breadth-first or a depth-first search. In either case the key idea is to introduce the synonyms

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{type} & Path & = & ([Move], State) \\ \textbf{type} & Frontier & = & [Path] \end{array}
```

A path consists of a sequence of moves made in some given starting state, together with the resulting state. A frontier is a list of paths waiting to be explored further. Then, a breadth-first search can be defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} bfsearch & :: & [State] \rightarrow Frontier \rightarrow Maybe \ [Move] \\ bfsearch \ qs \ [\ ] & = & Nothing \\ bfsearch \ qs \ (p@(ms,q):ps) \\ & | & solved \ q & = & Just \ ms \\ & | & q \in qs & = & bfsearch \ qs \ ps \\ & | & \mathbf{otherwise} & = & bfsearch \ (q:qs) \ (ps + succs \ p) \end{array}
```

where

```
\begin{array}{lll} succs & :: & Path \rightarrow [Path] \\ succs \; (ms,\,q) & = & [(ms +\!\!\!+ [m], move \; q \; m) \; \mid \; m \leftarrow moves \; q] \end{array}
```

The first component qs of bfsearch represents the set of analysed states. In a breadth-first search the frontier is managed as a queue, so paths at the same distance from the starting state are analysed before their successors. Analysing a path means accepting it if the final state is a solved state, rejecting it if the final state has already been analysed, and otherwise adding its successors to the end of the current frontier for future exploration. A breadth-first search will find a shortest solution if a solution exists.

With one change, the definition of depth-first search is exactly the same as that of breadth-first search. The change is to replace the term ps + succs p by succs p + ps. In a depth-first search the frontier is maintained as a stack, so the successors of a path are analysed before any other path at the same level. A depth-first search will find a solution if one exists, but it probably won't be the shortest.

Under breadth-first search the current frontier can be exponentially longer than under depth-first search. Consequently, as defined above, bfsearch takes much more time than dfsearch. The reason is that evaluation of ps + succs p takes time proportional to the length of the frontier ps. One way to make the

code faster, though it does not reduce the space complexity, is to introduce an accumulating parameter, defining bfsearch' by

```
bfsearch' \ qs \ pss \ ps = bfsearch \ qs \ (ps + concat \ (reverse \ pss))
```

Then, after some simple calculation which we omit, we obtain

```
bfsearch' :: [State] \rightarrow [Frontier] \rightarrow Frontier \rightarrow Maybe [Move]
bfsearch' qs [] [] = Nothing
bfsearch' qs pss [] = bfsearch' qs [] (concat (reverse pss))
bfsearch' qs pss (p@(ms, q) : ps)
| solved q = Just ms
| q \in qs = bfsearch' qs pss ps
| otherwise = bfsearch' (q : qs) (succs p : pss) ps
```

In fact, there is a simpler version of bfsearch' in which the accumulating parameter is of type Frontier rather than [Frontier]:

This version of bfsearch' has a different behaviour than the previous one in that successive frontiers are traversed alternately from left to right and from right to left, but a shortest solution will still be found if a solution exists.

We can now define

```
bfsolve \ q = bfsearch'[][][([],q)]
```

The function bfsolve implements solve using a breadth-first search.

Planning

But what we have got so far is simply the strategy of trying every possible sequence of moves until finding one that works. That is not the way humans solve puzzles. Instead they make plans. For our purposes a plan is a sequence of moves that, if the moves can be carried out, leads to a solved state. Thus:

```
\mathbf{type} \ Plan \ = \ [Move]
```

Plans have to consist of non-repeated moves, otherwise the plan cannot be carried out. If, in order to make move m, a plan requires move m to be made

first, then clearly the plan cannot be implemented. An empty plan means success. Otherwise, suppose the first move in the current plan is move m. If move m can be carried out in the current state, then it is made. If it cannot, then we make use of a function $premoves :: State \rightarrow Move \rightarrow [[Move]]$ such that, for each alternative pms in $premoves\ q\ m$, the move m can be made provided the preparatory moves pms are made first. In turn, moves in pms may require further preparatory moves, so we have to form new, extended plans by iterating premoves:

```
newplans :: State \rightarrow Plan \rightarrow [Plan]
newplans \ q \ ms = mkplans \ ms
	extbf{where}
mkplans \ ms \ | \ null \ ms \ = \ []
| \ m \in qms \ = \ [ms]
| \ 	extbf{otherwise} \ = \ concat \ [mkplans \ (pms + ms) \ | \ 	extbf{pms} \leftarrow premoves \ q \ m, \ 	extbf{all} \ (
eq \ ms) \ pms]
	extbf{where} \ m = head \ ms; \ qms = moves \ q
```

The result of newplans q ms is a possibly empty list of nonempty plans, the first move of each of which can be made in state q. To kick-start the planning process we assume that a puzzle in state q can be solved by making the moves in goalmoves q, where goalmoves :: $State \rightarrow Plan$.

Using just the two new functions *goalmoves* and *premoves* we can now formulate an alternative search process based on the idea of an augmented path and frontier:

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{type} & APath & = & ([Move], State, Plan) \\ \textbf{type} & AFrontier & = & [APath] \end{array}
```

An augmented path consists of moves already made from some starting state, the state that results and a plan for the remaining moves. The search consists of exploring augmented paths in order until either one plan succeeds or all plans fail:

```
psearch :: [State] \rightarrow AFrontier \rightarrow Maybe [Move]
psearch \ qs \ [\ ] = Nothing
psearch \ qs \ (p@(ms, q, plan) : ps)
| solved \ q = Just \ ms
| \ q \in qs = psearch \ qs \ ps
| \  otherwise = psearch \ (q : qs) \ (asuccs \ p + ps + bsuccs \ p)
```

where

```
asuccs, bsuccs :: APath \rightarrow [APath]

asuccs (ms, q, plan)

= [(ms++[m], move \ q \ m, plan') \mid m : plan' \leftarrow newplans \ q \ plan]

bsuccs (ms, q, \bot)

= [(ms++[m], q', goalmoves \ q') \mid m \leftarrow moves \ q, \ \mathbf{let} \ q' = move \ q \ m]
```

In psearch qs ps all the plans in the frontier ps are tried first in a depth-first manner. If all of them fail, then we add in further plans, each of which consists of making some legal move and starting over with a new goal. These additional plans, expressed by the term bsuccs, are necessary for completeness. Simple puzzles may be solvable by suitable planning, but plans may fail even though there is a solution. This is a consequence of the fact that plans are executed greedily and moves that can be made are made. To ensure a complete strategy we have to be willing to make additional plans at each stage.

As with a breadth-first search, we can make *psearch* faster by introducing an accumulating parameter:

```
psearch' :: [State] \rightarrow AFrontier \rightarrow AFrontier \rightarrow Maybe [Move]
psearch' qs [][] = Nothing
psearch' qs rs [] = psearch' qs [] rs
psearch' qs rs (p@(ms, q, plan) : ps)
| solved q = Just (reverse ms)
| q \in qs = psearch' qs rs ps
| otherwise = psearch' (q : qs) (bsuccs p + rs) (asuccs p + ps)
```

The function *psolve* can now be defined by

```
psolve :: State \rightarrow Maybe [Move]

psolve q = psearch'[][][[], q, goalmoves q)]
```

The function *psolve* implements *solve* using planning. It is possible to define a variation of *psearch* that explores plans in a breadth-first manner, but we will leave details to the reader. Note that *psearch* will find a solution if one exists, but not necessarily the shortest one.

Rush Hour

Let us now apply the above ideas to Rush Hour. As mentioned before, this is a puzzle consisting of a 6×6 grid of 36 cells. Covering some of these cells are vehicles. Each vehicle is either vertical or horizontal and occupies either two cells or three cells, depending on whether the vehicle is a car or truck.

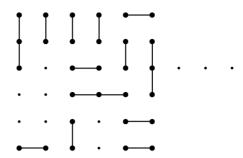


Fig. 18.1 A Rush Hour grid

Horizontal vehicles can move left or right, while vertical vehicles can move up or down. One fixed cell, three places down along the right vertical side of the grid, is special and is called the *exit* cell. One vehicle is special: it is horizontal and occupies cells to the left of the exit cell. The object of the puzzle is simply to move the special vehicle to the exit cell. An example starting grid is pictured in Figure 18.1.

There are various ways to represent the grid, of which the most obvious is to name each cell by a pair of Cartesian coordinates. A more space-efficient alternative (a useful consideration with breadth-first search) is to number the cells as follows:

```
1
     2
           3
                      5
                4
                           6
8
     9
          10
                11
                     12
                          13
15
          17
                     19
                          20
     16
                18
22
     23
          24
                25
                     26
                          27
29
     30
          31
                32
                     33
                          34
     37
          38
                39
                     40
                          41
36
```

The left and right borders are cells divisible by 7, the top border consists of cells with negative numbers and the bottom border has cells greater than 42. The exit cell is cell 20. A grid state can be defined as a list of pairs of cells, each pair being the rear and front cells occupied by a single vehicle. The vehicles in the grid are named implicitly by their positions in the list, with the special vehicle being vehicle 0, so the first pair represents the cells occupied by the special vehicle. For example, the grid of Figure 18.1 is represented by

$$g1 = [(17,18), (1,15), (2,9), (3,10), (4,11), (5,6), (12,19), (13,27), (24,26), (31,38), (33,34), (36,37), (40,41)]$$

This representation is captured by introducing the synonyms

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{type} & Cell & = & Int \\ \textbf{type} & Grid & = & [(Cell, Cell)] \\ \textbf{type} & Vehicle & = & Int \\ \textbf{type} & Move & = & (Vehicle, Cell) \\ \textbf{type} & State & = & Grid \end{array}
```

The list of occupied cells can be constructed in increasing order by filling in the intervals associated with each vehicle and merging the results:

```
egin{array}{lll} occupied & :: & Grid 
ightarrow [Cell] \\ occupied & = & foldr \left(merge \cdot fillcells\right)[\ ] \\ fillcells\left(r,f\right) & = & \mathbf{if} & r > f-7 & \mathbf{then} & [r \mathinner{\ldotp\ldotp} f] & \mathbf{else} & [r,r+7 \mathinner{\ldotp\ldotp} f] \end{array}
```

A vehicle occupying the cells in the interval (r, f), where r is the rear and f is the front, is horizontal if r > f-7 and vertical if $r \le f-7$. The free cells of a grid are now defined by

```
freecells :: Grid \rightarrow [Cell]
freecells g = allcells \setminus occupied g
```

where $allcells = [c \mid c \leftarrow [1..41], c \mod 7 \neq 0]$. We omit the standard definitions of merge and the ordered list difference operator \setminus .

The function *moves* is implemented by

```
\begin{array}{lll} moves & :: & Grid \rightarrow [Move] \\ moves \ g & = & [(v,c) \mid (v,i) \leftarrow zip \ [0..] \ g, \ c \leftarrow adjs \ i, \ c \in fs] \\ & & \mathbf{where} \ fs = freecells \ g \\ \\ adjs \ (r,f) & = & \mathbf{if} \ \ r > f-7 \ \mathbf{then} \ \ [f+1,r-1] \ \mathbf{else} \ \ [f+7,r-7] \end{array}
```

A move (v, c) is legal if and only if cell c is unoccupied and adjacent, along the appropriate axis, to the cells currently occupied by v. Note that a move consists of moving a vehicle exactly one step on the grid.

The function *move* is implemented by

```
move\ g\ (v,c) = g1 + adjust\ i\ c: g2

\mathbf{where}\ (g1,i:g2) = splitAt\ v\ g
```

and adjust by

```
\begin{array}{lll} adjust \ (r,f) \ c \\ | & r>f-7 & = & \mathbf{if} \ c>f \ \mathbf{then} \ (r+1,c) \ \mathbf{else} \ (c,f-1) \\ | & \mathbf{otherwise} \ = & \mathbf{if} \ c< r \ \mathbf{then} \ (c,f-7) \ \mathbf{else} \ (r+7,c) \end{array}
```

The arithmetic here is fairly self-explanatory and justification is omitted.

A grid is solved if the front of vehicle 0 is at the exit cell:

```
solved :: Grid \rightarrow Bool

solved g = snd (head g) = 20
```

We can now implement the breadth-first strategy by

```
bfsolve :: Grid \rightarrow Maybe [Move]

bfsolve g = bfsearch'[][][([],g)]
```

where bfsearch' is as defined in the previous section.

To implement *psearch* we need to define the two additional functions *goalmoves* and *premoves*. The former is easy:

```
goalmoves :: Grid \rightarrow Plan

goalmoves g = [(0, c) \mid c \leftarrow [snd (head g) + 1 .. 20]]
```

That is, *goalmoves* is the list of moves required to step the special vehicle 0 forward to the exit.

We need to define premoves g m only when m is a move with a target cell c that is currently occupied. In such a case there is a unique pair (v, i) in zip [0...] g with interval i containing c. The function blocker discovers this pair:

```
\begin{array}{lll} blocker & :: & Grid \rightarrow Cell \rightarrow (Vehicle, (Cell, Cell)) \\ blocker \ g \ c & = & search \ (zip \ [0..] \ g) \ c \\ search \ ((v,i):vis) \ c & = & \mathbf{if} \ covers \ c \ i \ \mathbf{then} \ (v,i) \ \mathbf{else} \ search \ vis \ c \\ covers \ c \ (r,f) & = & r \leq c \land c \leq f \land (r > f-7 \lor (c-r) \ \mathrm{mod} \ 7 = 0) \end{array}
```

The blocking vehicle v, occupying the interval i = (r, f), has to be moved out of the way so as to free the cell c; this is achieved by moving v left or right if horizontal, or down or up if vertical, an appropriate number of moves. These moves are computed with the function freeingmoves:

```
\begin{array}{ll} \textit{freeingmoves} :: \textit{Cell} \to (\textit{Vehicle}, (\textit{Cell}, \textit{Cell})) \to [[\textit{Move}]] \\ \textit{freeingmoves} \ c \ (v, (r, f)) \\ | \ r > f - 7 \  \  \, = \  \, [[(v, j) \mid j \leftarrow [f + 1 \ldots c + n]] \mid c + n < k + 7] \ + \\ & \quad  \, [[(v, j) \mid j \leftarrow [r - 1, r - 2 \ldots c - n]] \mid c - n > k] \\ | \  \  \, \text{otherwise} \  \  \, = \  \, [[(v, j) \mid j \leftarrow [r - 7, r - 14 \ldots c - m]] \mid c - m > 0] \ + \\ & \quad  \, [[(v, j) \mid j \leftarrow [f + 7, f + 14 \ldots c + m]] \mid c + m < 42] \\ \text{where} \  \, (k, m, n) = (f - f \ \text{mod} \ 7, f - r + 7, f - r + 1) \end{array}
```

If v is horizontal, so r > f-7, then its length is n = f-r+1 and, in order to free the cell c, we have to move v either rightwards to cell c+n or leftwards to cell c-n, provided these cells are on the grid. If v is vertical, then its

length is $n = (f - r) \operatorname{div} 7 + 1$ and we have to move v either upwards to cell c - 7n or downwards to cell c + 7n, again provided these cells are on the grid. The value of m in this case is $m = 7 \times n$.

Now we can define *premoves* by

```
\begin{array}{lll} premoves & :: & Grid \rightarrow Move \rightarrow [[Move]] \\ premoves \ g \ (v, c) & = & freeingmoves \ c \ (blocker \ g \ c) \end{array}
```

However, the definition of newplans given in the previous section needs to be modified in order to work with Rush Hour. To see why, imagine the current plan consists of the goal moves [(0,19),(0,20)] where vehicle 0 occupies the cells [17,18] on the opening grid. Suppose the first move (0,19) is not possible until the preparatory moves pms are made. Now it is perfectly possible that one of the moves in pms is (0,16), moving vehicle 0 one place to the left. After executing pms in preparation for the move (0,19) we see that (0,19) is no longer a well-defined move in the resulting grid because it requires 0 to move two steps forward, and so has first to be expanded to the single-step moves [(0,18),(0,19)]. Hence, we need to modify newplans to read

```
 \begin{array}{lll} newplans & :: & Grid \rightarrow Plan \rightarrow [Plan] \\ newplans \ g \ [ \ ] & = & [ \ ] \\ newplans \ g \ (m : ms) & = & mkplans \ (expand \ g \ m + ms) \\ \textbf{where} \ mkplans \ ms & = & \textbf{if} \ m \in gms \ \textbf{then} \ [ms] \ \textbf{else} \\ & concat \ [mkplans \ (pms + ms) \ | \\ & pms \leftarrow premoves \ g \ m, \\ & all \ (\notin ms) \ pms] \\ \textbf{where} \ m = head \ ms; \ gms = moves \ g \\ \end{array}
```

The new function *expand*, which expands a possibly invalid move into a sequence of valid moves, is defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} expand & :: & Grid \to Move \to [Move] \\ expand & g \; (v,c) \\ & | & r > f-7 & = & \mathbf{if} \; \; c > f \; \mathbf{then} \; \left[ (v,p) \; | \; p \leftarrow [f+1 \ldots c] \right] \\ & & \mathbf{else} \; \left[ (v,p) \; | \; p \leftarrow [r-1,r-2 \ldots c] \right] \\ & | & \mathbf{otherwise} \; = & \mathbf{if} \; \; c > f \; \mathbf{then} \; \left[ (v,p) \; | \; p \leftarrow [f+7,f+14 \ldots c] \right] \\ & & \mathbf{else} \; \left[ (v,p) \; | \; p \leftarrow [r-7,r-14 \ldots c] \right] \\ & \mathbf{where} \; (r,f) = g \; !! \; v \end{array}
```

We can now implement the planning algorithm by

```
psolve :: Grid \rightarrow Maybe [Move]

psolve g = psearch'[][][([], g, goalmoves g)]
```

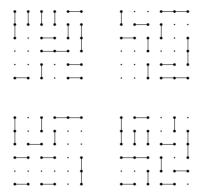


Fig. 18.2 Four Rush Hour problems

Table 18.1. Solution times to solve four Rush Hour problems

Puzzle	bf solve	Moves	psolve	Moves	df solve	Moves
1	9.11	34	0.23	38	3.96	1228
2	4.71	18	0.04	27	3.75	2126
3	1.70	55	0.91	75	0.97	812
4	9.84	81	2.36	93	2.25	1305

where psearch' is as defined in the previous section except for the revised definition of newplans.

Results

So, how much better is *psolve* than *bfsolve*? We took four Rush Hour puzzles from Nick Baxter's puzzleworld site www.puzzleworld.org/SlidingBlock Puzzles/rushhour.htm, pictured in Figure 18.2. These were solved on a Pentium 3, 1000MHz computer, using GHCi. The results (times are in seconds) are shown in Table 18.1. As can be seen from Table 18.1, *psolve* is significantly faster than *bfsolve*, varying from a factor of 100 to a factor of 2. On the other hand, *psolve* may make unnecessary moves. For comparison, the times and move counts for *dfsolve* are also included in the table.

Final remarks

The PSPACE-completeness result for Rush Hour can be found in Flake and Baum (2002). I learned about Rush Hour at the 2008 Advanced Functional

Programming Summer School (Jones, 2008), where Mark Jones presented a series of lectures about the benefits of thinking functionally about problems. He gave a breadth-first solution, but he also challenged participants at the summer school to come up with a faster solution. This pearl was composed in response to Jones' challenge.

References

- Flake, G. W. and Baum, E. B. (2002). Rush Hour is PSPACE-complete, or "Why you should generously tip parking lot attendants". *Theoretical Computer Science* **270** (1), 895–911.
- Jones, M. P. (2008). Functional thinking. Advanced Functional Programming Summer School, Boxmeer, The Netherlands.

19

A simple Sudoku solver

How to Play: Fill in the grid so that every row, every column and every 3×3 box contains the digits 1–9. There's no maths involved. You solve the puzzle with reasoning and logic.

Advice on how to play Sudoku, The Independent Newspaper

Introduction

The game of Sudoku is played on a 9×9 grid. Given a matrix, such as that in Figure 19.1, the idea is to fill in the empty cells with the digits 1 to 9 so that each row, column and 3×3 box contains the numbers 1 to 9. In general there may be one, none or many solutions, though in a good Sudoku puzzle there should always be a unique solution. Our aim in this pearl is to construct a Haskell program to solve Sudoku puzzles. Specifically, we will define a function *solve* for computing all the ways a given grid may be completed. If only one solution is wanted, then we can take the head of the list. Lazy evaluation means that only the first result will then be computed. We begin with a specification, then use equational reasoning to calculate a more efficient version. There is no maths involved, just reasoning and logic!

Specification

We begin with some basic data types, starting with matrices:

```
\begin{array}{rcl} \textbf{type} & \textit{Matrix } a & = & [\textit{Row } a] \\ \textbf{type} & \textit{Row } a & = & [a] \end{array}
```

An $m \times n$ matrix is a list of m rows in which each row has the same length n. A grid is a 9×9 matrix of digits:

```
\begin{array}{rcl} \mathbf{type} & Grid & = & Matrix \ Digit \\ \mathbf{type} & Digit & = & Char \end{array}
```

		4			5	7		
					5 9	4		
3	6							8
7	2			6				
			4		2			
				8			9	3
4							9 5	6
		5	3					
		6	1			9		

Fig. 19.1 A Sudoku grid

The valid digits are 1 to 9 with 0 standing for a blank:

```
digits = [`1`..`9`]

blank = (==`0`)
```

We suppose that a given grid contains only digits and blanks. We also suppose that the input grid is valid, meaning that no digit is repeated in any row, column or box.

Now for the specification. The aim is to write down the simplest and clearest specification of *solve* without regard to how efficient the result might be. One possibility is first to construct a list of all correctly completed grids, and then to test the given grid against them to identify those whose non-blank entries match the given ones. Another possibility, and the one we will adopt, is to start with the given grid and to install all possible choices for the blank entries. Then we compute all the grids that arise from making every possible choice and filter the result for the valid ones. This specification is formalised by

```
solve = filter\ valid \cdot expand \cdot choices
```

The subsidiary functions have types

 $\begin{array}{lll} \textit{choices} & :: & \textit{Grid} \rightarrow \textit{Matrix Choices} \\ \textit{expand} & :: & \textit{Matrix Choices} \rightarrow [\textit{Grid}] \end{array}$

valid :: $Grid \rightarrow Bool$

The simplest choice of Choices is type Choices = [Digit]. Then we have

```
choices :: Grid \rightarrow Matrix \ Choices

choices = map \ (map \ choice)
```

choice d = if blank d then digits else [d]

If the cell is blank, then all digits are installed as possible choices; otherwise there is no choice and a singleton is returned.

Next, expansion is just matrix Cartesian product:

```
expand :: Matrix\ Choices \rightarrow [Grid]

expand :: cp \cdot map\ cp
```

The Cartesian product of a list of lists is given by

```
\begin{array}{lll} cp & :: & [[a]] \rightarrow [[a]] \\ cp & [ & ] & = & [[ & ]] \\ cp & (xs:xss) & = & [x:ys \mid x \leftarrow xs, \ ys \leftarrow cp \ xss] \end{array}
```

For example, cp [[1,2],[3],[4,5]] = [[1,3,4],[1,3,5],[2,3,4],[2,3,5]]. Thus, $map\ cp$ returns a list of all possible choices for each row and $cp \cdot map\ cp$ installs each choice for the rows in all possible ways.

Finally, we deal with *valid*. A valid grid is one in which no row, column or box contains duplicates:

```
valid :: Grid \rightarrow Bool

valid g = all \ nodups \ (rows \ g) \land

all \ nodups \ (cols \ g) \land

all \ nodups \ (boxs \ g)
```

The standard function all p applied to a finite list xs returns True if all elements of xs satisfy p and False otherwise. The function nodups can be defined by

```
nodups :: Eq \ a \Rightarrow [a] \rightarrow Bool

nodups [] = True

nodups \ (x : xs) = all \ (\neq x) \ xs \land nodups \ xs
```

The function *nodups* takes quadratic time. As an alternative we could sort the list of digits and check that it is strictly increasing. Sorting can be done in $\Theta(n \log n)$ steps. However, with n=9 it is not clear that sorting the digits is worthwhile. What would you prefer: $2n^2$ steps or $100n \log_2 n$ steps?

It remains to define *rows*, *cols* and *boxs*. If a matrix is given by a list of its rows, then *rows* is just the identity function on matrices:

```
rows :: Matrix \ a \rightarrow Matrix \ a

rows = id
```

The function *cols* computes the transpose of a matrix. One possible definition is

```
cols :: Matrix \ a \rightarrow Matrix \ a

cols [xs] = [[x] \mid x \leftarrow xs]

cols (xs : xss) = zipWith (:) xs (cols xss)
```

The function *boxs* is a little more interesting:

```
boxs :: Matrix \ a \rightarrow Matrix \ a
boxs = map \ unqroup \cdot unqroup \cdot map \ cols \cdot qroup \cdot map \ qroup
```

The function *group* splits a list into groups of three:

```
\begin{array}{lll} group & :: & [a] \rightarrow [[a]] \\ group \, [\,] & = & [\,] \\ group \; xs & = & take \; 3 \; xs : group \; (drop \; 3 \; xs) \end{array}
```

The function *ungroup* takes a grouped list and ungroups it:

```
ungroup :: [[a]] \rightarrow [a]

ungroup = concat
```

The action of boxs in the 4×4 case, when group splits a list into groups of two, is illustrated by

$$\begin{pmatrix}
a & b & c & d \\
e & f & g & h \\
i & j & k & l \\
m & n & o & p
\end{pmatrix}
\rightarrow
\begin{pmatrix}
\begin{pmatrix}
ab & cd \\
ef & gh \\
(ij & kl \\
mn & op
\end{pmatrix}
\end{pmatrix}
\rightarrow
\begin{pmatrix}
\begin{pmatrix}
ab & ef \\
cd & gh \\
(ij & mn \\
kl & op
\end{pmatrix}
\end{pmatrix}$$

The function $group \cdot map \ group$ produces a list of matrices; transposing each matrix and ungrouping yields the boxes.

Observe that instead of thinking about matrices in terms of indices, and doing arithmetic on indices to identify the rows, columns and boxes, we have gone for definitions of these functions that treat the matrix as a complete entity in itself. Geraint Jones has aptly called this style *wholemeal programming*. Wholemeal programming is good for you: it helps to prevent a disease called indexitis and encourages lawful program construction.

For example, here are three laws that are valid on 9×9 Sudoku grids, in fact on arbitrary $N^2\times N^2$ matrices:

```
rows \cdot rows = id

cols \cdot cols = id

boxs \cdot boxs = id
```

Equivalently, all three functions are involutions. Two are easy to prove, but one is more difficult. The difficult law is not the one about *boxs*, as

you might expect, but the involution property of cols. Though intuitively obvious, proving it from the definition of cols is slightly tricky. The involution property of boxs is an easy calculation using the involution property of cols, simple properties of map and the fact that $group \cdot ungroup = id$.

Here are three more laws, valid on $N^2 \times N^2$ matrices of choices:

$$map\ rows \cdot expand = expand \cdot rows$$
 (19.1)

$$map\ cols \cdot expand = expand \cdot cols$$
 (19.2)

$$map\ boxs \cdot expand = expand \cdot boxs$$
 (19.3)

We will make use of these laws in a short while.

Pruning the matrix of choices

Though executable in theory, the specification of *solve* is hopeless in practice. Assuming about a half of the 81 entries are fixed initially (a generous estimate), there are about 9^{40} , or

```
147\,808\,829\,414\,345\,923\,316\,083\,210\,206\,383\,297\,601
```

grids to check! We therefore need a better approach. To make a more efficient solver, a good idea is to remove any choices from a cell c that already occur as singleton entries in the row, column and box containing c. A singleton entry corresponds to a fixed choice. We therefore seek a function

```
prune :: Matrix Choices \rightarrow Matrix Choices
```

so that

```
filter\ valid \cdot expand = filter\ valid \cdot expand \cdot prune
```

How can we define *prune*? Well, since a matrix is a list of rows, a good place to start is by pruning a single row. The function *pruneRow* is defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} pruneRow & :: & Row \ Choices \rightarrow Row \ Choices \\ pruneRow \ row & = & map \ (remove \ fixed) \ row \\ & & & & & & & & \\ \mathbf{where} \ fixed = [d \ | \ [d] \leftarrow row] \end{array}
```

The function *remove* removes choices from any choice that is not fixed:

```
remove xs ds = \mathbf{if} \ singleton \ ds \ \mathbf{then} \ ds \ \mathbf{else} \ ds \setminus \setminus xs
```

The function pruneRow satisfies

$$filter\ nodups \cdot cp = filter\ nodups \cdot cp \cdot pruneRow$$
 (19.4)

The proof is left as an exercise.

We are now nearly ready for a calculation that will determine the function prune. Nearly, but not quite, because we are going to need two laws about filter. The first is that if $f \cdot f = id$, then

$$filter (p \cdot f) = map f \cdot filter p \cdot map f$$
 (19.5)

Equivalently, $filter(p \cdot f) \cdot map f = map f \cdot filter p$. The second law is that

$$filter (all p) \cdot cp = cp \cdot map (filter p)$$
(19.6)

Proofs of (19.5) and (19.6) are again left as exercises.

Now for the calculation. The starting point is to rewrite *filter valid expand*:

```
filter\ valid \cdot expand = filter\ (all\ nodups \cdot boxs) \cdot filter\ (all\ nodups \cdot cols) \cdot filter\ (all\ nodups \cdot rows) \cdot expand
```

The order in which the filters appear on the right is not important. The plan of attack is to send each of these filters into battle with *expand*. For example, in the *boxs* case we argue:

```
filter (all nodups \cdot boxs) \cdot expand
        \{(19.5), \text{ since } boxs \cdot boxs = id\}
     map\ boxs \cdot filter\ (all\ nodups) \cdot map\ boxs \cdot expand
        \{(19.3)\}
=
     map\ boxs \cdot filter\ (all\ nodups) \cdot expand \cdot boxs
        {definition of expand}
     map\ boxs \cdot filter\ (all\ nodups) \cdot cp \cdot map\ cp \cdot boxs
        \{(19.6) \text{ and } map \ f \cdot map \ q = map \ (f \cdot q)\}
     map\ boxs \cdot cp \cdot map\ (filter\ nodups \cdot cp) \cdot boxs
        \{(19.4)\}
     map\ boxs \cdot cp \cdot map\ (filter\ nodups \cdot cp \cdot pruneRow) \cdot boxs
        \{(19.6)\}
=
     map\ boxs \cdot filter\ (all\ nodups) \cdot cp \cdot map\ cp \cdot map\ pruneRow \cdot boxs
        {definition of expand}
=
     map\ boxs \cdot filter\ (all\ nodups) \cdot expand \cdot map\ pruneRow \cdot boxs
        \{(19.5) \text{ in the form } map \ f \cdot filter \ p = filter \ (p \cdot f) \cdot map \ f\}
     filter(all\ nodups \cdot boxs) \cdot map\ boxs \cdot expand \cdot map\ pruneRow \cdot boxs
        \{(19.3)\}
     filter(all\ nodups \cdot boxs) \cdot expand \cdot boxs \cdot map\ pruneRow \cdot boxs
```

We have shown that

```
filter(all\ nodups \cdot boxs) \cdot expand
= filter(all\ nodups \cdot boxs) \cdot expand \cdot pruneBy\ boxs
```

where $pruneBy f = f \cdot map \ pruneRow \cdot f$. Repeating the same calculation for rows and cols, we obtain

```
filter\ valid \cdot expand = filter\ valid \cdot expand \cdot prune
```

where

```
prune = pruneBy \ boxs \cdot pruneBy \ cols \cdot pruneBy \ rows
```

In conclusion, the previous definition of *solve* can be replaced with a new one:

```
solve = filter\ valid \cdot expand \cdot prune \cdot choices
```

In fact, rather than just one *prune*, we can have as many *prunes* as we like. This is sensible, because after one round of pruning some choices may be resolved into singleton choices and another round of pruning may remove still more impossible choices. The simplest Sudoku problems are solved just by repeatedly pruning the matrix of choices until only singleton choices are left.

Single-cell expansion

For more devious puzzles we can combine pruning with another idea: expanding the choices for a single cell only. While *expand* installed all possible choices in all cells on the grid in one go, single-cell expansion picks on one cell and installs all the choices for that cell only. The hope is that mixing *prunes* with single-cell expansions can lead to a solution more quickly.

Therefore, we construct a function expand1 that expands the choices for one cell only. This function is required to satisfy the property that, up to some permutation of the answer:

$$expand = concat \cdot map \ expand \cdot expand1$$
 (19.7)

A good choice of cell on which to perform expansion is one with the smallest number of choices (not equal to one of course). A cell with no choices means that the puzzle is unsolvable, so identifying such a cell quickly is a good idea. Think of cell containing cs choices as sitting in the middle of a row row, so row = row1 + |cs| + row2, in the matrix of choices,

with rows rows1 above this row and rows rows2 below it. Then we can define

```
\begin{array}{lll} expand1 & :: & \textit{Matrix Choices} \rightarrow [\textit{Matrix Choices}] \\ expand1 \ \textit{rows} & = & [\textit{rows1} + | [\textit{row1} + | [\textit{c}] : \textit{row2}] + \textit{rows2} \mid \textit{c} \leftarrow \textit{cs}] \\ \textbf{where} \ (\textit{rows1}, \textit{row} : \textit{rows2}) & = & \textit{break} \ (\textit{any smallest}) \ \textit{rows} \\ & (\textit{row1}, \textit{cs} : \textit{row2}) & = & \textit{break smallest row} \\ & \textit{smallest cs} & = & \textit{length cs} = \textit{n} \\ & n & = & \textit{minimum} \ (\textit{counts rows}) \\ & \textit{counts} & = & \textit{filter} \ (\neq 1) \cdot \textit{map length} \cdot \textit{concat} \\ \end{array}
```

The value n is the smallest number of choices, not equal to one, in any cell of the matrix of choices. If the matrix of choices contains only singleton choices, then n is the minimum of the empty list, which is not defined. The standard function $break\ p$ splits a list into two:

```
break \ p \ xs = (take While (not \cdot p) \ xs, drop While (not \cdot p) \ xs)
```

Thus, break (any smallest) rows breaks the matrix into two lists of rows with the head of the second list being some row that contains a cell with the smallest number of choices. A second appeal to break then breaks this row into two sub-rows, with the head of the second being the element cs with the smallest number of choices. Each possible choice is installed and the matrix reconstructed. If there are zero choices, then expand1 returns an empty list.

It follows from the definition of n that (19.7) holds only when applied to matrices with at least one non-singleton choice. Say a matrix is complete if all choices are singletons and unsafe if the singleton choices in any row, column or box contain duplicates. Incomplete and unsafe matrices can never lead to valid grids. A complete and safe matrix of choices determines a unique valid grid. These two tests can be implemented by

```
complete = all (all single)
```

where single is the test for a singleton list, and

```
safe \ m = all \ ok \ (rows \ m) \land all \ ok \ (cols \ m) \land all \ ok \ (boxs \ m)
```

where $ok \ row = nodups \ [d \mid [d] \leftarrow row].$

Assuming a matrix is safe but incomplete, we can calculate:

```
filter\ valid \cdot expand
= \{since\ expand = concat \cdot map\ expand \cdot expand 1 \\ on\ incomplete\ matrices\}
```

Introducing $search = filter\ valid \cdot expand \cdot prune$, we therefore have, on safe but incomplete matrices, that

```
search \cdot prune = concat \cdot map \ search \cdot expand 1
```

And now we can replace *solve* by a third version:

```
solve = search \cdot choices
search m \mid not (safe m) = []
\mid complete m' = [map (map head) m']
\mid otherwise = concat (map search (expand 1 m'))
\mid where m' = prune m
```

This is our final simple Sudoku solver.

Final remarks

We tested the solver on 36 puzzles recorded at the website http://haskell.org/haskellwiki/Sudoku. It solved them in 8.8 s (on a 1GHz Pentium 3 PC). We also tested them on six minimal puzzles (each with 17 non-blank entries) chosen randomly from the 32 000 given at the site. It solved them in 111.4 s. There are about a dozen different Haskell Sudoku solvers at the site. All of these, including a very nice solver by Lennart Augustsson, deploy coordinate calculations. Many use arrays and most use monads. Ours is about twice as slow as Augustsson's on the nefarious puzzle (a particularly hard puzzle with the minimum 17 non-blank entries), but about 30 times faster than Yitz Gale's solver on easy puzzles. We also know of solvers that reduce the problem to Boolean satisfiability, constraint satisfaction, model checking and so on. I would argue that the one presented above is certainly one of the simplest and shortest. And at least it was derived, in part, by equational reasoning.

The Countdown problem

Introduction

Countdown is the name of a game from a popular British television programme; in France it is called Le Conte est Bon. Contestants are given six source numbers, not necessarily all different, and a target number, all of which are positive integers. The aim is to use some of the source numbers to build an arithmetic expression whose value is as close to the target as possible. Expressions are constructed using only the four basic operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. Contestants are allowed $30 \, \mathrm{s}$ thinking time. For example, with source numbers [1, 3, 7, 10, 25, 50] and target 831 there is no exact solution; one expression that comes closest is $7 + (1+10) \times (25+50) = 832$. Our aim in this pearl is to describe various programs for solving Countdown, all based in one way or another on exhaustive search. Countdown is attractive as a case study in exhaustive search because the problem is simply stated and the different solutions illustrate the space and time trade-offs that have to be taken into account in comparing functional programs.

A simple program

Here is a straightforward program for Countdown:

```
\begin{array}{lcl} countdown1 & :: & Int \rightarrow [Int] \rightarrow (Expr, Value) \\ countdown1 \ n & = & nearest \ n \cdot concatMap \ mkExprs \cdot subseqs \end{array}
```

First of all, the source numbers are given as a list; the order of the elements is unimportant, but duplicates do matter. We will suppose that the list is in ascending order, a fact that is exploited later on. Each selection is therefore represented by a nonempty subsequence. For each subsequence xs, all possible arithmetic expressions that can be constructed from xs are

determined, along with their values.¹ The results are concatenated and one nearest the target is selected.

The ingredients making up countdown1 are defined as follows. First, subseqs returns a list of all the nonempty subsequences of a nonempty list:

```
subseqs [x] = [[x]]

subseqs (x : xs) = xss + [x] : map (x :) xss

\mathbf{where} \ xss = subseas \ xs
```

Next, the data types of expressions and values can be declared by

```
\begin{array}{lll} \mathbf{data} \; \mathit{Expr} & = \; \mathit{Num} \; \mathit{Int} \; | \; \mathit{App} \; \mathit{Op} \; \mathit{Expr} \; \mathit{Expr} \\ \mathbf{data} \; \mathit{Op} & = \; \mathit{Add} \; | \; \mathit{Sub} \; | \; \mathit{Mul} \; | \; \mathit{Div} \\ \mathbf{type} \; \mathit{Value} \; = \; \mathit{Int} \end{array}
```

The value of an expression is computed by

```
value :: Expr 	o Value

value (Num x) = x

value (App op e1 e2) = apply op (value e1) (value e2)
```

where apply Add = (+), apply Sub = (-) and so on. However, not all possible expressions are valid in Countdown. For instance, the result of a subtraction should be a positive integer, and division is valid only when the divisor divides the dividend exactly. An expression is valid if its subexpressions are, and if the operation at the root passes the test legal, where

```
\begin{array}{lll} legal & :: & Op \rightarrow Value \rightarrow Value \rightarrow Bool \\ legal \ Add \ v1 \ v2 & = & True \\ legal \ Sub \ v1 \ v2 & = & (v2 < v1) \\ legal \ Mul \ v1 \ v2 & = & True \\ legal \ Div \ v1 \ v2 & = & (v1 \ mod \ v2 == 0) \end{array}
```

The next ingredient is mkExpr, which creates a list of all legal expressions that can be built using the given subsequence:

```
\begin{array}{rcl} mkExprs & :: & [Int] \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)] \\ mkExprs [x] & = & [(Num \ x, x)] \\ mkExprs \ xs & = & [ev \mid (ys, zs) \leftarrow unmerges \ xs, \\ & ev1 \leftarrow mkExprs \ ys, \\ & ev2 \leftarrow mkExprs \ zs, \\ & ev \leftarrow combine \ ev1 \ ev2] \end{array}
```

Logically there is no need to return both expressions and values as the latter can be determined from the former. But, as we have seen in the pearl "Making a century" (Pearl 6), it is a good idea to avoid computing values more than once, so this optimisation has been incorporated from the outset.

Given an ordered list xs of length greater than one, $unmerges\ xs$ is a list of all pairs (ys, zs) of nonempty lists such that $merge\ ys\ zs = xs$, where merge merges two ordered lists into one (it is in the specification of unmerges that we exploit the fact that inputs are ordered). One way of defining unmerges is as follows:

```
\begin{array}{lll} unmerges & :: & [a] \rightarrow [([a],[a])] \\ unmerges \, [x,y] & = & [([x],[y]),([y],[x])] \\ unmerges \, (x:xs) & = & [([x],xs),(xs,[x])] + \\ & & & concatMap \, (add \, x) \, (unmerges \, xss) \\ & & & \mathbf{where} \, \, add \, x \, (ys,zs) = [(x:ys,zs),(ys,x:zs)] \end{array}
```

It is an instructive exercise to calculate this definition of *unmerges* from its specification, but we will leave that pleasure to the reader.

The function *combine* is defined by

```
combine :: (Expr, Value) \rightarrow (Expr, Value) \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)]

combine (e1, v1) (e2, v2)

= [(App \ op \ e1 \ e2, apply \ op \ v1 \ v2) \mid op \leftarrow ops, \ legal \ op \ v1 \ v2]
```

where ops = [Add, Sub, Mul, Div].

Finally, the function $nearest \ n$ takes a nonempty list of expressions and returns some expression in the list whose value is nearest the target n. We also want to stop searching the list if and when an expression is found whose value matches the target exactly:

```
nearest n((e, v) : evs) = if d = 0 then (e, v)
else search n d(e, v) evs
where d = abs(n - v)
search n d ev[] = ev
search n d ev((e, v) : evs) | d' = 0 = (e, v)
| d' < d = search n d'(e, v) evs
| d' \ge d = search n d ev evs
where d' = abs(n - v)
```

For example, under GHCi (version 6.8.3 running on a 2394MHz laptop under Windows XP) we have

```
> display (countdown1 831 [1,3,7,10,25,50])
(7+((1+10)*(25+50))) = 832
(42.28 secs, 4198816144 bytes)
> length $ concatMap mkExprs $ subseqs [1,3,7,10,25,50]
4672540
```

So countdown1 takes about $42 \,\mathrm{s}$ to determine and analyse about $4.5 \,\mathrm{million}$ expressions, about $100\,000$ expressions per second. This is not within the $30 \,\mathrm{s}$ limit, so is not good enough.

Two optimisations

There are two simple optimisations that can help improve matters. The first concerns the legality test. There are about 33 million expressions that can be built from six numbers, of which, depending on the input, between 4 million and 5 million are legal. But there is a great deal of redundancy. For example, each of the following pairs of expressions is essentially the same:

```
x + y and y + x, x * y and y * x, (x - y) + z and (x + z) - y
```

A stronger legality test is provided by

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{legal Add } v1 \ v2 &=& (v1 \leq v2) \\ \textit{legal Sub } v1 \ v2 &=& (v2 < v1) \\ \textit{legal Mul } v1 \ v2 &=& (1 < v1) \land (v1 \leq v2) \\ \textit{legal Div } v1 \ v2 &=& (1 < v2) \land (v1 \bmod v2 == 0) \end{array}
```

This stronger test takes account of the commutativity of + and * by requiring that arguments be in numerical order, and the identity properties of * and / by requiring that their arguments be non-unitary. This test reduces the number of legal expressions to about 300 000. One can go further and strengthen the legality test yet more, but we will leave that to the next section.

The second optimisation concerns unmerges and combine. As defined above, unmerges xs returns all pairs (ys, zs) such that merge ys zs = xs, and that means each pair is generated twice, once in the form (ys, zs) and once in the form (zs, ys). There is no need to double the work, and we can redefine unmerges so that it returns only the essentially distinct pairs:

```
unmerges [x, y] = [([x], [y])]

unmerges (x : xs) = [([x], xs)] + concatMap (add x) (unmerges xss)

\mathbf{where} \ add \ x \ (ys, zs) = [(x : ys, zs), (ys, x : zs)]
```

The function *combine* can be easily modified to take account of the new *unmerges*:

```
combine (e1, v1) (e2, v2)
= [(App \ op \ e1 \ e2, apply \ op \ v1 \ v2) \mid op \leftarrow ops, \ legal \ op \ v1 \ v2] + [(App \ op \ e2 \ e1, apply \ op \ v2 \ v1) \mid op \leftarrow ops, \ legal \ op \ v2 \ v1]
```

Fig. 20.1 Definitions of comb1 and comb2

However, a faster method is to incorporate the stronger legality test directly into the definition of *combine*:

```
\begin{array}{lll} combine \; (e1,v1) \; (e2,v2) \\ | & v1 < v2 \; = \; comb1 \; (e1,v1) \; (e2,v2) \\ | & v1 = v2 \; = \; comb2 \; (e1,v1) \; (e2,v2) \\ | & v1 > v2 \; = \; comb1 \; (e2,v2) \; (e1,v1) \end{array}
```

The function comb1 is used when the first expression has a value strictly less than the second, and comb2 when the two values are equal. Their definitions are given in Figure 20.1. Installing these changes leads to countdown2, whose definition is otherwise the same as countdown1. For example:

```
> display (countdown2 831 [1,3,7,10,25,50])
(7+((1+10)*(25+50))) = 832
(1.77 secs, 168447772 bytes)
> length $ concatMap mkExprs $ subseqs [1,3,7,10,25,50]
240436
```

This is better, in that it takes only about $2\,\mathrm{s}$ to determine and analyse about $250\,000$ expressions, but there is still room for improvement.

An even stronger legality test

In an attempt to restrict still further the number of expressions that have to be considered, let us say that an expression is in *normal form* if it is a sum of the form

$$[(e_1 + e_2) + \cdots + e_m] - [(f_1 + f_2) + \cdots + f_n]$$

where $m \ge 1$ and $n \ge 0$, both e_1, e_2, \ldots and f_1, f_2, \ldots are in ascending order of value, and each e_i and f_i is a product of the form

$$[(g_1 * g_2) * \cdots * g_p]/[(h_1 * h_2) * \cdots * h_q]$$

where $p \ge 1$ and $q \ge 0$, both g_1, g_2, \ldots and h_1, h_2, \ldots are in ascending order of value and each g_j and h_j is either a single number or an expression in normal form.

Up to rearrangements of subexpressions with equal values, each expression has a unique normal form. Of the $300\,000$ expressions over six numbers that are legal according to the earlier definition, only about $30\,000$ to $70\,000$ are in normal form. However, normal form does not eliminate redundancy completely. For example, the expressions 2+5+7 and 2*7 have the same value, but the latter is built out of numbers that are a subsequence of the former. There is, therefore, no need to build the former. But we will not explore the additional optimisation of "thinning" a list of expressions to retain only the really essential ones. Experiments show that thinning turns out to be not worth the candle: the savings made in analysing only the really essential expressions are outweighed by the amount of effort needed to determine them.

We can capture normal forms by strengthening the legality test, but this time we have to consider expressions as well as values. First let us define *non* by

```
\begin{array}{lll} non & & :: & Op \rightarrow Expr \rightarrow Bool \\ non \ op \ (Num \ x) & = & True \\ non \ op1 \ (App \ op2 \ e1 \ e2) & = & op1 \neq op2 \end{array}
```

Then the stronger legality test is implemented by

```
\begin{array}{lll} legal & :: & Op \rightarrow (Expr, Value) \rightarrow (Expr, Value) \rightarrow Bool \\ legal & Add & (e1, v1) & (e2, v2) \\ & = & (v1 \leq v2) \wedge non \; Sub \; e1 \wedge non \; Add \; e2 \wedge non \; Sub \; e2 \\ legal & Sub & (e1, v1) & (e2, v2) \\ & = & (v2 < v1) \wedge non \; Sub \; e1 \wedge non \; Sub \; e2 \\ legal & Mul & (e1, v1) & (e2, v2) \\ & = & (1 < v1 \wedge v1 \leq v2) \wedge non \; Div \; e1 \wedge non \; Mul \; e2 \wedge non \; Div \; e2 \\ legal & Div & (e1, v1) & (e2, v2) \\ & = & (1 < v2 \wedge v1 \; mod \; v2 = 0) \wedge non \; Div \; e1 \wedge non \; Div \; e2 \\ \end{array}
```

Just as before, we can incorporate the above legality test into a modified definition of combine. It is necessary only to change comb1 and comb2. The revised definitions are given in Figure 20.2.

```
\begin{array}{l} comb1\ (e1,v1)\ (e2,v2) \\ =\ (\mathbf{if}\ non\ Sub\ e1 \land non\ Sub\ e2\ \mathbf{then} \\ \quad [(App\ Add\ e1\ e2,v1+v2)\ |\ non\ Add\ e2] + [(App\ Sub\ e2\ e1,v2-v1)] \\ \quad else\ []) + \\ \quad (\mathbf{if}\ 1 < v1 \land non\ Div\ e1 \land non\ Div\ e2\ \mathbf{then} \\ \quad [(App\ Mul\ e1\ e2,v1*v2)\ |\ non\ Mul\ e2] + [(App\ Div\ e2\ e1,q)\ |\ r=0] \\ \quad else\ []) \\ \quad \mathbf{where}\ (q,r) = divMod\ v2\ v1 \\ \\ comb2\ (e1,v1)\ (e2,v2) \\ =\ [(App\ Add\ e1\ e2,v1+v2)\ |\ non\ Sub\ e1,\ non\ Add\ e2,\ non\ Sub\ e2] + \\ \quad (\mathbf{if}\ 1 < v1 \land non\ Div\ e1 \land non\ Div\ e2\ \mathbf{then} \\ \quad [(App\ Mul\ e1\ e2,v1*v2)\ |\ non\ Mul\ e2] + [(App\ Div\ e1\ e2,1)] \\ \quad else\ []) \end{array}
```

Fig. 20.2 New definitions of comb1 and comb2

Calling the result of installing these changes *countdown*3, we have

```
> display (countdown3 831 [1,3,7,10,25,50])
(7+((1+10)*(25+50))) = 832
(1.06 secs, 88697284 bytes)
> length $ concatMap mkExprs $ subseqs [1,3,7,10,25,50]
36539
```

Now it takes only 1s to determine and analyse about $36\,000$ expressions, which is roughly double the speed of countdown2.

Memoisation

Even ignoring the redundancy in the set of expressions being determined, computations are repeated because every subsequence is treated as an independent problem. For instance, given the source numbers $[1 \dots 6]$, expressions with basis $[1 \dots 5]$ will be computed twice, once for the subsequence $[1 \dots 5]$ and once for $[1 \dots 6]$. Expressions with basis $[1 \dots 4]$ will be computed four times, once for each of the subsequences

```
[1,2,3,4], [1,2,3,4,5], [1,2,3,4,6], [1,2,3,4,5,6]
```

In fact, expressions with a basis of k numbers out of n source numbers will be computed 2^{n-k} times.

One way to avoid repeated computations is to memoise the computation of mkExprs. In memoisation, the top-down structure of mkExprs is preserved but computed results are remembered and stored in a memo table

for subsequent retrieval. To implement memoisation we need a data type *Memo* on which the following operations are supported:

```
\begin{array}{lll} empty & :: & Memo \\ fetch & :: & Memo \rightarrow [Int] \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)] \\ store & :: & [Int] \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)] \rightarrow Memo \rightarrow Memo \end{array}
```

The value *empty* defines an empty memo table, *fetch* takes a list of source numbers and looks up the computed expressions for the list, while *store* takes a similar list together with the expressions that can be built from them, and stores the result in the memo table.

We can now rewrite mkExprs to read

```
\begin{array}{lll} \mathit{mkExprs} & :: & \mathit{Memo} \rightarrow [\mathit{Int}] \rightarrow [(\mathit{Expr}, \mathit{Value})] \\ \mathit{mkExprs} \ \mathit{memo} \ [x] & = & [(\mathit{Num} \ x, x)] \\ \mathit{mkExprs} \ \mathit{memo} \ \mathit{xs} & = & [\mathit{ev} \mid (\mathit{ys}, \mathit{zs}) \leftarrow \mathit{unmerges} \ \mathit{xs}, \\ & \mathit{ev1} \leftarrow \mathit{fetch} \ \mathit{memo} \ \mathit{ys}, \\ & \mathit{ev2} \leftarrow \mathit{fetch} \ \mathit{memo} \ \mathit{zs}, \\ & \mathit{ev} \leftarrow \mathit{combine} \ \mathit{ev1} \ \mathit{ev2}] \end{array}
```

This code assumes that for any given subsequence xs of the input, all the arithmetic expressions for ys and zs for each possible split of xs have already been computed and stored in the memo table. This assumption is valid if we list and process the subsequences of the source numbers in such a way that if xs and ys are both subsequences of these numbers, and xs is a subsequence of ys, then xs appears before ys in the list of subsequences. Fortunately, the given definition of subseqs does possess exactly this property. We can now define

```
countdown4 :: Int \rightarrow [Int] \rightarrow (Expr, Value)

countdown4 = nearest \ n \cdot extract \cdot memoise \cdot subseqs
```

where memoise is defined by

```
memoise :: [[Int]] \rightarrow Memo
memoise = foldl\ insert\ empty
insert\ memo\ xs = store\ xs\ (mkExprs\ memo\ xs)\ memo
```

The function *extract* flattens a memo table, returning a list of all the expressions in it. This function is defined below when we fix on the structure of *Memo*.

One possible structure for *Memo* is a trie:

```
data Trie\ a = Node\ a\ [(Int,\ Trie\ a)]

type Memo = Trie\ [(Expr,\ Value)]
```

A trie is a Rose tree whose branches are labelled, in this case with an integer. The empty memo table is defined by empty = Node[][]. We search a memo table by following the labels on the branches:

```
 \begin{array}{lll} fetch & :: & Memo \rightarrow [Int] \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)] \\ fetch \ (Node \ es \ xms) \ [ \ ] & = \ es \\ fetch \ (Node \ es \ xms) \ (x : xs) & = \ fetch \ (follow \ x \ xms) \ xs \\ \\ follow & :: & Int \rightarrow [(Int, Memo)] \rightarrow Memo \\ follow \ x \ xms & = \ head \ [m \mid (x', m) \leftarrow xms, \ x == x'] \\ \end{array}
```

Note that searching a table for an entry with label xs returns an undefined result (the head of an empty list) if there is no path in the trie whose branches are labelled with xs. But this is not a problem, because the definition of subseqs guarantees that entries are computed in the right order, so all necessary entries will be present.

Here is how we store new entries:

```
store :: [Int] \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)] \rightarrow Memo \rightarrow Memo \\ store [x] es (Node fs xms) = Node fs ((x, Node es []) : xms) \\ store (x : xs) es (Node fs xms) \\ = Node fs (yms + (x, store xs es m) : zms) \\ \mathbf{where} (yms, (z, m) : zms) = break (equals x) xms \\ equals x (z, m) = (x == z)
```

The definition of *store* assumes that if an entry for xs + [x] is new, then the entries for xs are already present in the table. The Haskell function *break* p was defined in the previous pearl.

Finally, we can extract all entries from a memo table by

```
extract :: Memo \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)]

extract (Node es xms) = es + concatMap (extract \cdot snd) xms
```

Now we have, for example:

```
> display (countdown4 831 [1,3,7,10,25,50])
(10*((1+7)+(3*25))) = 830
(0.66 secs, 55798164 bytes)
```

The computation returns a different expression, owing to the different order in which expressions are analysed, but at a cost of about half that of countdown3.

Skeleton trees

Memoisation of *countdown* comes at a cost: building the memo table makes heavy demands on the heap and much time is spent in garbage collection. How can we keep the advantage of memoisation while reducing space requirements?

Suppose we ignore the operators in an expression, focusing only on the parenthesis structure. How many different oriented binary trees can we build? In an oriented tree the order of the subtrees is not taken into account. We exploited this idea in an "oriented" definition of *unmerges*. It turns out that there are only 1881 oriented binary trees with a basis included in six given numbers. An oriented binary tree may also be called a *skeleton* tree. For an algorithm that is economical in its use of space we could, therefore, build these trees first, and only afterwards insert the operators.

Pursuing this idea, consider the following type of tip-labelled binary tree:

```
data Tree = Tip Int | Bin Tree Tree
```

Instead of memoising expressions we can memoise trees:

```
\mathbf{type} \ \mathit{Memo} = \mathit{Trie} [\mathit{Tree}]
```

We can build trees in exactly the same way as we built expressions:

```
\begin{array}{cccc} mkTrees & :: & Memo \rightarrow [Int] \rightarrow [Tree] \\ mkTrees & memo & [x] & = & [Tip \ x] \\ mkTrees & memo \ xs & = & [Bin \ t1 \ t2 \ | \ (ys,zs) \leftarrow unmerges \ xs, \\ & & t1 \leftarrow fetch \ memo \ ys, \\ & & t2 \leftarrow fetch \ memo \ zs] \end{array}
```

We can convert a tree into a list of expressions by inserting operators in all legal ways:

```
\begin{array}{lll} toExprs & :: & Tree \rightarrow [(Expr, Value)] \\ toExprs (Tip \ x) & = & [(Num \ x, x)] \\ toExprs (Bin \ t1 \ t2) & = & [ev \mid ev1 \leftarrow toExprs \ t1, \ ev2 \leftarrow toExprs \ t2, \\ & ev \leftarrow combine \ ev1 \ ev2] \end{array}
```

Now we have

```
\begin{array}{ll} count down 5 \ n \\ &= nearest \ n \cdot concat Map \ to Exprs \cdot extract \cdot memoise \cdot subseqs \end{array}
```

File	countdown1		countdown2		countdown3		countdown4		countdown5	
	Total	GC								
d6	1.56	0.78	0.19	0.08	0.09	0.05	0.08	0.02	0.05	0.00
d7	77.6	36.9	2.03	1.19	0.44	0.09	0.53	0.30	0.33	0.02
d8	_	_	99.8	57.2	13.8	7.30	16.9	9.02	7.22	0.31

Fig. 20.3 Running times of countdown for inputs of six, seven and eight source numbers

where *memoise* is defined by

```
 \begin{array}{lll} \textit{memoise} & & :: & [[Int]] \rightarrow \textit{Memo} \\ \textit{memoise} & & = & \textit{foldl insert empty} \\ \end{array}
```

 $insert\ memo\ xs\ =\ store\ xs\ (mkTrees\ memo\ xs)\ memo$

Running our standard example yields

```
> display (countdown5 831 [1,3,7,10,25,50])
(10*((1+7)+(3*25))) = 830
(1.06 secs, 88272332 bytes)
```

So it seems on the evidence of this single test that memoising skeleton trees rather than expressions may not have been such a good idea. But the situation merits a closer look.

A further experiment

Let us see how the five versions of countdown described above perform with an optimising compiler. We compiled the five programs under GHC, version 6.8.3, with the -O2 flag set. The statistics were gathered using GHC's run-time system with the -s flag. There were three files, d6, d7 and d8 containing six, seven and eight source numbers respectively. In each case we ensured there was no exact match, so the full space of possible expressions was explored. The statistics are provided in Figure 20.3. Shown are the total time and the time spent in garbage collection; all times are in seconds. The program countdown1 was not run on d8.

Three main conclusions can be drawn from the experiment. First and most obviously, compilation gives a substantial improvement over interpretation. Second, for six or seven source numbers, there is not much difference between countdown3 (the version with the strong legality test), countdown4 (the version with both the strong legality test and memoisation) and countdown5 (the version with the strong legality test and memoisation of skeleton trees

rather than expressions). But for eight source numbers, the final version *countdown5* has begun to pull away, running about twice as fast as the others, mostly owing to the reduced time spent in garbage collection, in fact about 5% of the total time, compared with about 50% for *countdown3* and *countdown4*.

Final remarks

This pearl has been based on material extracted and modified from Bird and Mu (2005), which presents the specification of *Countdown* in a relational setting, and goes on to calculate a number of programs using the algebraic laws of fold and unfold. None of these calculations has been recorded above. *Countdown* was first studied in an earlier pearl (Hutton, 2002) as an illustration of how to prove that functional programs meet their specification. Hutton's aim was not to derive the best possible algorithm, but to present one whose correctness proof required only simple induction. Essentially, Hutton's proof dealt with the correctness of *countdown*2.

References

Bird, R. S. and Mu, S.-C. (2005). *Countdown:* a case study in origami programming. *Journal of Functional Programming* **15** (6), 679–702.

Hutton, G. (2002). The *Countdown* problem. *Journal of Functional Programming* **12** (6), 609–16.

21

Hylomorphisms and nexuses

Introduction

It was Erik Meijer who coined the name hylomorphism to describe a computation that consists of a fold after an unfold. The unfold produces a data structure and the fold consumes it. The intermediate data structure can be eliminated from the computation, a process called deforestation. The result is a pattern of recursion that fits most of the recursive definitions one is likely to meet in practice. Nevertheless, the intermediate data structure has its uses. It defines the call-tree of the hylomorphism, and can be made the workhorse of an alternative, and sometimes faster, implementation of the hylomorphism. Improvements in speed are possible when the call-tree contains shared nodes, nodes with more than one incoming edge. A tree with shared nodes is called a nexus and a nexus arises with any recursion whose recursive subproblems overlap, as is typical with dynamic programming. Our aim in this pearl is to illustrate how to build nexuses by considering two or three particularly interesting examples.

Folds, unfolds and hylomorphisms

Rather than discuss ideas in an abstract setting, we will consider just one example of an intermediate data structure, namely the following kind of leaf-labelled tree:

$$\mathbf{data} \ \mathit{Tree} \ a = \mathit{Leaf} \ a \mid \mathit{Node} \ [\mathit{Tree} \ a]$$

The fold and unfold functions for $\mathit{Tree}\ a$ depend on the isomorphism

Tree
$$a \approx Either a [Tree a]$$

To fold over a tree one has to supply an accumulating function with type $Either\ a\ [b] \to b$, and to unfold into a tree one has to supply a function with type $b \to Either\ a\ [b]$. More precisely:

$$\begin{array}{lll} fold & :: & (Either\ a\ [b] \to b) \to Tree\ a \to b \\ fold\ f\ t & = & \mathbf{case}\ t\ \mathbf{of} \\ & & Leaf\ x & \to f\ (Left\ x) \\ & & Node\ ts & \to f\ (Right\ (map\ (fold\ f)\ ts) \\ unfold & :: & (b \to Either\ a\ [b]) \to b \to Tree\ a \\ unfold\ g\ x & = & \mathbf{case}\ g\ x\ \mathbf{of} \\ & & Left\ y & \to & Leaf\ y \\ & & Right\ xs & \to & Node\ (map\ (unfold\ g)\ xs) \\ \end{array}$$

Defining hylo $f g = fold f \cdot unfold g$ and deforesting, we obtain

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \textit{hylo f g x} & = & \textbf{case } \textit{g x } \textbf{of} \\ & \textit{Left } \textit{y} & \rightarrow & \textit{f (Left y)} \\ & \textit{Right } \textit{xs} & \rightarrow & \textit{f (Right (map (hylo f g) xs))} \end{array}$$

The pattern of this recursive definition is less familiar than it might be, mostly because the presence of the type Either obscures what is going on. So, let us simplify a little, while maintaining full generality. A function with type $Either\ a\ [b] \to b$ can be unpacked into two component functions and fold can be expressed in the alternative form

fold ::
$$(a \rightarrow b) \rightarrow ([b] \rightarrow b) \rightarrow Tree \ a \rightarrow b$$

fold $f \ g \ (Leaf \ x) = f \ x$
fold $f \ g \ (Node \ ts) = g \ (map \ (fold \ f \ g) \ ts)$

Similarly, a function with type $b \to Either\ a\ [b]$ can be unpacked into three simpler functions, and unfold can be expressed in the alternative form

$$unfold$$
 :: $(b \rightarrow Bool) \rightarrow (b \rightarrow a) \rightarrow (b \rightarrow [b]) \rightarrow b \rightarrow Tree \ a$
 $unfold \ p \ v \ h \ x$ = **if** $p \ x$ **then** $Leaf \ (v \ x)$ **else**
 $Node \ (map \ (unfold \ p \ v \ h) \ (h \ x))$

With these new definitions, $hylo = fold f g \cdot unfold p v h$ can be deforested to read

$$hylo x = if p x then f (v x) else g (map hylo (h x))$$

This is better than before, but now we see that the function v is redundant since its effect can be absorbed into a modified definition of f. Removing it gives

$$hylo x = if p x then f x else g (map hylo (h x))$$
 (21.1)

as the general form of a hylomorphism over $Tree\ a$. In words, if the argument x is basic $(p\ x)$, then compute the result $f\ x$ directly; otherwise decompose x into subproblems $(h\ x)$, compute the result of each subproblem

 $(map\ hylo\ (h\ x))$ and assemble the results with g. At last, this seems a very familiar form of recursion.

Definition (21.1) is the deforested version of fold f g · unfold p id h. As the opposite of deforestation there is the idea of annotation, in which the tree structure is maintained to the end of the computation, but labels are attached to each node that carries the value of the hylomorphism for the subtree defined by the node. More precisely, define the labelled variant LTree of Tree by

$$\mathbf{data} \ LTree \ a = LLeaf \ a \mid LNode \ a \ [LTree \ a]$$

Now define *fill* by

fill ::
$$(a \rightarrow b) \rightarrow ([b] \rightarrow b) \rightarrow Tree \ a \rightarrow LTree \ b$$

fill $f \ g = fold \ (lleaf \ f) \ (lnode \ g)$

where the smart constructors *lleaf* and *lnode* are defined by

$$lleaf f x = LLeaf (f x)$$

 $lnode g ts = LNode (g (map label ts)) ts$

and label by

$$label (LLeaf x) = x$$

 $label (LNode x ts) = x$

The function *fill* consumes a tree, but it produces a labelled tree with exactly the same structure in which each label is the result of folding the subtree rooted there. The label at the root of the tree gives the value of the hylomorphism, so

$$\mathit{hylo} \ = \ \mathit{label} \cdot \mathit{fill} \ \mathit{f} \ \mathit{g} \cdot \mathit{unfold} \ \mathit{p} \ \mathit{id} \ \mathit{h}$$

With this definition we have arrived at the central idea of the pearl. Suppose that the tree $unfold\ p\ id\ h$ is a genuine nexus, and suppose we can apply $fill\ f\ g$ to it without destroying sharing. Then hylo can be computed more efficiently than by the recursive method of (21.1).

It remains to see how the idea works out in practice. In all the examples to come we are going to restrict (21.1) to the case where x is a nonempty list and p is the test for a singleton list. Thus, our examples are all hylomorphisms of the form

$$\begin{array}{lll} hylo & :: & ([a] \rightarrow b) \rightarrow ([b] \rightarrow b) \rightarrow ([a] \rightarrow [[a]]) \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow b \\ hylo \ f \ q \ h & = & fold \ f \ q \cdot mkTree \ h \end{array}$$

where $mkTree\ h = unfold\ single\ id\ h$ and single is the test for singletons. In particular, h takes a list of length at least two as argument and returns a list of nonempty lists.

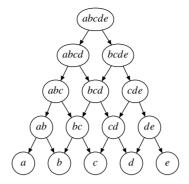


Fig. 21.1 A nexus

Three examples

For our first example, take h = split, where

$$split xs = [take \ n \ xs, drop \ n \ xs]$$
 where $n = length \ xs \ div \ 2$

Restricted to lists xs of length 2^n , the result of $mkTree\ split\ xs$ is a perfect binary tree with 2^n-1 nodes and 2^n leaves, each labelled with singleton lists, one for each element of xs. There is no sharing, so the nexus also has this number of nodes and leaves. As a concrete instance, $hylo\ id\ merge\ split$ is the standard divide and conquer algorithm for mergesort restricted to lists whose lengths are a power of 2. Contrast this with our second example, in which we take h=isegs, where

$$isegs \ xs = [init \ xs, tail \ xs]$$

For example, isegs "abcde" = ["abcd", "bcde"]. The function isegs is so named because it returns the two immediate segments of a list of length at least 2. The result of mkTree isegs xs is a perfect binary tree whose leaves are again labelled with singletons. The tree has size $2^n - 1$ nodes where n = length xs, so it takes at least this time to build it. However, unlike our first example, subtrees can be shared, giving us a genuine nexus. An example is pictured in Figure 21.1. The nexus has been labelled with the distinct nonempty segments of abcde. More precisely, it has been filled with fill id recover, where

```
recover :: [[a]] \rightarrow [a]

recover \ xss = head \ (head \ xss) : last \ xss
```

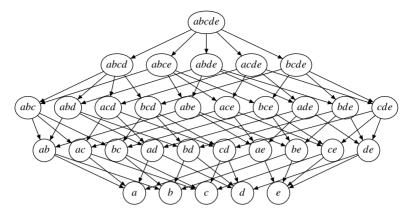


Fig. 21.2 Another nexus

The function recover satisfies recover $\cdot isegs = id$. The nexus has n(n+1)/2 nodes for an input of length n, so sharing gives a significant reduction in size.

For our third example, take h = minors, where

$$minors [x, y] = [[x], [y]]$$

 $minors (x : xs) = map (x :) (minors xs) ++ [xs]$

For example, minors "abcde" = ["abcd", "abce", "abde", "acde", "bcde"]. The function minors returns those subsequences of its argument in which just one element is dropped. The result returned by $mkTree\ minors\ xs$, where xs is a nonempty list, is once again a tree labelled with singletons. For an input of length n the tree has size S(n), where S(0)=0 and S(n+1)=1+(n+1)S(n). Solving this recurrence gives

$$S(n) = n! \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{k!}$$

so S(n) is between n! and $en!^2$ Again, there is potential for sharing, and one nexus is pictured in Figure 21.2. The nexus has been labelled with the distinct nonempty subsequences of abcde; more precisely, it has been filled by $fill\ id\ recover$, where recover is the same as in our second example. The nexus has only 2^n-1 nodes, which is a substantial reduction over the tree.

¹ The function *minors* appears again in the following two pearls in connection with matrices.

² The sequence appears as A002627 in Sloane's integer sequences, which gives S(n) = |(e-1)n!|.

Building a nexus

We now turn to the problem of how to build a nexus and how to fill it without destroying sharing. In all our examples the nexus has its leaves at the same depth, so one obvious idea is to build the nexus fill $f g \cdot mkTree h$ layer by layer from bottom to top. Building stops when we have a singleton layer. It also seems obvious that each layer should be a list of labelled trees, i.e. $[LTree\ a]$, but this decision is premature. Instead, we postulate a type $Layer\ a$, so that each layer is an element of $Layer\ (LTree\ a)$. The general bottom-up scheme for constructing the nexus of fill $f g \cdot mkTree\ h$ for various h is then implemented by

```
mkNexus f g = label \cdot extractL \cdot until singleL (stepL g) \cdot initialL f
```

where the subsidiary functions have the following types:

```
 \begin{array}{lll} initialL & :: & ([a] \rightarrow b) \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow Layer \ (LTree \ b) \\ stepL & :: & ([b] \rightarrow b) \rightarrow Layer \ (LTree \ b) \rightarrow Layer \ (LTree \ b) \\ singleL & :: & Layer \ (LTree \ b) \rightarrow Bool \\ extractL & :: & Layer \ (LTree \ b) \rightarrow LTree \ b \\ \end{array}
```

Our aim is to find implementations of these four functions for each of the three instantiations, h = split, h = isegs and h = minors.

The first two, h = split and h = isegs, are easy because we can get away with choosing Layer a = [a] and defining

```
initialLf = map (lleaf f \cdot wrap)

singleL = single

extractL = head
```

where $wrap \ x = [x]$. Thus, the initial layer is a list of leaves. The definition of stepL for h = split is

```
stepL g = map (lnode g) \cdot group
```

where $group :: [a] \to [[a]]$ groups a list into pairs and is defined by

```
group [] = []

group (x : y : xs) = [x, y] : group xs
```

With these definitions we have, for example, that $mkNexus\ id\ merge\ xs$, where xs is a list whose length is a power of 2, is a bottom-up definition of mergesort in which elements are merged in pairs, then merged in fourths, and so on.

For h = isegs we just have to change the definition of group to read

```
group[x] = []

group(x:y:xs) = [x,y]:group(y:xs)
```

Thus, group xs now returns a list of the adjacent pairs of elements of xs. This choice is a fairly obvious one, as can be appreciated by referring to Figure 21.1, and we omit a formal proof.

As might be expected, the case h = minors is considerably more difficult. We have to find some way of grouping the trees at one level for assembly into the trees at the next level. Let us begin slowly by seeing what happens to the bottom layer, a list of leaves. We have to pair up the leaves, and one way of doing so is illustrated for five leaves a, b, c, d and e by

```
(ab ac ad ae) (bc bd be) (cd ce) (de)
```

Here, ab abbreviates [a, b] and so on. Ignoring the parenthetical information, the second layer is obtained by redefining group to read

```
group[x] = []

group(x:xs) = map(bind x) xs + group xs

\mathbf{where}\ bind x y = [x, y]
```

At the next level we have to combine pairs into triples, and the way to do this is to exploit the grouping structure implicit in the second layer: pair up the elements in the first group and combine each pair with the corresponding element in the remaining groups. Then carry out the tripling procedure with the remaining groups. This leads to the third layer

```
((abc \quad abd \quad abe) \quad (acd \quad ace) \quad (ade)) \quad ((bcd \quad bce) \quad (bde)) \quad ((cde))
```

in which abc abbreviates [[a, b], [a, c], [b, c]], and so on. The fourth layer, namely a grouping of quadruples,

```
(((abcd \ abce) \ (abde)) \ ((acde))) \ (((bcde)))
```

can be computed in the same fashion: this time triple up the first group and combine each triple with the corresponding triple in the remaining groups and then repeat the quadrupling for the remaining groups.

The necessary grouping information can be captured by representing each layer as a list of trees; in other words, a forest. The forest has shape constraints and is determined by two numbers, its length n and the common depth d of its component trees. A forest with depth 0 consists of a list of n leaves. A forest of length n and depth d+1 consists of a list of n trees in which the children of the first tree are a forest of length n and depth d, the

children of the second tree are a forest of length n-1 and depth d, and so on, down to the final tree whose children are a forest of length 1 and depth d. The bottom layer of our nexus is a forest of length n and depth 0, the next layer a forest of length n-1 and depth 1, and so on, with the top layer being a forest of length n and depth n-1. As a data type, a forest is an element of $[Tree \ a]$, so we define $Layer \ a = [Tree \ a]$. The fact that we started out the pearl with the type $Tree \ a$ is purely fortuitous; we would have had to declare the type $Tree \ a$ anyway to define forests.

Here are the implementations of initialL, singleL and extractL for building a nexus with h = minors:

```
initialLf = map (Leaf \cdot lleaf f \cdot wrap)

singleL = single

extractL = extract \cdot head

\mathbf{where} \ extract \ (Leaf \ x) = x

extract \ (Node \ [t]) = extract \ t
```

The function initialL constructs a forest of depth 0 whose labels are the leaves of a labelled tree (an element of LTree~a). The function extractL takes a forest of length 1 and some depth d and extracts its label. It is a bit mind-boggling that the computation of mkNexus is carried out in terms of a data structure of type [Tree~(LTree~a)], a list of trees of labelled trees.

It remains to define stepL, which is given by

```
stepL\ g = map\ (map\ Tree\ (lnode\ g)) \cdot group
```

where mapTree is the map function for $Tree\ a$ and

```
group :: [Tree \ a] \rightarrow [Tree \ [a]]
group \ [t] = [\ ]
group \ (Leaf \ x : vs)
= Node \ [Leaf \ [x, y] \ | \ Leaf \ y \leftarrow vs] : group \ vs
group \ (Node \ us : vs)
= Node \ (zip \ With \ combine \ (group \ us) \ vs) : group \ vs
combine \ (Leaf \ xs) \ (Leaf \ x) = Leaf \ (xs + [x])
combine \ (Node \ us) \ (Node \ vs) = Node \ (zip \ With \ combine \ us \ vs)
```

These definitions formalise the verbal description of the process given earlier. To justify them we have to prove that

```
mkNexus f g = fill f g \cdot mkTree minors
```

However, the proof is rather long and we omit it.

Why build the nexus?

A good question. Everything we have said above about building a nexus bottom up and layer by layer applies equally well if we throw away the nexus and just retain the labelling information. Take the case h = isegs and consider solve, where

```
solve :: [a] \rightarrow b \rightarrow ([b] \rightarrow b) \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow b
solve fg = head \cdot until single (map <math>g \cdot group) \cdot map (f \cdot wrap)
```

and group is the function associated with isegs. The function $solvef\ g$ implements the hylomorphism $hylo\ f\ g\ isegs$ without building a nexus. Similarly, consider solve, where

```
solve f g = extractL \cdot until singleL (step g) \cdot map (Leaf \cdot f \cdot wrap)

step g = map (map Tree g) \cdot group
```

and extractL, singleL and group are the functions associated with minors. Again, $solve\ f\ g$ implements the hylomorphism $hylo\ f\ g\ minors$ without building a nexus.

The answer to the question is that the nexus is useful when we want to consider problems that are variants of the ones discussed above. For example, a standard problem involving segments is the problem of optimal bracketing, in which one seeks to bracket an expression $x_1 \oplus x_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus x_n$ in the best possible way. It is assumed that \oplus is an associative operation, so the way in which the brackets are inserted does not affect the value. However, different bracketings may have different costs. The cost of computing $x \oplus y$ depends on the sizes of x and y, and the recursive solution makes use not of isegs but the function uncats, where

```
uncats [x, y] = [([x], [y])

uncats (x : xs) = ([x], xs) : map (cons x) (uncats xs)

\mathbf{where} \ cons \ x \ (ys, zs) = (x : ys, zs)
```

For example, uncats "abcde" is

```
[("a", "bcde"), ("ab", "cde"), ("abc", "de"), ("abcd", "e")]
```

Each of these pairs represents a possible initial bracketing, and a minimum cost solution is obtained by recursively computing the cost and sizes of each component in each pair and then taking a minimum of the costs of combining them.

Using *uncats* in place of *isegs* does not give us an element of *Tree a* but a more complicated kind of tree in which each "subtree" is a list of pairs of subtrees. Nevertheless, we can solve the bracketing problem by computing the

nexus for *isegs*, provided we replace the definition of the smart constructor *lnode* with another one:

```
lnode\ g\ [u,v]\ =\ LNode\ (g\ (zip\ (lspine\ u)\ (rspine\ v)))\ [u,v]
```

The functions $lspine, rspine :: LTree \ a \rightarrow [a]$ are defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} lspine \; (LLeaf \; x) & = & [x] \\ lspine \; (LNode \; x \; [u,v]) & = & lspine \; u \; + \; [x] \\ rspine \; (LLeaf \; x) & = & [x] \\ rspine \; (LNode \; x \; [u,v]) & = & [x] \; + \; rspine \; r \end{array}
```

For example, the left and right spines of the two subtrees of the tree of Figure 21.1 are [a, ab, abc, abcd] and [bcde, cde, de, e]. Zipping them together gives uncats abcde. The definition of lspine takes quadratic time, but it is easy to make it take linear time with the help of an accumulating parameter.

As a second example, consider the nexus of subsequences in Figure 21.2. One example of a problem involving subsequences is the *Countdown* example considered in the previous pearl. In that problem we made use of a function *unmerges* defined by

```
unmerges [x, y] = [([x], [y])]

unmerges (x : xs) = [([x], xs)] + concatMap (add x) (unmerges xss)

\mathbf{where} \ add \ x \ (ys, zs) = [(x : ys, zs), (ys, x : zs)]
```

For example, unmerges "abcd" is

```
[("a", "bcd"), ("ab", "cd"), ("b", "acd"), ("abc", "d"), ("bc", "ad"), ("ac", "bd"), ("c", "abd")]
```

The order in which the pairs of subsequences appear in this list is not important, and neither is the order within each pair. What is important is that each subsequence is paired with its complement. In Countdown, the set of possible expressions one can build from a list xs of integers in ascending order is computed by recursively building the expressions for each list in each component of $unmerges\ xs$ and then combining results.

Using unmerges in place of minors does not give us an element of Tree a, but rather a more complicated data structure. Nevertheless, just as before, we can solve Countdown by computing the nexus for minors provided we replace the definition of the smart constructor lnode with another one. What we have to do, in effect, is to find some way of extracting unmerges from the labels of the nexus associated with a node. That means retrieving every

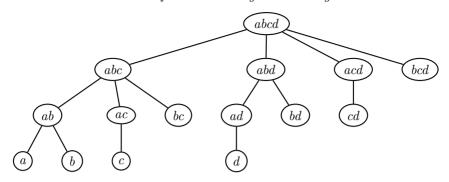


Fig. 21.3 A binomial spanning tree

label of the nexus. In principle this can be done by carrying out a breadth-first traversal of the nexus. For example, the breadth-first traversal of the nexus associated with abcd in Figure 21.2, minus its first element, is

```
abc, abd, acd, bcd, ab, ac, bc, ad, bd, cd, a, b, c, d
```

If we split this list into two halves and zip the first half with the reverse of the second half, we arrive at *unmerges* "abcd", though the pairs appear in a different order, as do the components of each pair.

However, any traversal of a graph requires us to keep track of nodes visited, and this is not possible with a nexus because two nodes cannot be checked for equality. The alternative is first to construct a *spanning tree* of the nexus and then to traverse its subtrees in breadth-first order. Traversing a forest is implemented by

```
traverse :: [LTree \ a] \rightarrow [a]
traverse \ [\ ] = [\ ]
traverse \ ts = map \ label \ ts + traverse \ (concatMap \ subtrees \ ts)
subtrees \ (LLeaf \ x) = [\ ]
subtrees \ (LNode \ x \ ts) = ts
```

One spanning tree of the nexus associated with abcd in Figure 21.2 is pictured in Figure 21.3. This tree is a binomial tree of rank 4. Binomial trees are close cousins of the trees in the forest used to construct the nexus. A binomial tree of rank n has n children, which are, in order, binomial trees of ranks $n-1, n-2, \ldots, 0$. To construct the binomial spanning tree of the nexus, we have to drop children, none from the first subtree, one from the second subtree and so on. The same recipe has to be applied recursively to the children. Thus, for the kth child we have to drop k children from its first

child, k + 1 children from its second child and so on. The function forest k, defined by

```
forest k (LLeaf x : ts) = LLeaf x : ts
forest k (LNode x us : vs)
= LNode x (forest k (drop k us)) : forest (k + 1) vs
```

carries out this pruning. Now we can define

```
lnode \ g \ ts = LNode \ (g \ (zip \ xs) \ (reverse \ ys)) \ ts

\mathbf{where} \ (xs, ys) = halve \ (traverse \ (forest \ 0 \ ts))
```

where halve xs = splitAt (length xs div 2) xs.

Final remarks

The name hylomorphism first appeared in Meijer (1992); see also Meijer et al. (1991). The material in this pearl has been drawn from two main sources. Nexus building was described first in Bird and Hinze (2003), where another way of building the nexus for minors was given, one that used a cyclic tree with up and down pointers. Later on, in Bird (2008), it was shown that for some problems, admittedly of a fairly restricted class, the essential function group for building each layer of the nexus could be expressed as the transpose of the decomposition function h of the hylomorphism.

References

- Bird, R. S. and Hinze, R. (2003). Trouble shared is trouble halved. *ACM SIGPLAN Haskell Workshop*, Uppsala, Sweden.
- Bird, R. S. (2008). Zippy tabulations of recursive functions. In LNCS 5133: Proceedings of the Ninth International Conference on the Mathematics of Program Construction, ed. P. Audebaud and C. Paulin-Mohring. pp. 92–109.
- Meijer, E. (1992). Calculating compilers. PhD thesis, Nijmegen University, The Netherlands.
- Meijer, E., Fokkinga, M. and Paterson, R. (1991). Functional programming with bananas, lenses, envelopes and barbed wire. Proceedings of the 5th ACM Conference on Functional Programming Languages and Computer Architecture. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, pp. 124–44.

Three ways of computing determinants

Introduction

The determinant, det(A), or |A|, of an $n \times n$ matrix $A = (a_{ij})$ can be defined by the Leibniz formula

$$|A| = \sum_{\pi} \operatorname{sign}(\pi) \prod_{1 \le j \le n} a_{j\pi(j)}$$

The sum is taken over all permutations π of [1..n] and sign $(\pi) = 1$ for even permutations (those that have an even number of inversions), and -1 for odd ones. Executed directly, the computation of |A| takes $\Theta(n \times n!)$ steps. One way to reduce the time to $\Theta(n^3)$ is to convert the matrix to upper triangular form using Gaussian elimination. Gaussian elimination brings in division as an additional operation, so if A is an integer matrix and the determinant has to be computed exactly, then the result of each division has to be exact. That means using rational division. Rational division involves normalising numerators and denominators, so time is spent computing the greatest common divisor of two integers.

One method that avoids rational division is known as *Chió's pivotal* condensation algorithm. This is essentially a variant of Gaussian elimination that uses integer division only. Chió's method requires $\Theta(n^3)$ multiplications but only $\Theta(n)$ divisions (and exponentiations). The downside is that the size of the intermediate results grows exponentially. However, there is a variant of the algorithm in which the intermediate results are kept reasonably small, but the number of integer divisions goes up to $\Theta(n^3)$.

Finally, there are methods for computing the determinant reasonably quickly that avoid division altogether. One is based on iterated matrix multiplication. The size of the intermediate results is small, but the operation count goes up to $\Theta(n^4)$. Since we will need to calculate determinants in the following pearl, we devote this pearl to describing and comparing these three kinds of algorithm.

The school-book method

As a warm-up let us first implement the school-book method of computing determinants. This involves recursively computing the determinant of the *minors* of the matrix. For example:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix} = a_{11} \begin{vmatrix} a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix} - a_{21} \begin{vmatrix} a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix} + a_{31} \begin{vmatrix} a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{22} & a_{23} \end{vmatrix}$$

With matrices represented as a list of rows, the school-book method is implemented by

The 1×1 case is computed directly. Otherwise, each element of the first column is multiplied by the determinant of the corresponding minor of the remaining columns and the results are combined with an alternating sum. The function *minors*, which made an appearance in the previous pearl, is defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{minors} & :: & [a] \rightarrow [[a]] \\ \textit{minors} \left[ \; \right] & = & [ \; \right] \\ \textit{minors} \left( x : xs \right) & = & xs : map \left( x : \right) \left( \textit{minors} \ xs \right) \end{array}
```

For example, minors "abcd" = ["bcd", "acd", "abd", "abc"].

Although the definition of det is short and sweet, the associated computation takes exponential time. The recurrence relation for T(n), the number of steps needed to compute the determinant of an $n \times n$ matrix, satisfies $T(n) = nT(n-1) + \Theta(n)$, with solution $T(n) = \Theta(n!)$. Nevertheless, it is good enough when n = 2 or n = 3.

Using rational division

Gaussian elimination depends on the fact that adding any multiple of one row to any other row does not change the value of the determinant. Assuming the leading entry of the first row is not zero, we can add suitable multiples of the first row to the other rows to reduce the elements in the first column to zero. Repeating this process on the submatrix formed by eliminating the first row and column reduces the matrix to upper triangular form. The

determinant of an upper triangular matrix is the product of the elements on the diagonal.

The process is complicated by the fact that the leading entry of the matrix may be zero. In such a case we have to find an appropriate row whose first entry, the *pivot*, is not zero. The function *det* is defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} det & :: & [[Ratio\ Integer]] \rightarrow Ratio\ Integer \\ det\ [[x]] & = & x \\ det\ xss & = & \\ \mathbf{case}\ break\ ((\neq 0) \cdot head)\ xss\ \mathbf{of} \\ (yss,[\ ]) & \rightarrow & 0 \\ (yss,zs:zss) & \rightarrow & \mathbf{let}\ x = head\ zs*det\ (reduce\ zs\ (yss\ +zss)) \\ & & \mathbf{in}\ \mathbf{if}\ \ even\ (length\ yss)\ \mathbf{then}\ \ x\ \mathbf{else}\ -x \end{array}
```

The expression break ($(\neq 0) \cdot head$) xss breaks a matrix into two parts (yss, zss) in which either zss is empty or the head of its first row zs is not zero. In the former case the matrix is singular and its determinant is zero. In the latter case the remaining rows (yss + zss) are reduced to an $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrix by adding a suitable multiple of zs to each row and discarding the first column:

```
reduce \ xs \ yss = map \ (reduce 1 \ xs) \ yss
reduce 1 \ (x : xs) \ (y : ys) = zip With(\lambda a \ b \rightarrow b - d * a) \ xs \ ys
\mathbf{where} \ d = y/x
```

Finally, the determinant of the reduced matrix is negated if the parity of the position of the pivotal row in the matrix is odd. Division (/) is implemented as rational division.

Using integer division

Another way to compute |A| is based on the following fact. Define the matrix X by setting $x_{jk} = a_{11} * a_{jk} - a_{1k} * a_{j1}$ for $2 \le j, k \le n$. Equivalently,

$$x_{jk} = \left| \begin{array}{cc} a_{11} & a_{1k} \\ a_{j1} & a_{jk} \end{array} \right|$$

So X is an $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrix. Then $|A| = |X|/a_{11}^{n-2}$ provided $a_{11} \neq 0$. This is Chió's identity. The determinant of an $n \times n$ matrix is expressed in terms of the determinant of a "condensed" $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ whose entries are the determinants of 2×2 matrices. Although Chió's identity also makes use of division, the division is exact and can be implemented as integer division. Note the assumption that the leading entry a_{11} is not zero. If it is, then, just

as in Gaussian elimination, we have to look for a suitable non-zero pivot. The row containing the pivot can be swapped with the first row. Swapping two rows changes the sign of the determinant if the pivotal row is moved an odd number of places. That leads to the following algorithm for det:

```
\begin{array}{lll} det & :: & [[Integer]] \rightarrow Integer \\ det & [[x]] & = & x \\ det & xss & = \\ & \mathbf{case} \ break \ ((\neq 0) \cdot head) \ xss \ \ \mathbf{of} \\ & (yss,[]) & \rightarrow & 0 \\ & (yss,zs:zss) & \rightarrow & \mathbf{let} \ x & = & det \ (condense \ (zs:yss + + zss)) \\ & & d & = & head \ zs \uparrow \ (length \ xss - 2) \\ & & y & = & x \ \mathrm{div} \ d \\ & & \mathbf{in} \ \ \mathbf{if} \ \ even \ (length \ yss) \ \ \mathbf{then} \ \ y \ \ \mathbf{else} \ - \ y \end{array}
```

Here, (\uparrow) denotes exponentiation. The function *condense* is defined by

```
condense = map (map det \cdot pair \cdot uncurry zip) \cdot pair

\mathbf{where} \ pair (x : xs) = map ((,) x) xs

det ((a, b), (c, d)) = a * d - b * c
```

The first row of the matrix is paired with each other row. Each pair of rows, say ($[a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n], [b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n]$), is then zipped and paired, yielding

```
[((a_1, b_1), (a_2, b_2)), ((a_1, b_1), (a_3, b_3)), \dots ((a_1, b_1), (a_n, b_n))]
```

Finally, the 2×2 determinant of each pair of pairs is computed.

As to the complexity, condensing an $n \times n$ matrix takes $\Theta(n^2)$ steps, so the recurrence relation for T(n) satisfies $T(n) = T(n-1) + \Theta(n^2)$, with solution $T(n) = \Theta(n^3)$. Although rational division is avoided, the integers get big very quickly. It would be much better if the divisions were not all performed at the end of the process, but interleaved with each condensation step.

Interleaving

Interleaving of condensation and division is possible owing to one of the many curious properties of determinants. Let X be the condensed matrix obtained from A and let Y be the condensed matrix obtained from X. Thus, Y is an $(n-2) \times (n-2)$ matrix. Then, assuming $a_{11} \neq 0$, each element of Y is divisible by a_{11} . We leave the proof as an exercise. That means we can eliminate the factor $1/a_{11}^{n-2}$ in Chió's method by dividing each element

of the doubly condensed matrix by a_{11} . That leads to the implementation det = det' 1, where

```
\begin{array}{lll} det' & :: & Integer \rightarrow [[Integer]] \rightarrow Integer \\ det' \ k \ [[x]] & = & x \\ det' \ k \ xss & = & \\ \textbf{case} \ break \ ((\neq 0) \cdot head) \ xss \ \textbf{of} \\ (yss,[\ ]) & \rightarrow & 0 \\ (yss,zs:zss) & \rightarrow & \textbf{let} \ x = det' \ (head \ zs) \ (cd \ k \ (zs:yss + zss)) \\ & & \textbf{in} \ \ \textbf{if} \ \ even \ (length \ yss) \ \ \textbf{then} \ \ x \ \ \textbf{else} \ -x \end{array}
```

where cd (short for condense and divide) is defined by

$$cd \ k = map \ (map \ det \cdot pair \cdot uncurry \ zip) \cdot pair$$

$$\mathbf{where} \ pair \ (x : xs) = map \ ((,) \ x) \ xs$$

$$det \ ((a, b), (c, d)) = (a * d - b * c) \ div \ k$$

Of course, in this version the number of integer divisions goes up to $\Theta(n^3)$.

Using no division

Finally, we present one other method of computing det that avoids division altogether. The method appears somewhat magical and we are not going to justify it. For an $n \times n$ matrix $X = (x_{ij})$ define MUT(X) (short for make upper triangular) by

$$MUT(X) = \begin{pmatrix} -\sum_{j=2}^{n} x_{jj} & x_{12} & \dots & x_{1n} \\ 0 & -\sum_{j=3}^{n} x_{jj} & \dots & x_{2n} \\ \dots & & & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & -\sum_{j=n+1}^{n} x_{jj} \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, the entries of X below the diagonal are made zero, those above the diagonal are left unchanged and each diagonal entry is replaced by the negated sum of the elements of the diagonal below it. Note that $\sum_{j=n+1}^{n} x_{jj} = 0$. Next, let $F_A(X) = \text{MUT}(X) \times A$ and set $B = F_A^{n-1} A'$, where A' = A

Next, let $F_A(X) = \text{MUT}(X) \times A$ and set $B = F_A^{n-1} A'$, where A' = A if n is odd and A' = -A if n is even. In words, apply F_A to A' a total of (n-1) times. Then B is the everywhere zero matrix except for its first entry b_{11} , which equals |A|. Computing $\text{MUT}(X) \times A$ takes $\Theta(n^3)$ steps and, since this computation is repeated n-1 times, the total time for computing |A| is $\Theta(n^4)$ steps.

The following implementation follows the prescription faithfully:

The function *mut* implements MUT:

```
mut \ xss
= zip With (++) zeros (zip With (:) ys (zip With drop [1..] xss))
where ys = map \ negate (tail (scarr (+) 0 (diagonal xss)))
```

The value *zeros* is an infinite lower triangular matrix of zeros, beginning with an empty row:

```
zeros = [take \ j \ (repeat \ 0) \mid j \leftarrow [0..]]
```

The function diagonal returns the elements along the diagonal:

```
diagonal[] = []

diagonal(xs:xss) = head(xs:diagonal(map(tail(xss))))
```

Finally, matmult implements matrix multiplication:

```
matmult \ xss \ yss = zip \ With \ (map \cdot dp) \ xss \ (repeat \ (transpose \ yss))
dp \ xs \ ys = sum \ (zip \ With \ (*) \ xs \ ys)
```

The function dp implements the dot product of two vectors.

However, note that $\operatorname{MUT}(X)$ does not depend on the entries below the diagonal of X. Under lazy evaluation they are never computed by mut. Nevertheless, it is more efficient to recast the definition of mut in terms of a special matrix multiplication operation trimult that multiplies an upper triangular matrix with an arbitrary matrix to give another upper triangular matrix. Suppose xss is the list of rows of an upper triangular matrix and yss is an arbitrary matrix. Then

```
trimult \ xss \ yss = zip With \ (map \cdot dp) \ xss \ (submats \ (transpose \ yss))
```

produces an upper triangular matrix. The function submats returns a list of the principal submatrices:

```
submats :: [[a]] \rightarrow [[[a]]]

submats [[x]] = [[[x]]]

submats xss = xss : submats (map\ tail\ (tail\ xss))
```

For upper triangular matrices xss the definition of mut xss simplifies to

```
mut \ xss = zip With (:) \ ys \ (map \ tail \ xss))
  where ys = map \ negate \ (tail \ (scanr \ (+) \ 0 \ (map \ head \ xss)))
```

The diagonal of an upper triangular matrix xss is map head xss and the elements above the diagonal are map tail xs.

We can now rewrite det in the form

```
[[Integer]] \rightarrow Integer
det.
                head (head bss)
det ass
  where
  bss
            = foldl (trimult \cdot mut) ass' (replicate (n-1) ass)
  ass'
           = if odd n then upper ass
                else map (map negate) (upper ass)
               length ass
```

where upper = zip With drop [0..].

A brief comparison

So, which of the three methods described above is best? Rational division (Gaussian elimination), integer division (two versions, one using Chió's identity and one using condense and divide) or no division (by iterated matrix multiplication)?

We carried out a brief comparison of the methods, using random matrices for various sizes of n, each with entries in the range (-20, 20). As might be expected, the original Chió version was hopeless, but the second version that combined condensation steps and division was the clear winner. For n=150, Gaussian elimination took about 30 s, the modified Chió version took 10s and the iterated multiplication method took 40s.

Final remarks

Chió's method, which goes back 150 years, is described at http://math world.wolfram.com/ChioPivotalCondensation.html. The modified version is really due to Bareiss (1968), who based its justification on Sylvester's identity, a more general version of Chió's identity. However, the history of the iterated multiplication method is more obscure. The main fact on which it depends still awaits a purely algebraic proof. We extracted it from an algorithm of Mahajan and Vinay (1997) that was based on the idea of clow sequences. The word clow is an acronym for "closed walk", and a clow sequence is a generalisation of the cycle decomposition of a permutation in

which each cycle can contain repetitions of intermediate elements; hence, a closed walk. Mahajan and Vinay showed that all the signed matrix terms for clow sequences that do not correspond to permutations cancel each other out, leaving just those terms $a_{1\pi(1)}a_{2\pi(2)}\cdots a_{n\pi(n)}$ that do correspond to permutations. But their proof is not trivial. The signed matrix term corresponding to a clow sequence can be expressed as a path in a layered directed acyclic graph to one of two endpoints and the computation of the sum of such factors computed as a path problem. By recasting the associated recursive definition directly back into matrix operations, the identity described above was discovered. Although we cannot find any reference to it in the literature, it is almost certainly not new.

One point not emphasised in the narrative was that no Haskell arrays were harmed in the description of the algorithms, immutable or otherwise. Instead, each matrix was quietly represented as a list of its rows. That enabled each algorithm to be expressed fairly concisely. But perhaps a better alternative is to define a suitable abstract type for matrices in which the necessary operations, first column, first row, diagonal, principal submatrices and so on, are provided as primitives.

References

Bareiss, E. H. (1968). Sylvester's identity and multi-step integer preserving Gaussian elimination. *Mathematics of Computation* **22** (103), 565–78. Mahajan, M. and Vinay, V. (1997). Determinant: combinatorics, algorithms and complexity. *Chicago Journal of Theoretical Computer Science*, Article 5.

Inside the convex hull

Introduction

The problem of computing the convex hull of a set of points is central to many tasks in computational geometry and has been much studied. Finding the hull makes sense in any finite dimension d, but most textbooks focus primarily on the cases d=2 and d=3. Our aim in this pearl is simply to specify the d dimensional form of the problem and then to describe a straightforward incremental algorithm for computing the hull. The incremental algorithm is well known and a number of sophisticated improvements have been proposed, but we deal only with the basic idea. We will not derive the algorithm, but instead show how to test it using the Claessen and Hughes QuickCheck library. In fact, testing revealed an error in the code, an error we have deliberately left in to see if the reader can spot it.

Background

Many geometric algorithms fall apart when the arithmetic is not exact, so it is a good idea to stay within the realm of integer arithmetic and confine attention to the subset Q(d) of d-dimensional Euclidean space E(d) consisting of those points whose Cartesian coordinates are rational numbers. A point in Q(d) can be represented by a list of d+1 integers $[x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_d]$ in which $x_d \neq 0$; this list represents the d rational Cartesian coordinates $[x_0/x_d, x_1/x_d, \ldots, x_{d-1}/x_d]$. Hence, we define Point = [Integer]. The dimension of a point is given by

```
dimension :: Point \rightarrow Int dimension ps = length ps - 1
```

By definition, a d-simplex is a list of d+1 points in Q(d) together with a value, +1 or -1, indicating the orientation of the simplex that arises from the way the points are listed:

```
type Simplex = ([Point], Int)
```

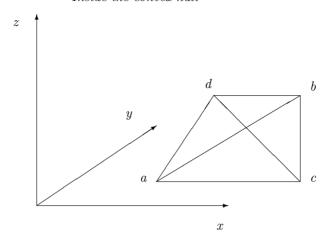


Fig. 23.1 A positively oriented tetrahedron, with a, b and c in the (x, y) plane and d above.

The points, or vertices, of a d-simplex have to be in "general position", meaning that no two points are identical, no three points are collinear, no four points are coplanar and so on. A 1-simplex in Q(1) is an edge, a 2-simplex in Q(2) is a triangle, and a 3-simplex in Q(3) is a tetrahedron. Formally, points $[v_0, v_1, \ldots, v_d]$, where v_j has coordinates $[x_{j0}, x_{j1}, \ldots, x_{jd}]$, are in general position if the determinant of the matrix $X = (x_{ij})$ is non-zero. The value of the determinant is proportional to the signed volume of the simplex and the orientation is, by definition, the sign of the determinant:

```
orientation :: [Point] \rightarrow Int

orientation = fromIntegral \cdot signum \cdot det
```

Even permutations of the points leave the orientation unchanged, while odd permutations invert it. In Q(1), an edge [a,b] has positive orientation if a>b, negative orientation if a< b and zero orientation if a=b. In Q(2), a triangle [a,b,c] has positive orientation if the order [a,b,c] is anticlockwise round the triangle, negative orientation if the order goes clockwise and zero orientation if a, b and c are collinear. In Q(3), and with the standard right-handed orientation of the x, y and z axes, a tetrahedron [a,b,c,d] has positive orientation if the triangle [b,c,d] when viewed from point a has positive orientation. Such a tetrahedron is pictured in Figure 23.1.

Each d-simplex smp determines a convex region CS(smp) of space in Q(d), namely the rational points inside smp or on its boundary. To determine whether a point lies in CS(smp) we first compute the facets of smp.

¹ Definitions of *det* were given in the previous pearl.

A facet of a d-simplex is a list of d points, together with an associated orientation derived from the simplex. The facets of an edge are its two endpoint vertices, the facets of a triangle are its three edges and so on. The facets of a simplex and the associated orientations are defined by

```
 \begin{array}{lll} facets & :: & Simplex \rightarrow [Facet] \\ facets \, (us,b) & = & zip \, (minors \, us) \, (cycle \, [b,-b]) \\ minors & :: & [a] \rightarrow [[a]] \\ minors \, [\,] & = & [\,] \\ minors \, (x:xs) & = & xs: map \, (x:) \, (minors \, xs) \\ \end{array}
```

where Facet = ([Point], Int). The minors of a list is a list of subsequences. For example, minors "abcd" = ["bcd", "acd", "abd", "abc"]. We met this function in the two previous pearls. For an edge [a, b] in Q(1) with positive orientation the facets are the 0-simplexes [b] and [a] with associated orientations +1 and -1 respectively. A point p is strictly inside the region of the simplex [a, b] if the simplex [p, b] has the same orientation as [b] has, namely +1, and [p, a] has the same orientation as [a], namely -1. In other words, b . The same reasoning holds in higher dimensions. Thus, in <math>Q(2), a triangle [a, b, c] with positive orientation has the three facets

```
([b,c],+1), ([a,c],-1), ([a,b],+1)
```

and a point p is strictly inside [a, b, c] if the three simplexes [p, b, c], [p, a, c] and [p, a, b] have orientations +1, -1 and +1, implying that p is to the left of the edge from b to c, to the right of the edge from a to c and to the left of the edge from a to b.

The region CS(smp) of those points strictly inside smp or on its boundary is defined by a predicate:

```
insideCS :: Simplex \rightarrow Point \rightarrow Bool

insideCS \ smp \ p

= \ and \ [0 \le b * orientation \ (p : us) \mid (us, b) \leftarrow facets \ smp]
```

A point p is strictly inside CS(smp) if b = orientation (p : us) for each facet (us, b) of smp and on the boundary of smp if orientation (p : us) = 0 for at least one facet (us, b) of smp.

Convex hulls

The convex hull CH(vs) of a set of points vs in Q(d) is a region of Q(d). It can be defined in a number of mathematically equivalent ways, including the following: CH(vs) is the union of the sets CS(smp) for all d-simplexes

smp determined by points of vs. For example, in Q(2) the convex hull of vs is the union of the regions determined by all triangles whose vertices are in vs. The set CH(vs) can therefore be characterised by a predicate:

```
\begin{array}{lll} insideCH & :: & [Point] \rightarrow Point \rightarrow Bool \\ insideCH \ vs \ p & = & or \ [insideCS \ smp \ p \ | \ smp \leftarrow simplexes \ vs] \end{array}
```

where $simplexes\ vs$ lists the simplexes of vs:

```
simplexes :: [Point] \rightarrow [Simplex]

simplexes vs = [(us, b) \mid us \leftarrow tuples (d + 1) vs,

\mathbf{let} \ b = orientation \ us, \ b \neq 0]

\mathbf{where} \ d = dimension \ (head \ vs)
```

The value of tuples n vs is a list of all n-tuples of vs; that is, all subsequences of vs of length n. The definition of tuples is left as an exercise.

According to the above definition of insideCH, the set CH(vs) is empty if vs has no simplexes. A set of points vs in Q(1) has no 1-simplexes if the points are coincident, in Q(2) if they are collinear and in Q(3) if they are coplanar. It is possible to define the convex hull for such sets of points by reducing the dimension, but we will leave the specification as it is.

An incremental algorithm

There are $\Omega(n^{d+1})$ possible d-simplexes among n points, so evaluating the expression insideCH vs p takes $\Omega(n^{d+1})$ steps. Most of these simplexes overlap, indeed some may coincide, and it is necessary only to consider some subset that covers the hull without overlap. Therefore, a more efficient algorithm is obtained by replacing simplexes with another function partition, with the same type, that partitions the hull. Then we can replace insideCH by insideCH', where

```
\begin{array}{lll} insideCH' & :: & [Point] \rightarrow Point \rightarrow Bool \\ insideCH' \ vs \ p & = & or \ [insideCS \ smp \ p \ | \ smp \leftarrow partition \ vs] \end{array}
```

The function partition can be defined by a process that starts with a single simplex and then adds new simplexes as each additional point outside the current hull is inspected:

```
\begin{array}{ll} partition :: [Point] \rightarrow [Simplex] \\ partition \ vs \\ = \mathbf{case} \ findSimplex \ vs \ \mathbf{of} \\ & Nothing \rightarrow [] \\ & Just \ [smp] \rightarrow \ foldl \ update \ [smp] \ (vs \setminus \ vertices \ smp) \end{array}
```

The vertices of a simplex are listed by

```
\begin{array}{lll} vertices & :: & Simplex \rightarrow [Point] \\ vertices & = & sort \cdot fst \end{array}
```

The vertices are listed in order; so, if vs is maintained as a sorted list, then $\$ can be implemented efficiently as ordered list difference. The function findSimplex finds a simplex if there is one. If there is not one, then there is no partition and an empty hull. Otherwise the simplex is used as a starting point and its vertices are removed from the list of additional points that need to be considered. It remains to define findSimplex and update. We deal with these functions separately.

Finding a simplex

One obvious way of defining findSimplex is

```
findSimplex \ vs =  if null \ smps then Nothing \ else \ Just \ (head \ smps) where smps = simplexes \ vs
```

But in the worst case the cost of findSimplex vs is $\Omega(n^{d+1})$ steps, which rather undercuts the aim of finding a more efficient algorithm. The worst case is unlikely in practice, so the above definition is probably good enough, but there is an alternative method. The idea is to start with the first point v_0 of vs and then to carry out a single search of the rest of vs to find the remaining points. First, a second point v_1 is found so that v_0 and v_1 are not coincident. Then the search continues with the elements of vs after v_1 to find a third point v_2 that is not collinear with v_0 and v_1 , and so on until d+1 points are found that are in general position. The tricky aspect is not the search but the fact that the non-degeneracy of k+1 points in Q(d) cannot be determined by a simple determinant test: the associated matrix of point coordinates has size $(k+1) \times (d+1)$, which is not square if k < d.

Instead we need to consider square submatrices. Consider the matrix X of size $(k+1) \times (d+1)$ obtained from the first k+1 vertices and the submatrices of size $(k+1) \times (k+1)$ formed by taking every possible combination of k columns from the first d columns, together with the last column (the denominators of the rational coordinates of the vertices). Then the k+1 points are degenerate if the determinants of all these square submatrices are zero. The degeneracy test is implemented by

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{degenerate } k & = & \textit{all } (==0) \cdot \textit{map } \textit{det} \cdot \textit{submatrices } k \cdot \textit{transpose} \\ \textit{submatrices } k \cdot \textit{vs} & = & \textit{map } (++[\textit{last } \textit{vs}]) \left( \textit{tuples } k \left( \textit{init } \textit{vs} \right) \right) \end{array}
```

The function transpose transposes a matrix, so submatrices selects columns of a matrix by selecting rows of the transposed matrix. The determinant of a matrix is the determinant of its transpose. Since there are $O(d^k)$ submatrices of the transposed matrix, and computing the determinant takes $O(k^3)$ steps, the computation of degenerate k vs for a list of k+1 points vs in Q(d), where $k \leq d$, takes $O(k^3d^k) = O(d^{d+3})$ steps.

The function *findSimplex* is now implemented by

```
findSimplex :: [Point] \rightarrow Maybe Simplex

findSimplex[] = Nothing

findSimplex(v:vs) = search(length v - 1) 1 [v] vs
```

where the function search is defined by

```
search\ d\ k\ us\ vs
|\ k=d+1\ =\ Just\ (us, orientation\ us)
|\ null\ vs\ =\ Nothing
|\ degenerate\ k\ (v:us)\ =\ search\ d\ k\ us\ (tail\ vs)
|\ \mathbf{otherwise}\ =\ search\ d\ (k+1)\ (v:us)\ (tail\ vs)
\mathbf{where}\ v=head\ vs
```

The running time of $findSimplex\ vs$, where vs has n points, is $O(d^{d+3}n)$ steps, which is linear in n, though with a large constant factor.

Update

In order to define the remaining function update, consider a set smps of simplexes that partition the convex hull for the points considered so far. The facets of these simplexes are of two kinds: the internal facets – those that occur exactly twice (with opposite orientations); and the external facets – those that occur exactly once. For example, take the vertices of a square [a, b, c, d] in Q(2). There are two possible triangulations: the triangles [a, b, c] and [c, d, a], or [a, b, d] and [b, c, d]. In the first triangulation the edge [a, c] is internal and in the second the edge [b, d] is internal. The external facets are computed by

```
\begin{array}{lll} external & :: & [Simplex] \rightarrow [Facet] \\ external & = & foldr \ op \ [\ ] \cdot sort \cdot concatMap \ facets \end{array}
```

where

```
op \; smp \; [\;] = [\;]
op \; smp \; (smp' : smps) = 
else \; smp : smp' : smps
```

The cost of computing external smps is $O(dS \log dS)$, where S is size of smps, since the dominating time is the time to sort the facets of smps and there are O(dS) of them.

Each new point v splits the external facets into two: the *visible* facets and the *invisible* ones. Imagine a light-bulb situated at v; this light-bulb illuminates just the visible facets. A facet (us, b) is visible to v if v is strictly outside it, meaning that orientation (v:us) has opposite sign to b:

```
 \begin{array}{lll} \textit{visible} & :: & \textit{Point} \rightarrow [\textit{Facet}] \rightarrow [\textit{Facet}] \\ \textit{visible } \textit{v fs} & = & [(us, b) \mid (us, b) \leftarrow \textit{fs}, \ \textit{b} * \textit{orientation} \ (\textit{v} : us) < 0] \\ \end{array}
```

There are no visible facets if v is inside or on the current hull. In particular, if v is a copy of one of the vertices processed so far, then the current hull will be unchanged, so it does not matter if vs contains repeated points (and it does not matter if we do not remove the vertices of the starting simplex from the starting points).

To update the hull we add to *smps* a new simplex for each visible facet:

```
newSimplex :: Point \rightarrow Facet \rightarrow Simplex

newSimplex \ v \ (us, b) = (v : us, -b)
```

The orientation assigned to the new simplex is correct because if (us, b) is visible to v, then b*orientation(v:us) < 0, and so orientation(v:us) = -b.

Now we can define *update* by

```
update :: [Simplex] \rightarrow Point \rightarrow [Simplex]
update smps v
= smps + map (newSimplex v) (visible v (external smps))
```

The time to compute $update \, smps$ is dominated by the time to compute the visible facets, and this takes $O(dS \log dS)$ steps, where S is the size of smps. The complexity of $inside\,CH'$ as a function of n, the number of points in vs, is therefore $O(dnS \log dS)$, where S is the maximum number of simplexes maintained at each stage. It is known that $S = O(n^e)$, where $e = \lfloor d/2 \rfloor$, so evaluating $inside\,CH'$ vs takes $O(n^{e+1} \log n)$ steps. This is better than $inside\,CH$, but we can improve $inside\,CH'$ yet further.

An improvement

As described above, the incremental algorithm computes a set of simplexes that partition the hull. At each stage the external facets of the hull are determined in order to discover those that are visible to a new point, and new simplexes are then added to the hull. It is clearly more sensible to maintain

the external facets of the simplexes rather than the simplexes themselves. If we set $faces = external \cdot partition$, then we can replace insideCH' by insideCH'', where

$$insideCH''$$
 vs $p = and [0 \le b * orientation (p : us) | (us, b) \leftarrow faces vs]$

The function faces has type $[Point] \rightarrow [Facet]$. In computational geometry one of the usual ways of describing a convex hull is by listing its external facets.

An efficient computation of *faces* can be derived by appealing to the fusion law of *foldl*. We need to find $update' :: [Facet] \rightarrow Point \rightarrow [Facet]$, so that

```
external (update \ smps \ v) = update' (external \ smps) \ v
```

Since the external facets of a single simplex are all its facets we then obtain

```
faces vs
= \mathbf{case} \ findSimplex \ vs \ \mathbf{of}
Nothing \rightarrow []
Just [smp] \rightarrow foldl \ update' \ (facets \ smp) \ (vs \setminus vertices \ vs)
```

We will not go into the derivation of *update'* but just state the result:

```
update' fs \ v = (fs \setminus fs') + map (newFacet \ v) (external \ fs')

\mathbf{where} \ fs' = visible \ v \ fs

newFacet \ v \ (us, b) = (v : us, b)
```

In words, the facets visible to the new point are removed from the current set of facets and new facets are added. The visible facets form a connected set and their boundary is the set of their external sub-facets, namely a set of (d-2)-simplexes that occur exactly once. For example, in Q(3) the facets are triangles and the external sub-facets of a visible set of connected triangles are the set of edges that form its boundary. The orientation assigned to each new facet is just the orientation of the associated sub-facet. To appreciate this last point, consider an edge ([a, b], +1) in Q(2) that is visible to a point c and in which b is a boundary point (so the following edge beginning with b is not visible). The 0-simplex associated with b has positive orientation and the new edge [c, b] has to be directed towards b, so also has positive orientation.

The running time of *faces* is dominated by the time to discover the facets visible to a new point. In order to find these facets, every single facet of the hull is inspected; that is clearly an inefficient method, since the visible facets form a small locally connected set. It is here that more sophisticated

algorithms, such as the *Bulldozer* algorithm of Blelloch *et al.* (2001), enter the picture, but we will not go into further details.

QuickCheck

Koen Claessen and John Hughes have produced a very useful suite of functions, called *QuickCheck*, for testing Haskell programs; see Claessen and Hughes (2000). It would take up too much space to explain the details of *QuickCheck*, but we briefly show how to use the functions in the suite to check the two versions of the convex hull algorithm described above.

First we need a generator for generating a point in Q(d):

```
point :: Int \rightarrow Gen [Integer]
point d = \mathbf{do} \{xs \leftarrow vector d; return (xs + [1])\}
```

The utility vector d returns a randomly generated list of d values, here integers. The result of point d is a generator that returns a list of d+1 integers in which the last integer is 1.

Next we need a generator for generating a list of n points:

```
\begin{array}{lll} points & :: & Int \rightarrow Int \rightarrow Gen \ [[Integer]] \\ points \ d \ 0 & = & return \ [\ ] \\ points \ d \ (n+1) & = & \mathbf{do} \ \{p \leftarrow point \ d; \ ps \leftarrow points \ d \ n; \\ & return \ (p : ps) \} \end{array}
```

Now we can define a property $prop_Hull$ that checks the incremental algorithm against the specification:

```
\begin{array}{lll} prop\_Hull & :: & Int \rightarrow Int \rightarrow Property \\ prop\_Hull \ d \ n & = & forAll \ (points \ d \ n) \ \$ \ \lambda vs \rightarrow \\ & & forAll \ (point \ d) \ \$ \ \lambda v \rightarrow \\ & & insideCH \ vs \ v = insideCH' \ vs \ v \end{array}
```

For example, evaluating quickCheck (prop_Hull 3 10) produces the output

```
OK, passed 100 tests.
```

However, replacing insideCH' by insideCH'' in $prop_Hull$ reveals an error:

```
Main> quickCheck (prop_Hull 2 4)
Falsifiable, after 2 tests:
[[0,0,1],[0,0,1],[0,0,1],[-1,-1,1]]
[1,0,1]
```

Oh dear, what has gone wrong? Well, the problem is that the four points are collinear, so there is no partition and no faces. While *insideCH* vs correctly

returns False when vs are collinear points in Q(2), the test insideCH'' vs returns True. We need to rewrite insideCH'' to read

```
insideCH'' \ vs \ v =  if null \ fs \  then False \  else and \ [0 \le b * orientation \ (v : us) \ | \ (us, b) \leftarrow fs] where fs = faces \ vs
```

Then QuickCheck is happy. Did you spot the error?

Final remarks

There are numerous textbooks on computational geometry that deal with convex-hull algorithms; O'Rourke (1998) and Preparata and Shamos (1985) are just two of them. In particular, O'Rourke's excellent book devotes two carefully crafted chapters to the topic, and his bibliography contains references to most of the literature, though Dijkstra's (1976) treatment of the three-dimensional case is missing. This particular pearl arose as a result of trying to come to grips with the details of Karimipour and Frank (2009), but the details differ significantly. I would like to thank Irina Voiculescu for a number of profitable discussions about the convex hull and how to compute it.

References

- Claessen, K. and Hughes, J. (2000). QuickCheck: a lightweight tool for random testing of Haskell programs. ACM SIGPLAN International Conference of Functional Programming, Montreal, Canada, pp. 268–79. See also http://www.cs.chalmers.se/~rjmh/QuickCheck/.
- Blelloch, G., Burch, H., Crary, K., et al. (2001). Persistent triangulations. Journal of Functional Programming 11 (5), 441–66.
- Dijkstra, E. W. (1976). A Discipline of Programming. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.
- Karimipour, F. and Frank, A. U. (2009). A dimension independent convex hull algorithm. Unpublished.
- O'Rourke, J. (1998). Computational Geometry, second edition. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Preparata, F. P. and Shamos, M. I. (1985). Computational Geometry. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.

24

Rational arithmetic coding

Introduction

This pearl, and the one following, is all about arithmetic coding, a way of doing data compression. Unlike other methods, arithmetic coding does not represent each individual symbol of the text as an integral number of bits; instead, the text as a whole is encoded as a binary fraction in the unit interval. Although the idea can be traced back much earlier, it was not until the publication of an "accessible implementation" by Witten, Neal and Cleary in 1987 that arithmetic coding became a serious competitor in the world of data compression. Over the past two decades the method has been refined and its advantages and disadvantages over rival schemes have been elucidated. Arithmetic coding can be more effective at compression than rivals such as Huffman coding, or Shannon–Fano coding, and is well suited to take account of the statistical properties of the symbols in a text. On the other hand, coding and decoding times are longer than with other methods.

Arithmetic coding has a well-deserved reputation for being tricky to implement; nevertheless, our aim in these two pearls is to give a formal development of the basic algorithms. In the present pearl, coding and decoding are implemented in terms of arbitrary-precision rational arithmetic. This implementation is simple and elegant, though expensive in time and space. In the following pearl, coding and decoding are reimplemented in terms of finite-precision integers. This is where most of the subtleties of the problem reside.

Arithmetic coding with rational arithmetic

The basic idea behind arithmetic coding is to:

(i) Break the source text into symbols, where a symbol is some logical grouping of characters such as a word, or perhaps just a single character. For simplicity, we assume that the number of possible symbols is finite.

- (ii) Associate each distinct symbol with a semi-open *interval* of the unit interval [0, 1). Such an association is provided by a *model*.
- (iii) Successively *narrow* the unit interval by an amount determined by the interval associated with each symbol in the text.
- (iv) Choose some suitably short fraction in the final interval.

We can capture the basic data types in Haskell by defining

```
type Fraction = Ratio Integer
type Interval = (Fraction, Fraction)
```

A fraction is represented by the ratio of two arbitrary-precision integers (elements of Integer) and an interval by two fractions. A proper fraction f is one in which $0 \le f < 1$. The unit interval is represented by (0,1) and we write $f \in (\ell, r)$ to mean $\ell \le f < r$, so intervals are closed on the left and open on the right. We also write $i \subseteq j$ to mean that i is a subinterval of j.

Narrowing

The value $i \triangleright j$ narrows an interval i by an interval j, returning a subinterval k of i such that k is in the same relationship to i as j is to the unit interval:

$$(\triangleright) \qquad :: \quad Interval \to Interval \to Interval \\ (\ell_1, r_1) \triangleright (\ell_2, r_2) \quad = \quad (\ell_1 + (r_1 - \ell_1) * \ell_2, \ell_1 + (r_1 - \ell_1) * r_2)$$

The operation \triangleright is associative with (0,1) as unit, a good reason to denote it with an infix symbol. It is easy to check that if $f \in i \triangleright j$, then $f \in i$. Hence, $i \triangleright j \subseteq i$. Also, if $f \in i \triangleright j$ then $(f \triangleleft i) \in j$, where the operation (\triangleleft) widens a fraction:

$$\begin{array}{lll} (\lhd) & :: & \mathit{Fraction} \to \mathit{Interval} \to \mathit{Fraction} \\ f \lhd (\ell,r) & = & (f-\ell)/(r-\ell) \end{array}$$

In summary:

$$f \in i \triangleright j \implies f \in i \land (f \triangleleft i) \in j$$
 (24.1)

In fact, (24.1) is an equivalence. Furthermore, if we extend \triangleleft to an operation on intervals by defining $(\ell, r) \triangleleft j = (\ell \triangleleft j, r \triangleleft j)$, then $(i \triangleright j) \triangleleft i = j$, so \triangleright has all the properties of a mathematical group.

Models

In order to encode a text, each possible symbol has to be associated with a given interval. For our purposes, *Model* is an abstract type representing

a finite mapping from a finite set of *Symbols* to *Intervals* with associated functions:

```
interval :: Model \rightarrow Symbol \rightarrow Interval symbol :: Model \rightarrow Fraction \rightarrow Symbol
```

Thus, interval mx is the interval associated with symbol x in model m, while symbol mf is the symbol associated with the unique interval containing the proper fraction f. We suppose that the intervals associated with symbols partition the unit interval, so

$$x = symbol \ m \ f \equiv f \in interval \ m \ x$$
 (24.2)

for every model m and proper fraction f.

As an important practical refinement on the basic idea, the model is allowed to change as each symbol of the text is read. Such a scheme is called adaptive encoding. For instance, one can begin with a simple model in which all symbols are associated with intervals of the same width and then let the model adapt by widening the intervals associated with the more frequently occurring symbols in the text. The wider an interval is, the more scope there is for finding a short fraction within it. More sophisticated adaptations are also possible. For example, in English the letter "q" is nearly always followed by a "u". Therefore, on encountering a symbol "q", the interval for "u" can be widened in the expectation that the next symbol is a "u".

It is not our purpose to study model adaptation in detail. Instead, we will just suppose the existence of an additional function

```
adapt \quad :: \quad Model \rightarrow Symbol \rightarrow Model
```

The function $intervals :: Model \rightarrow [Symbol] \rightarrow [Interval]$ is now defined by

```
intervals \ m \ [ \ ] = [ \ ]
intervals \ m \ (x : xs) = interval \ m \ x : intervals \ (adapt \ m \ x) \ xs
```

Each symbol of the text is converted into an interval by applying *interval* to a succession of models. As long as the decoder knows the initial model and *adapt*, it can perform the necessary adaptations to the model as each symbol is reconstructed. Crucially, there is no need to transmit the various models along with the text.

Encoding

Having defined the relevant data types and auxiliary operations, we can now specify the function *encode*:

encode ::
$$Model \rightarrow [Symbol] \rightarrow Fraction$$

encode $m = pick \cdot foldl (\triangleright) (0, 1) \cdot intervals m$

where $pick \ i \in i$. The intervals associated with the symbols of the text are used to narrow the unit interval to some final interval, from which some fraction is chosen.

Here is a simple example. Suppose m is a static model that contains five symbols with intervals given by

$$[(e, (0, 3/8)), (g, (3/8, 1/2)), (n, (1/2, 5/8)), (r, (5/8, 7/8)), (v, (7/8, 1))]$$

Then

```
encode m "evergreen"

= pick((0,1) \triangleright (0,3/8) \triangleright (7/8,1) \cdots \triangleright (1/2,5/8))

= pick(11445828/2^{25},11445909/2^{25})
```

The best choice for pick returns (89 421/2¹⁸), the unique fraction in this interval with the shortest binary expansion, namely 010101110101001101. So the nine characters of "evergreen" can be encoded as 18 bits, or three characters. In fact, since the numerator of a shortest fraction has to be odd, the last bit is always 1 and can be omitted, so only the first 17 bits need be output. The best that Huffman encoding can achieve is 19 bits. We will return to an appropriate choice of pick later on; for now we assume only that pick $i \in i$.

Decoding

The obvious way to specify decode is by the condition

$$xs = decode \ m \ (encode \ m \ xs)$$

for all finite lists of symbols xs. However, for reasons given in a moment, the specification is weakened to require only that

$$xs \subseteq decode \ m \ (encode \ m \ xs)$$
 (24.3)

where \sqsubseteq is the prefix relation on lists, so $xs \sqsubseteq ys$ if ys = xs + zs for some zs. Thus, decode is left-inverse to encode, in that it is required to produce the sequence of symbols that encode encodes but is not required to stop after producing them.

To define decode, let the input to encode be $xs = [x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}]$. Let m_0 be the initial model and $j_0 = (0, 1)$ the initial interval. Define

```
m_{k+1} = adapt m_k x_k

i_k = interval m_k x_k

j_{k+1} = j_k \triangleright i_{k+1}
```

for $0 \le k < n$. Thus, by definition of *encode*, if $f = encode m_0 xs$ then $f \in j_n$. Now we can reason for n > 0:

$$f \in j_n$$

$$\equiv \{\text{definition of } j_n \}$$

$$f \in (j_{n-1} \triangleright i_n)$$

$$\Rightarrow \{(24.1)\}$$

$$f \in j_{n-1} \land (f \triangleleft j_{n-1}) \in i_n$$

$$\equiv \{\text{definition of } i_n \}$$

$$f \in j_{n-1} \land (f \triangleleft j_{n-1}) \in interval \ m_n \ x_n$$

$$\equiv \{(24.2)\}$$

$$f \in j_{n-1} \land x_n = symbol \ m_n \ (f \triangleleft j_{n-1})$$

Hence, by induction, we can compute

$$x_k = symbol \ m_k \ (f \triangleleft j_{k-1}) \tag{24.4}$$

in the order $k=n-1,n-2,\ldots,0$. Equally well, (24.4) can used to compute the symbols in the order $k=0,1,\ldots,n-1$. However, since the decoder does not know the number of symbols, it will continue to produce more symbols indefinitely. Note that the associativity of \triangleright was not exploited in the reasoning above.

We implement decoding using the Haskell function unfoldr, defined by

```
unfoldr :: (b \rightarrow Maybe\ (a,b)) \rightarrow b \rightarrow [a]

unfoldr\ f\ b = case f\ b of

Just\ (a,b') \rightarrow a: unfoldr\ f\ b'

Nothing \rightarrow [\ ]
```

The function *decode* is defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} decode & :: & Model \rightarrow Fraction \rightarrow [Symbol] \\ decode \ m \ f & = & unfoldr \ step \ (m, (0, 1), f) \\ step \ (m, i, f) & = & Just \ (x, (adapt \ m \ x, i \triangleright interval \ m \ x, f)) \\ & & \mathbf{where} \ x = symbol \ m \ (f \triangleleft i) \end{array}
```

The proof that this definition of decode satisfies (24.3) is by induction on xs. The details add nothing to the informal description above and we omit them.

That leaves the problem of termination. There are two possible methods for dealing with termination. Provided the number of symbols in the text is known beforehand, this number can be transmitted prior to encoding. Then decode can be stopped after producing the required number of symbols.

The second method is to use a special end-of-file symbol EOF, appended to the end of each text. Then *decode* is stopped when this special symbol is generated. The second method is the one usually adopted in practice, but has the disadvantage of forcing each model to allocate an interval, however small, for EOF, thereby restricting the total width of the intervals available for the other symbols.

Incremental encoding and decoding

Simple and elegant as the above definitions of *encode* and *decode* are, they produce and consume fractions. And the denominators of fractions get big very quickly. We would prefer coding and decoding to produce and consume lists of bits, not least because it opens up the possibility of producing some output before consuming all the input and reducing denominator size.

To this end we decompose pick into two functions, $toBits :: Interval \rightarrow [Bit]$ and $toFrac :: [Bit] \rightarrow Fraction$, so that $pick = toFrac \cdot toBits$. The definitions of encode and decode are revised to read:

```
\begin{array}{lll} encode & :: & Model \rightarrow [Symbol] \rightarrow [Bit] \\ encode \, m & = & toBits \cdot foldl \, (\triangleright) \, (0,1) \cdot intervals \, m \\ \\ decode & :: & Model \rightarrow [Bit] \rightarrow [Symbol] \\ \\ decode \, m \, bs & = & unfoldr \, step \, (m,(0,1),toFrac \, bs) \\ \\ step \, (m,i,f) & = & Just \, (x,(adapt \, m \, x,i \triangleright interval \, m \, x,f)) \\ \\ & & \textbf{where} \, \, x = symbol \, m \, (f \triangleleft i) \end{array}
```

The new version of *encode* consumes symbols and produces bits, while *decode* consumes bits and produces symbols. The functions toBits and toFrac have yet to be determined, but as long as toFrac (toBits i) \in i for all intervals i we are guaranteed that (24.3) is satisfied.

The new definition of *encode* consumes all its input before delivering any output. We first show how to make *encode* incremental, because it will suggest appropriate definitions of *toBits* and *toFrac*.

Streaming

Consider the function *stream* defined by

```
stream f g s xs = unfoldr step (s, xs)
where step (s, xs) = case f s of
Just (y, s') \rightarrow Just (y, (s', xs))
Nothing \rightarrow case xs of
x : xs' \rightarrow step (g s x, xs')
[] \rightarrow Nothing
```

This function describes a process that alternates between producing output and consuming input. Starting in state s, control is initially passed to the producer function f, which delivers output until no more can be produced. Control is then passed to the consumer process g, which consumes the next input x and delivers a new state. The cycle then continues until the input is exhausted.

The following theorem, called the streaming theorem, relates stream to the composition of an unfoldr with a foldl.

Theorem 24.1 Suppose f and g satisfy the streaming condition

$$f s = Just(y, s') \Rightarrow f(g s x) = Just(y, g s' x)$$

for all s and x. Then unfold f(fold | g | s | xs) = stream f | g | s | xs for all s and all finite lists xs.

The proof of the streaming theorem is postponed to the Appendix. To apply it to encode, suppose $toBits = unfoldr\ bit$ for some function bit satisfying

$$bit \ i = Just \ (b, i_b) \quad \Rightarrow \quad bit \ (i \triangleright j) = Just \ (b, i_b \triangleright j)$$
 (24.5)

Then we have

$$encode \ m = stream \ bit \ (\triangleright) \ (0,1) \cdot intervals \ m$$

The result is an incremental algorithm for *encode*.

In order to satisfy (24.5) we need a suitable definition of bit. We also have to satisfy toFrac $(toBits\ i) \in i$. Observe that (24.5) demands that, whenever $bit\ i$ produces a bit b, the same bit has to be produced by $bit\ i'$ for any subinterval i' of i. This severely constrains the definition of bit. One possibility is to take

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} bit\; (\ell,r) & | & r \leq 1/2 & = & Just\; (0,(2*\ell,2*r)) \\ & | & 1/2 \leq \ell & = & Just\; (1,(2*\ell-1,2*r-1)) \\ & | & \mathbf{otherwise} & = & Nothing \end{array}$$

Thus, bit i produces nothing if i strictly straddles 1/2; otherwise it produces a 0 if $i \subseteq (0,1/2)$ and a 1 if $i \subseteq (1/2,1)$. This choice is reasonable, since fractions in (0,1/2) have binary expansions that begin with a zero, while fractions in (1/2,1) have expansions that begin with a one.

If $bit\ i$ does produce a bit b, then so does $bit\ i'$ for any subinterval i' of i, including $i \triangleright j$. Furthermore:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} (2\!*\!\ell,2\!*\!r) & = & (0,2) \rhd (\ell,r) \\ (2\!*\!\ell\!-\!1,2\!*\!r\!-\!1) & = & (-1,1) \rhd (\ell,r) \end{array}$$

Hence, if bit i does produce a bit b, then bit $i = Just(b, j_b \triangleright i)$, where $j_0 = (0, 2)$ and $j_1 = (-1, 1)$. And $j_b \triangleright (i \triangleright j) = (j_b \triangleright i) \triangleright j$ since \triangleright is associative. Therefore, (24.5) is satisfied with $i_b = j_b \triangleright i$.

The length of toBits i is finite; in fact

$$length (toBits (\ell, r)) \le |\log_2 1/(r-\ell)|$$

For the proof, note that toBits applied to an interval of width greater than 1/2 yields the empty sequence of bits, since such an interval strictly straddles 1/2. Moreover, each evaluation of bit is on an interval of double the width of its predecessor. Hence, if $1/2^{k+1} < r - \ell \le 1/2^k$, equivalently if $k = \lfloor \log_2[1/(r-\ell)] \rfloor$, then termination is guaranteed after at most k bits have been produced.

With the above choice of toBits the companion function toFrac is defined by

$$toFrac = foldr (\lambda \ b \ f \rightarrow (b+f)/2) (1/2)$$

Equivalently, $toFrac\ bs = foldr\ (\lambda\ b\ f \to (b+f)/2)\ 0\ (bs + [1])$. Thus, $toFrac\ bs$ in effect appends a 1 bit to the end of bs and converts the result into a fraction in the usual way. It is easy to check that $toFrac\ bs = (2n+1)/2^{k+1}$, where $k = length\ bs$ and $n = toInt\ bs$, the binary integer represented by bs.

To show that $pick \ i \in i$, where $pick = toFrac \cdot toBits$, observe that pick is the composition of a function that consumes a list with a function that produces a list. The intermediate list can be eliminated, giving a direct definition

The proof that $pick i \in i$ (indeed, pick i is strictly contained in i) now follows by fixpoint induction. In a fixpoint induction the hypothesis is assumed and then shown to hold under recursive calls. Thus, a fixpoint induction proof is essentially a proof by induction on the depth of recursion. Further details are left as an exercise.

That leaves the problem of how to implement decoding incrementally. It is possible to get *decode* to work incrementally, but we will not go into details because the work would be wasted: the reimplementation of *encode* and *decode* in terms of finite-precision integers to come in the next pearl requires a completely different approach.

Final remarks

The material in these two pearls is drawn from Bird and Gibbons (2003) and Stratford (2005). Witten et al. (1987) described "accessible implementation". For details of Huffman and Shannon–Fano coding, see Huffman (1952) and Fano (1961). For recent perspectives on the subject of arithmetic coding, see Moffat et al. (1998) and Mackay (2003). The streaming theorem is new, and was created specifically for the purposes of formulating an incremental version of encoding, but it has other applications; see Gibbons (2007). A good example of practice leading to new theory.

References

- Bird, R. S. and Gibbons, J. (2003). Arithmetic coding with folds and unfolds. Advanced Functional Programming 4, Volume 2638 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, ed. J. Jeuring and S. Peyton Jones. Springer-Verlag, pp. 1–26.
- Fano, R. M. (1961). Transmission of Information. Cambridge, MA/New York, NY: MIT Press/Wiley.
- Gibbons, J. (2007). Metamorphisms: streaming representation-changers. Science of Computer Programming 65, 108–39.
- Huffman, D. A. (1952). A method for the construction of minimum-redundancy codes. *Proceedings of the Institute of Radio Engineers* **40** (9), 1098–101.
- Mackay, D. (2003). Information Theory, Learning and Inference Algorithms. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Moffat, A., Neal, R. M. and Witten, I. H. (1998). Arithmetic coding revisited. ACM Transactions on Information Systems 16 (3), 256–94.
- Stratford, B. (2005). A formal treatment of lossless data compression. DPhil thesis, Oxford University Computing Laboratory, Oxford, UK.
- Witten, I. H., Neal, R. M. and Cleary, J. G. (1987). Arithmetic coding for data compression. Communications of the ACM 30 (6), 520–40.

Appendix

The streaming theorem can be proved by appealing to a more general theorem about unfoldr. This theorem states that $unfoldr f \cdot g = unfoldr h$ provided two conditions are satisfied:

$$h \ x = Nothing \Rightarrow f (g \ x) = Nothing$$

 $h \ x = Just (y, x') \Rightarrow f (g \ x) = Just (y, g \ x')$

This result is known as the $fusion\ law$ of unfoldr. In particular, the fusion conditions for

$$unfoldr\ step\ (s,xs) = unfoldr\ f\ (foldl\ g\ s\ xs)$$

where xs is restricted to be a finite list and

$$step\ (s,xs) = \mathbf{case}\ f\ s\ \mathbf{of}$$

$$Just\ (y,s') \to Just\ (y,(s',xs))$$

$$Nothing \to \mathbf{case}\ xs\ \mathbf{of}$$

$$x:xs \to step\ (g\ s\ x,xs)$$

$$[] \to Nothing$$

come down to

$$step(s, xs) = Nothing \Rightarrow f(foldl \ g \ s \ xs) = Nothing$$

and

$$step (s, xs) = Just (y, (s', xs'))$$

$$\Rightarrow f (foldl g s xs) = Just (y, foldl g s' xs')$$

for all finite lists xs. The first condition is easy to verify and the second condition follows from

$$f s = Just(y, s') \Rightarrow f(foldl g s xs) = Just(y, foldl g s' xs)$$

for all finite lists xs, which can be proved by induction on xs, given that the streaming condition holds for f and g.

Integer arithmetic coding

Introduction

This pearl continues the study of arithmetic coding begun in the previous one. The aim is to replace rational arithmetic with integer arithmetic. The basic idea is to represent the interval being narrowed by a pair of limited-precision integers (ℓ, r) , where $0 \le \ell < r \le 2^e$ and e is a fixed integer; this pair represents the subinterval $(\ell/2^e, r/2^e)$ of the unit interval. The intervals supplied by models are represented in exactly the same way but with a different integer d. As we will see below, d and e have to satisfy $d \le e-2$, so they cannot be the same. The values of e and e and e have to be global constants in what follows, are chosen to be sufficiently small that all calculations can be done with limited-precision integers, for example with the Haskell type Int.

New definitions

We now take Interval = (Int, Int), so $interval \ m \ x$ returns a pair (p,q) of limited-precision integers, representing the interval $(p/2^d, q/2^d)$. The function $symbol \ m$ takes an integer n in the range $0 \le n < 2^d$ and returns a symbol x. As before, $x = symbol \ m \ n$ if and only if $n \in interval \ m \ x$, except that n is now an integer.

Next, we change the definition of narrowing by replacing \triangleright with \triangleright , defined by

$$\begin{array}{lll} (\blacktriangleright) & :: & Interval \to Interval \to Interval \\ (\ell,r) \blacktriangleright (p,q) & = & (\ell + \lfloor (r-\ell) * p/2^d \rfloor, \ell + \lfloor (r-\ell) * q/2^d \rfloor) \end{array}$$

The largest integer that can arise in evaluations of \triangleright is 2^{e+d} (because $(r-\ell)*q$ can be that big) and, provided this integer is in Int, all interval calculations can now be done with Int.

Next, recall the function toBits of the previous pearl. This function converted a fractional interval into a list of bits. We have $toBits = unfoldr\ bit$, where

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} bit \ (\ell,r) & | & r \leq {}^{1}\!\!/_{\!\!2} & = & Just \ (0,(2\!*\!\ell,2\!*\!r)) \\ & | & {}^{1}\!\!/_{\!\!2} \leq \ell & = & Just \ (1,(2\!*\!\ell\!-\!1,2\!*\!r\!-\!1)) \\ & | & \mathbf{otherwise} & = & Nothing \end{array}$$

For integer encoding, bit is replaced by ibit, so that ibit too uses limited-precision integer arithmetic:

The function *ibit* is a version of *bit* that works on intervals scaled by 2^e , so satisfies $2^e * toFrac (unfoldr ibit i) \in i$.

Installing the above revisions leads to a new definition of encode, namely

$$encode_1 m = unfoldr \ ibit \cdot foldl \ (\triangleright) \ (0, 2^e) \cdot intervals \ m$$
 (25.1)

In words, symbols of the text are converted into intervals which are then used to narrow the interval $(0, 2^e)$ to some final interval i from which a bit string is produced that, when converted to a fraction and scaled by 2^e , gives a number in i. It all seems straightforward.

The problem with (25.1), however, is that it just simply does not work! Narrowing with \blacktriangleright will eventually collapse an interval to the empty interval, something that cannot happen with \triangleright . To illustrate, take e=5, d=3 and suppose m associates the interval (3,5) with the letter "a" and (5,6) with the letter "b". With $adapt \ m \ x=m$, so m is a static model, we have

```
encode_1 m"bba"

= foldl (►) (0,32) [(5,6), (5,6), (3,5)]

= foldl (►) (20,24) [(5,6), (3,5)]

= foldl (►) (22,23) [(3,5)]

= (22,22)
```

Moreover, unfoldr ibit (22, 22) generates infinite garbage. Whoops!

Incremental encoding and interval expansion

What saves the day is a combination of two ideas: incremental encoding and interval expansion. First, suppose we replace (25.1) by

$$encode_2 m = stream \ ibit \ (\triangleright) \ (0, 2^e) \cdot intervals \ m$$
 (25.2)

The operations *ibit* and \blacktriangleright do not satisfy the streaming condition because \blacktriangleright is not an associative operation and $encode_2 \neq encode_1$. Indeed, revisiting the example above, we have

```
encode<sub>2</sub> m "bba"

= stream ibit (\blacktriangleright) (0, 32) [(5,6), (5,6), (3,5)]

= stream ibit (\blacktriangleright) (20, 24) [(5,6), (3,5)]

= 101 : stream ibit (\blacktriangleright) (0, 32) [(5,6), (3,5)]

= 101101 : stream ibit (\blacktriangleright) (0, 32) [(3,5)]

= 101101 : stream ibit (\blacktriangleright) (12, 20) []

= 101101
```

Interval collapse is avoided. That is the good news. On the other hand:

```
encode<sub>2</sub> m "aab"

= stream ibit (\triangleright) (0, 32) [(3, 5), (3, 5), (5, 6)]

= stream ibit (\triangleright) (12, 20) [(3, 5), (5, 6)]

= stream ibit (\triangleright) (15, 17) [(5, 6)]

= stream ibit (\triangleright) (16, 16) []

= 0111...
```

Interval collapse is not avoided because each intermediate interval straddles 16, the midpoint, and *ibit* returns *Nothing* on such intervals.

The conclusion is that incremental encoding alone is not quite enough to avoid interval collapse. The problem is with intervals straddling 2^{e-1} , and the purpose of the second idea, interval expansion, is to increase the width of such intervals to at least 2^{e-2} . A narrowed interval $(\ell, r) \triangleright (p, q)$ will not collapse if

$$|(r-\ell)*p/2^d| < |(r-\ell)*q/2^d|$$

for all p < q, equivalently if $\lfloor (r-\ell) * p/2^d \rfloor < \lfloor (r-\ell) * (p+1)/2^d \rfloor$ for all p. Since $\lfloor x \rfloor < \lfloor y \rfloor$ provided $x+1 \leq y$, this condition is satisfied if $2^d \leq r-\ell$. Hence, collapse is avoided provided $r-\ell \leq 2^{e-2}$ and so if $d \leq e-2$.

Interval expansion

Interval expansion is a data refinement in which an interval (ℓ, r) is represented by a triple of the form $(n, (\ell', r'))$, where $\ell' = widen \ n \ \ell$ and $r' = widen \ n \ r$ and

widen
$$n x = 2^n(x-2^{e-1}) + 2^{e-1}$$

A fully expanded interval is one in which n is as large as possible, subject to the bounds $0 \le \ell' < r' \le 2^e$. For example, taking e = 5, the interval (13, 17) of width 4 can be represented by the fully expanded interval (2, (4, 20)) of width 16.

The function expand takes an interval and fully expands it. To define expand, and to avoid writing fractions and exponentials in what follows, define the four integers e_i for $1 \le i \le 4$ by $e_i = (i/4)2^e$. Observe that

$$0 \le 2 * (\ell - e_2) + e_2 \equiv e_1 \le \ell$$

 $2 * (r - e_2) + e_2 \le e_4 \equiv r \le e_3$

Hence, we can further expand $(n, (\ell, r))$ if $e_1 \leq \ell$ and $r \leq e_3$. This leads to the definition of *expand* in terms of a subsidiary function *extend*:

```
expand i = extend(0, i)

extend (n, (\ell, r))

\mid e_1 \leq \ell \wedge r \leq e_3 = extend(n+1, 2*\ell-e_2, 2*r-e_2)

\mid otherwise = (n, (\ell, r))
```

The converse of *expand* is *contract*, defined by

```
contract(n, (\ell, r)) = (shorten \ n \ \ell, shorten \ n \ r)
```

where shorten $n = (x - e_2)/2^n + e_2$. We have shorten $n \cdot widen n = id$, from which follows $contract \cdot expand = id$, but, in general, $expand \cdot contract \neq id$. This is the usual situation with the abstraction and representation functions of a data refinement.

Next, define enarrow, short for extend and narrow, by

```
enarrow :: (Int, Interval) \rightarrow Interval \rightarrow (Int, Interval)
enarrow ei j = (n, i \triangleright j) where (n, i) = extend ei
```

Thus, enarrow takes a partially expanded interval, fully expands it and then narrows the result with \blacktriangleright . Consequently, (ℓ, r) is narrowed only when $\ell < e_1$ or $e_3 < r$. If, in addition, $\ell < e_2 < r$, then either $\ell < e_1$ and $e_2 < r$, or $\ell < e_2$ and $e_3 < r$. In either case, $e_1 < r - \ell$, which is exactly what is required.

A new definition

We now replace (25.2) by yet a third, completely new definition:

$$encode_3 m = stream \ ebit \ enarrow \ (0, (0, 2^e)) \cdot intervals \ m$$
 (25.3)

The function *ebit* is a counterpart to *ibit* that works on expanded intervals, and is specified by the property

$$unfoldr\ ebit = unfoldr\ ibit \cdot contract$$
 (25.4)

where *ibit* was defined above. An explicit definition of *ebit* is developed below. The function *ebit* will return *Nothing* on intervals that straddle e_2 ,

so $encode_3$ ensures that an interval is narrowed by \triangleright only if its width is at least e_1 , thereby avoiding interval collapse if $d \le e-2$.

The function $encode_3$ is different from all previous versions of encode. That means we are back to square one with the problem of how to define decode. We postpone discussion of the relationship between $encode_3$ m xs and xs until after constructing an explicit definition of ebit.

Equation (25.4) suggests appeal to the fusion law of unfoldr. This law (which was used in the Appendix of the previous pearl) states that

```
unfoldr h = unfoldr f \cdot g
```

provided the following two fusion conditions are satisfied:

```
h \ x = Nothing \Rightarrow f (g \ x) = Nothing

h \ x = Just (y, x') \Rightarrow f (g \ x) = Just (y, q \ x')
```

Taking h = ebit, f = ibit and g = contract, we have to show

```
ebit \ x = Nothing \Rightarrow ibit (contract \ x) = Nothing

ebit \ x = Just \ (y, x') \Rightarrow ibit (contract \ x) = Just \ (y, contract \ x')
```

Here is the definition of *ebit* that satisfies these conditions:

```
\begin{array}{lll} ebit \ (0,(\ell,r)) & | & r \leq e_2 & = & Just \ (0,(0,(2*\ell,2*r))) \\ | & e_2 \leq \ell & = & Just \ (1,(0,(2*\ell-e_4,2*r-e_4))) \\ | & \textbf{otherwise} & = & Nothing \\ ebit \ (n+1,(\ell,r)) & | & r \leq e_2 & = & Just \ (0,(n,(\ell+2^n*e_2,r+2^n*e_2))) \\ | & e_2 \leq \ell & = & Just \ (1,(n,(\ell-2^n*e_2,r-2^n*e_2))) \\ | & \textbf{otherwise} & = & Nothing \end{array}
```

This definition will be simplified shortly. Setting $contract(n,(\ell,r)) = (\ell',r')$ it is easy to check that $r \leq e_2 \equiv r' \leq e_2$ and $e_2 \leq \ell \equiv e_2 \leq \ell'$, so the first fusion condition is satisfied. The second condition is immediate in the case n=0, since contract(0,i)=i. The remaining case comes down to the identity

$$2*shorten(n+1)x - e_4*b = shortenn(x + (1-2b)*2^n*e_2)$$

for b = 0 and b = 1, and is easily verified.

The definition of *ebit* is inefficient as well as clumsy, but it can be improved. Observe that $e_2 \leq \ell + 2^n e_2$ and $r - 2^n e_2 \leq e_2$ for all $n \geq 0$. Thus, in the case $r \leq e_2$ the computation of *unfoldr ebit* $(n, (\ell, r))$ proceeds

$$unfoldr \ ebit \ (n, (\ell, r))$$
= 0: unfoldr \ ebit \ (n-1, (\ell + 2^{n-1}e_2, r + 2^{n-1}e_2))
= 01: unfoldr \ ebit \ (n-2, (\ell + 2^{n-2}e_2, r + 2^{n-2}e_2))
= ...
= 01ⁿ⁻¹: unfoldr \ ebit \ (0, (\ell + e_2, r + e_2))
= 01^n : unfoldr \ ebit \ (0, (2\ell, 2r))

where 01^n denotes a zero followed by n ones. Similarly, if $e_2 \leq \ell$, then

$$unfoldr\ ebit\ (n,(\ell,r)) = 10^n: unfoldr\ ebit\ (0,(2\ell-e_4,2r-e_4))$$

Hence, $unfoldr\ ebit = concat \cdot unfoldr\ ebits$, where

$$\begin{array}{lll} ebits \ (n, (\ell, r)) & \\ & | \ r \leq e_2 & = \ Just \ (bits \ n \ 0, (0, (2*\ell, 2*r))) \\ & | \ e_2 \leq \ell & = \ Just \ (bits \ n \ 1, (0, (2*\ell - e_4, 2*r - e_4))) \\ & | \ \textbf{otherwise} & = \ Nothing \end{array}$$

and bits n b = b: replicate n (1 - b) returns a b followed by n copies of 1 - b. It follows that we can replace (25.3) by the equivalent but more efficient version

 $encode_3 m$

=
$$concat \cdot stream \ ebits \ enarrow \ (0, (0, 2^e)) \cdot intervals \ m$$
 (25.5)

Definition (25.5) is our final program for *encode*.

A crucial question

But, what does *encode*₃ actually do? How is its output related to its input? The version of *encode* in the previous pearl satisfied

$$toFrac\ (encode\ m\ xs)\ \in\ foldl\ (
ho)\ (0,1)\ (intervals\ m\ xs)$$

But this cannot be the case with $encode_3$.

To answer this crucial question, define the variant $encode'_3$ of $encode_3$ that includes the starting interval as an extra argument, something we could have done from the outset:

 $encode'_{3} m \ ei = concat \cdot stream \ ebits \ enarrow \ ei \cdot intervals \ m$

Then we have

$$2^e * toFrac (encode'_3 m \ ei \ xs) \in contract \ ei$$
 (25.6)

for all models m, expanded intervals ei and lists of symbols xs. Property (25.6), whose proof is given in the Appendix, is crucial for implementing decode.

A final problem

Unfortunately, (25.5) is not guaranteed to give a version of *encode* that works with limited-precision arithmetic in all cases. The problem is with the number n in a fully expanded interval (n, i). It is conceivable that n can be very large, so large that it is not representable by an element of Int. For example, imagine narrowing $(0, e_4)$ a very large number of times with an interval such as (3/8, 5/8). The narrowed interval strictly straddles e_2 , so the output of *encode* is the empty list of bits. But interval expansion applied at each step will produce an expanded interval of the form $(n, (0, e_4))$, where n can exceed the upper limit of a limited-precision integer. Of course, the situation is extremely unlikely in practice, but it is logically possible. The plain fact of the matter is that no version of arithmetic coding is guaranteed to work with any form of limited-precision arithmetic. If the situation above does arise, then the two options are either to abort encoding with a suitable error message or to switch back to rational arithmetic coding.

Inverting streams

Now we tackle the problem of decoding. The function decode is specified by the condition $xs \sqsubseteq decode \ m \ (encode \ m \ xs)$. With (25.3), or the equivalent (25.5), as the definition of encode, the only way to satisfy this condition is to show how to invert streams. To this end we will make use of a function destream defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{destream } f \; g \; h \; s \; ys & = & \textit{unfoldr } \textit{step } (s, ys) \\ \textbf{where } \textit{step } (s, ys) & = & \textbf{case } f \; s \; \textbf{of} \\ & & \textit{Just } (y, s') \; \to \; \textit{step } (s', ys \downarrow [y]) \\ & & \textit{Nothing} \; \to \; \textit{Just } (x, (g \; s \; x, ys)) \\ \textbf{where } x = h \; s \; ys \end{array}
```

The operation \downarrow is defined by $(us + vs) \downarrow us = vs$. The function destream is dual to stream: when f s produces some output y, then y is removed from the head of the input ys; when f s returns nothing, an element of the output is produced using the "helper" function h.

The relationship between *stream* and *destream* is given by the following theorem, called the *destreaming theorem*, whose proof is also given in the Appendix.

Theorem 25.1 Suppose stream f g s xs returns a finite list and h satisfies h s (stream f g s (x:xs)) = x if f s = Nothing. Under these assumptions we have $xs \sqsubseteq destream f$ g h s (stream f g s xs)

To apply the destreaming theorem to encode, take f = ebit, g = enarrow and s = ei. Then we have

$$decode m = destream \ ebit \ enarrow \ h \ (m, (0, (0, e_4)))$$

provided that the helper function h satisfies

$$h(m, ei) (encode'_3 m ei (x : xs)) = x$$

$$(25.7)$$

for all intervals ei that straddle e_2 .

Just as (25.3) can be improved to (25.5) by replacing *ebit* with *ebits*, so can the above definition of *decode*. The result is

```
decode m bs = unfoldr step (m, (0, (0, e_4)), bs)

step (m, (n, (\ell, r)), bs)

\mid r \leq e_2 = step (m, (0, (2*\ell, 2*r)), bs \downarrow bits \ n \ 0)

\mid e_2 \leq \ell = step (m, (0, (2*\ell-e_4, 2*r-e_4)), bs \downarrow bits \ n \ 1)

\mid  otherwise = Just (x, (adapt \ m \ x, enarrow (n, (\ell, r)) (interval \ m \ x), bs))

where x = h (m, (n, (\ell, r))) bs
```

It remains to discover the helper function h.

The helper function

We begin with a calculation that produces a definition of \triangleleft , the operation that plays the same role for \triangleright as \triangleleft did for \triangleright . Recall that

$$f \triangleleft (\ell, r) = (f - \ell)/(r - \ell)$$

and $f \in i \triangleright j \equiv (f \triangleleft i) \in j$. The calculation exploits an important property known as the rule of floors: $n \leq f \equiv n \leq \lfloor f \rfloor$ for all integers n and reals f. Let k, ℓ, r, p and q be any numbers. We calculate:

$$k \in (\ell, r) \blacktriangleright (p, q)$$

$$\equiv \{\text{definition of } \blacktriangleright \}$$

$$\ell + \lfloor (r - \ell) * p / 2^d \rfloor \le k < \ell + \lfloor (r - \ell) * q / 2^d \rfloor$$

$$\equiv \{\text{arithmetic}\}$$

$$\lfloor (r - \ell) * p / 2^d \rfloor < k - \ell + 1 \le \lfloor (r - \ell) * q / 2^d \rfloor$$

$$\equiv \{\text{rule of floors}\}$$

$$(r - \ell) * p / 2^d < k - \ell + 1 \le (r - \ell) * q / 2^d$$

$$\equiv \{\text{arithmetic}\}$$

$$p \le ((k - \ell + 1) * 2^d - 1) / (r - \ell) < q$$

Hence, $k \in (i \triangleright j) \equiv (k \triangleleft i) \in j$, where

(
$$\blacktriangleleft$$
) :: $Int \to Interval \to Int$
 $k \blacktriangleleft (\ell, r) = ((k - \ell + 1) * 2^d - 1) \operatorname{div}(r - \ell)$

Next, recall property (25.6) from the previous section: for all ei and xs

$$2^e * toFrac (encode'_3 m ei xs) \in contract ei$$

Equivalently, using the definition of *contract* and *widen*, we have

widen
$$n\left(2^e*toFrac\left(encode_3'\ m\left(n,i\right)xs\right)\right) \in i$$

Assuming the interval i has integer bounds and using the rule of floors again, the above is equivalent to

$$|widen\ n\ (2^e*toFrac\ (encode_3'\ m\ (n,i)\ xs))| \in i$$

Next, take (n, i) to be a fully expanded interval straddling e_2 , so

$$encode'_{3} m(n, i) (x : xs)$$

= $encode'_{3} (adapt m x) (n, i \triangleright interval m x) xs$

Then we obtain

$$\lfloor widen\ n\ (2^e*toFrac\ (encode'_3\ m\ (n,i)\ (x:xs))) \rfloor \in i \blacktriangleright interval\ m\ xs$$

Finally, recall the relationship between symbol and interval, namely that $x = symbol \ m \ n$ if and only if $n \in interval \ m \ x$. It follows that h can be defined by

$$h(m, ei) bs = symbol \ m(\lfloor widen \ n(2^e * toFrac \ bs) \rfloor \blacktriangleleft i)$$

where $(n, i) = extend \ ei$

Incremental decoding

The current definition of decode has a number of deficiencies: it uses rational arithmetic (in the computation of h, since $toFrac\ bs$ is a fraction), it is not incremental and it is very inefficient. The computation of extend is duplicated both in evaluation of h and enarrow, the function toFrac is re-evaluated for every output symbol and $widen\ n$ involves exponentiation, an expensive operation. All in all, decode sucks. But by making decode incremental we can overcome all these deficiencies.

We make *decode* incremental in three stages. First, we eliminate all dependency on the function *extend* by including the relevant computation in a revision to *step*:

```
\begin{array}{lll} step \ (m,(n,(\ell,r)),bs) \\ | \ r \leq e_2 &= step \ (m,(0,(2*\ell,2*r)),bs \downarrow bits \ n \ 0) \\ | \ e_2 \leq \ell &= step \ (m,(0,(2*\ell-e_4,2*r-e_4)),bs \downarrow bits \ n \ 1) \\ | \ e_1 \leq \ell \wedge r \leq e_3 &= step \ (m,(n+1,(2*\ell-e_2,2*r-e_2)),bs) \\ | \ \ \textbf{otherwise} &= Just \ (x,\\ & (adapt \ m \ x,(n,(\ell,r) \blacktriangleright interval \ m \ x),bs)) \\ \ \ \ \textbf{where} \ x = symbol \ m \ (\lfloor widen \ n \ (e_4*toFrac \ bs) \rfloor \blacktriangleleft (\ell,r)) \end{array}
```

The point is that, when step(m, ei, bs) returns something, ei will now be a fully expanded interval, so enarrow can be replaced by \triangleright .

Next, we show how to avoid repeated computations of toFrac. Define f and step' by

```
f \ n \ bs = widen \ n \ (e_4*toFrac \ bs)
step' \ (m, (n, i), f \ n \ bs) = step \ (m, (n, i), bs)
```

Here the idea is to maintain f n bs rather than bs as the third argument of step, where n is the expansion factor in the second argument. We leave it as an exercise to show that

$$\begin{array}{lcl} f \ 0 \ (bs \downarrow bits \ n \ b) & = & 2*f \ n \ bs - e_4*b \\ f \ (n+1) \ bs & = & 2*f \ n \ bs - e_2 \end{array}$$

This leads to the following version of decode, in which step' is renamed step again:

$$decode \ m \ bs = unfoldr \ step \ (m, (0, (0, e_4)), e_4*toFrac \ bs)$$
 (25.8)

where

$$\begin{array}{lll} step \; (m,(n,(\ell,r)),f) \\ | & r \leq e_2 & = \; step \; (m,(0,(2*\ell,2*r)),2*f) \\ | & e_2 \leq \ell & = \; step \; (m,(0,(2*\ell-e_4,2*r-e_4)),2*f-e_4) \\ | & e_1 \leq \ell \wedge r \leq e_3 & = \; step \; (m,(n+1,(2*\ell-e_2,2*r-e_2)),2*f-e_2) \\ | & \mathbf{otherwise} & = \; Just \; (x, \\ & & (adapt \; m \; x,(n,(\ell,r) \blacktriangleright interval \; m \; x),f)) \\ \mathbf{where} \; x = symbol \; m \; (|f| \blacktriangleleft (\ell,r)) \end{array}$$

```
decode m bs = unfoldr step (m, (0, e<sub>4</sub>), toInt (take e bs'), drop e bs') where bs' = bs + 1 : repeat 0

step (m, (ℓ, r), n, b : bs)

| r ≤ e<sub>2</sub> = step (m, (2*ℓ, 2*r), 2*n+b, bs)
| e<sub>2</sub> ≤ ℓ = step (m, (2*ℓ-e<sub>4</sub>, 2*r-e<sub>4</sub>), 2*n-e<sub>4</sub> + b, bs)
| e<sub>1</sub> ≤ ℓ ∧ r ≤ e<sub>3</sub> = step (m, (2*ℓ-e<sub>2</sub>, 2*r-e<sub>2</sub>), 2*n-e<sub>2</sub> + b, bs)
| otherwise = Just (x, (adapt m x, (ℓ, r) ▶ interval m x, n, b : bs))
where x = symbol m (n ◀ (ℓ, r))
```

Fig. 25.1 The final version of decode

Now we see that n is a redundant variable, so we can drop it:

Finally, we are ready for incremental computation. Observe in (25.8) that, because $e_4 = 2^e$, the term $\lfloor e_4 * toFracbs \rfloor$ depends only on the first e elements of bs. In fact

```
|e_4*toFrac\ bs| = toInt\ (take\ e\ (bs\ ++\ 1: repeat\ 0))
```

where $toInt = foldl \ (\lambda n \ b \rightarrow 2*n + b) \ 0$ converts a bit string into an integer. The string bs has to be extended with sufficient elements of $1: repeat \ 0$ to ensure that the total length of the result is a least e. Moreover, with $bs' = bs + 1: repeat \ 0$ we have

```
\lfloor 2*e_4*toFrac\ bs \rfloor = toInt\ (take\ (e+1)\ bs')
= 2*toInt\ (take\ e\ bs') + head\ (drop\ e\ bs')
```

That means we can replace the third argument f in the definition of step by a pair (n, ds), where n = toInt ($take\ e\ bs'$) and $ds = drop\ e\ bs'$ and bs' = bs + 1: $repeat\ 0$. And this leads to our final version of decode recorded in Figure 25.1

Final remarks

The reader who has followed us to the bitter end will appreciate that there is rather a lot of arithmetic in arithmetic coding, and that includes the arithmetic of folds and unfolds as well as numbers. As we said in the previous pearl, arithmetic coding is a simple idea, but one that requires care to implement with limited-precision integer arithmetic.

Appendix

The proof of Theorem 25.1 depends on the following two properties, both of which are easy consequences of the definitions of *stream* and *destream*:

```
f \ s = Nothing \Rightarrow

stream \ f \ g \ s \ (x : xs) = stream \ f \ g \ (g \ s \ x) \ xs \land

destream \ f \ g \ h \ s \ ys = x : destream \ f \ g \ h \ (g \ s \ x) \ ys

f \ s = Just \ (y, s') \Rightarrow

stream \ f \ g \ s \ xs = y : stream \ f \ g \ s' \ xs \land

destream \ f \ g \ h \ s' \ ys
```

In the first property x is defined by x = h s ys. We now prove

```
xs \sqsubseteq destream f g h s (stream f g s xs)
```

by a double induction on xs and n, where n is the length of stream f g s xs.

Case []: Immediate since [] is a prefix of every list.

Case x: xs: First consider the subcase f s = Nothing. The first property above gives

```
destream f g h s (stream f g s (x : xs))
= x : destream f g h (g z x) (stream f g (g z x) xs)
```

Since $x : xs \sqsubseteq x : xs'$ if and only if $xs \sqsubseteq xs'$, an appeal to induction establishes the case.

In the case f s = Just(y, s') the second property above gives

```
destream f g h s (stream f g s (x : xs))
= destream f g h s' (stream f g s' (x : xs))
```

But since length (stream f g z'(x : xs)) = n-1 in this case, we can again appeal to induction to establish the case and complete the proof.

The final task is to prove that $e_4*toFrac\ (encode_3'\ m\ ei\ xs) \in contract\ ei$.

The proof is by a double induction on xs and n, where n is the length of $encode'_3 \ m \ ei \ xs$.

```
Case []: In this case encode'_3 \ m \ ei [] = concat \ (unfoldr \ ebits \ ei). Now e_4*(toFrac \ (concat \ (unfoldr \ ebits \ ei))) \in contract \ ei = {definition of ebit} e_4*(toFrac \ (unfoldr \ ebit \ ei)) \in contract \ ei = {since unfoldr \ ebit = unfoldr \ ibit \cdot contract} e_4*(toFrac \ (unfoldr \ ibit \ (contract \ ei))) \in contract \ ei \(\infty \ definition \ of \ ibit\} \tag{true}
```

This establishes the case.

Case x: xs: In this case we need the following alternative definition of $encode'_3$:

```
encode'_{3} m (n, (\ell, r)) (x : xs)

\mid r \leq e_{2} = bits \ n \ 0 + encode'_{3} m (0, (2\ell, 2r)) (x : xs)

\mid e_{2} \leq \ell = bits \ n \ 1 + encode'_{3} m (0, (2\ell - e_{4}, 2r - e_{4})) (x : xs)

\mid  otherwise = encode'_{3} (adapt \ m \ x) \ ej \ xs

where ej = enarrow (n, (\ell, r)) (interval \ m \ x)
```

By induction we have $encode'_3$ (adapt m x) $ej xs \in contract ej$. But

```
contract\ (enarrow\ ei\ j)\subseteq contract\ (extend\ ei)=contract\ ei
```

This establishes the case for the third clause of $encode'_3$.

For the remaining two clauses, observe that the length of

$$encode'_{3} m (0, (2\ell-be_{4}, 2r-be_{4})) (x : xs)$$

is less than n. Hence, by induction, we have

$$e_4*toFrac\ (encode_3'\ m\ (0,(2\ell-be_4,2r-be_4))\ (x:xs))$$

 $\in\ (2\ell-b*e_4,2r-be_4)$

Finally, since $toFrac\ (bits\ n\ b\ + bs) = (2^n + (b-1) + toFrac\ bs)/2^{n+1}$, an easy calculation shows that $e_4*toFrac\ bs \in (2\ell-be_4, 2r-be_4)$ if and only if

$$e_4*toFrac\ (bits\ n\ b\ ++\ bs) \in contract\ (n,(\ell,r))$$

establishing the case and completing the proof.

The Schorr-Waite algorithm

Introduction

The Schorr–Waite algorithm is a method for marking the nodes of a directed graph reachable from a given starting node. The graph is restricted to have out-degree 2. The algorithm consists of an iterative loop that carries out a depth-first traversal of the graph, but does not use an explicit stack to control the traversal. Instead, it simulates the stack by modifying the graph, taking care to restore the graph to its initial state at the end of the marking process. The algorithm is fairly subtle. Morris (1982) described it as "that most recalcitrant algorithm" and Bornat (2000) as "the first mountain that any formalism for pointer aliasing should climb".

The aim of this pearl is to present the Schorr-Waite algorithm as an exercise in explaining an algorithm by program transformation. We begin with a simple version of the marking algorithm and then describe three transformations that result in the final algorithm. Each transformation describes a different representation of the stack, culminating in a representation as a linked list embedded in the graph.

Specification

In Schorr and Waite's formulation of the problem, the graph represents a McCarthy S-expression McCarthy (1960) and so has out-degree 2. Nodes are represented by positive integers. Thus, we declare

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{type} & Node & = & Int \\ \textbf{type} & Graph & = & Node \rightarrow (Node, Node) \end{array}
```

The operations $left, right :: Graph \rightarrow Node \rightarrow Node$ extract the information associated with a given node and

```
setl, setr :: Graph \rightarrow Node \rightarrow Node \rightarrow Graph
```

update the information associated with a node. So $left(setl\ g\ x\ y)\ x=y,$ and similarly for setr.

The marking function mark takes a graph g and a starting node root and returns a Boolean-valued function m so that m x = True if and only if node x is reachable from root. We will implement mark g as a function that returns both g and m. The reason is that the final algorithm modifies g during the course of execution; so, by showing that the various versions of mark are equivalent, we guarantee that not only is the final value of m the same for each version, but also the final value of g. Thus, mark has type

```
mark :: Graph \rightarrow Node \rightarrow (Graph, Node \rightarrow Bool)
```

A perfectly reasonable alternative is to embed the marking function in the graph, so that a graph becomes a mapping from nodes to triples. Then *mark* needs only return the final graph. But the present arrangement of keeping the marking function separate is both clearer and easier to reason about.

The function mark is implemented with a standard stack-based algorithm that carries out a depth-first search of the graph:

```
mark\ g\ root = seek0\ (g, const\ False)\ [root]
seek0\ (g, m)\ [\ ] = (g, m)
seek0\ (g, m)\ (x:xs)
\mid not\ (m\ x) = seek0\ (g, set\ m\ x)\ (left\ g\ x:right\ g\ x:xs)
\mid  otherwise = seek0\ (g, m)\ xs
```

The functions set and unset (needed later) are defined by

```
set, unset :: (Node \rightarrow Bool) \rightarrow Node \rightarrow (Node \rightarrow Bool)

set f x = \lambda y \rightarrow if y = x then True else f y

unset f x = \lambda y \rightarrow if y = x then False else f y
```

This definition of mark is our starting point.

Safe replacement

When reasoning about any algorithm that involves the manipulation of pointers, one sooner or later comes up against the problem of safe replacement. To illustrate, define the function replace by

```
replace :: Eq \ a \rightarrow (a \rightarrow b) \rightarrow a \rightarrow b \rightarrow (a \rightarrow b)
replace f \ x \ y = \lambda z \rightarrow \mathbf{if} \ z = x \ \mathbf{then} \ y \ \mathbf{else} \ f \ z
```

Thus, *replace* is a generalised version of the function *set* introduced above. When is it safe to use *replace*? For instance, when do the identities

```
map f xs = map (replace f x y) xs

filter p xs = filter (replace p x y) xs
```

hold? The answer is not surprising: it is when x is not on the list xs. The other answer, when y = f x or y = p x, is also correct but not interesting. Also not interesting is the proof of the correctness of the first answer. We will see a number of appeals to safe replacement below, all signified with the hint "safe replacement".

Eliminating duplicate entries

Returning to the problem in hand, the stack is eliminated in stages by transforming mark into successively different but equivalent versions. The aim of the first transformation is to eliminate duplicate entries on the stack by using it to store only those nodes that have been marked. This transformation sets things up for later appeals to safe replacements. The function seek0 is converted into a new function seek1, defined by

```
seek1(g, m) x xs = seek0(g, m)(x : map(right g) xs)
```

and subject to the invariant clean m xs = all m $xs \wedge nodups$ xs. Synthesizing a direct definition of seek1 is straightforward and leads to the following replacement for mark:

```
mark\ g\ root = seek1\ (g,\, const\ False)\ root\ [\ ]
seek1\ (g,\, m)\ x\ xs
\mid not\ (m\ x) = seek1\ (g,\, set\ m\ x)\ (left\ g\ x)\ (x:xs)
\mid null\ xs = (g,\, m)
\mid \mathbf{otherwise} = seek1\ (g,\, m)\ (right\ g\ (head\ xs))\ (tail\ xs)
```

Since x is added to the stack only when x is marked, and nodes are marked at most once, the new version of the stack is a clean one.

Threading the stack

The second transformation is designed to ensure that, in addition to being clean, the stack is threaded, meaning that for each pair x, y of adjacent entries, either $x = left\ g\ y$ or $x = right\ g\ y$. This is not the case with seek1. Consider the expression $seek1\ (g,m)\ (left\ g\ x)\ (x:y:xs)$, in which $left\ g\ x$ is marked but $right\ g\ x$ is not. Then seek1 replaces x on the stack with $right\ g\ x$, which is not in general the left-value or right-value of y. If, however, we can contrive to leave x on the stack, flagging it in some way to avoid processing it twice, then adding $right\ g\ x$ to the top will maintain the constraint. The element x is removed later when all of its offspring have been marked.

This effect is achieved with the help of a second marking function p. Define seek2 by

$$seek2(g, m) p x xs = seek1(g, m) x (filter p xs)$$

subject to the invariant threaded g m p x xs on the arguments of seek2, where

```
threaded g \ m \ p \ x \ xs = clean \ m \ xs \land and \ [link \ u \ v \mid (u, v) \leftarrow zip \ (x : xs) \ xs]
where link \ u \ v = if \ p \ v then u = left \ q \ v else u = right \ q \ v
```

Below we refer to the following fact with the hint "threadedness": provided m x and $x \notin xs$, we have

```
threaded g \ m \ p \ x \ xs \Rightarrow threaded \ g \ m \ (set \ p \ x) \ (left \ g \ x) \ (x : xs) \land threaded \ g \ m \ (unset \ p \ x) \ (right \ g \ x) \ (x : xs)
```

We now synthesise a new version of mark based on seek2. It is clear that

```
mark\ g\ x = seek2\ (g, const\ False)\ (const\ False)\ x\ [\ ]
```

so it remains to calculate a direct definition of seek2. In the case not (m x) we reason:

```
seek2 (g, m) p x xs
= \{definition\}
seek1 (g, m) x (filter p xs)
= \{case assumption not (m x)\}
seek1 (g, set m x) (left g x) (x : filter p xs)
= \{safe replacement, since x \notin xs\}
seek1 (g, set m x) (left g x) (x : filter (set p x) xs)
= \{since set p x x = True\}
seek1 (g, set m x) (left g x) (filter (set p x) (x : xs))
= \{definition of seek2, and threadedness\}
seek2 (g, set m x) (set p x) (left g x) (x : xs)
```

Hence, seek2(g, m) p x xs = seek2(g, set m x) (set p x) (left g x) (x : xs).

In the case m x we have to search for the first element on the stack satisfying p because that is the next element to be processed. We therefore introduce a function find2, defined by

```
find2(g, m) p xs = seek1(g, m) x (filter p xs)
```

for any marked node x and then derive a direct definition of find2 that does not depend on seek1. In the case xs is empty we have

```
find2(q, m) p[] = (q, m)
In the case xs = y : ys and not(p y), we have
   find2(q, m) p(y : ys) = find2(q, m) p ys
In the remaining case p y, we reason:
        find2(q,m) p(y:ys)
           {definition of find2 and seek1 in the case p y}
        seek1(q, m) (right q y) (filter p ys)
           {safe replacement since y \notin ys}
        seek1(q, m) (right q y) (filter (unset p y) ys)
           \{\text{since } unset \ v \ v = False\}
        seek1(q, m) (right q y) (filter (unset p y) (y: ys))
           \{definition of seek2, and threadedness\}
        seek2(q, m) (unset p y) (right q y) (y : ys)
We have shown that
   mark\ q\ root = seek2\ (q, const\ False)\ (const\ False)\ root\ [\ ]
   seek2(q,m)pxxs
```

```
not(m x) = seek2(g, set m x)(set p x)(left g x)(x : xs)
 | otherwise = find2(q, m) p xs
find2(q, m) p[] = (q, m)
find2(q, m) p(y : ys)
  not(p y) = find2(q, m) p ys
    otherwise = seek2(q, m)(unset p y)(right q y)(y : ys)
```

The two mutually recursive functions seek2 and find2 are both tail-recursive and can be implemented in an imperative style as a simple loop.

Representing the stack by a linked list

The final transformation is to represent the stack by a linked list. The cunning idea of Schorr and Waite is to store the links in the graph. Although the result is no faster than the initial version, it does use less space. The linked representation of the stack uses no separate linking function. Instead, there is an additional marking function p which, along with m, occupies just 2 bits of storage for each node in the graph.

To prepare for the final transformation, we need two pieces of information. The first is the abstraction function stack that extracts the stack from its linked representation:

$$\begin{array}{llll} stack & :: & Graph \rightarrow (Node \rightarrow Bool) \rightarrow Node \rightarrow [Node] \\ stack \ g \ p \ x & | & x == 0 & = & [\] \\ & | & p \ x & = & x : stack \ g \ p \ (left \ g \ x) \\ & | & not \ (p \ x) & = & x : stack \ g \ p \ (right \ g \ x) \end{array}$$

The node 0 is a new, special node that acts as a list terminator. Here is how to add a new node $x \neq 0$ to the stack:

$$x: stack \ g \ p \ y = stack \ (setl \ g \ x \ y) \ (set \ p \ x) \ x$$
 (26.1)

The proof of (26.1) is

```
stack (setl g x y) (set p x) x
= \{definition of stack since set p x x = True\}
x : stack (setl g x y) (set p x) (left (setl g x y) x)
= \{since left (setl g x y) x = y\}
x : stack (setl g x y) (set p x) y
= \{safe replacement, as x \notin stack (setl g x y) (set p x) y\}
x : stack q p y
```

The second piece of information is a function restore, defined by

```
restore :: Graph \rightarrow (Node \rightarrow Bool) \rightarrow Node \rightarrow [Node] \rightarrow Graph

restore g \ p \ x \ [\ ] = g

restore g \ p \ x \ (y : ys) \mid p \ y = restore (setl <math>g \ y \ x) \ p \ y \ ys

\mid not \ (p \ y) = restore (setr <math>g \ y \ x) \ p \ y \ ys
```

The function *restore* is used to restore the graph to its initial state at the end of the marking process. The motivation for the definition is that $restore\ g\ p\ x\ xs = g$ if $threaded\ g\ p\ x\ xs$, a claim we will leave as an exercise.

Having defined stack and restore, we can now define seek3 and find3:

```
seek3 (g, m) p x y = seek2 (restore g p x xs, m) p x xs
\mathbf{where} \ xs = stack \ g \ p \ y
find3 (g, m) p x y = find2 (restore g p x xs, m) p xs
\mathbf{where} \ xs = stack \ q \ p \ y
```

Synthesising a definition of mark in terms of seek3 and find3 is where the hard work begins. The first step is easy enough:

mark g root

= $\{\text{current definition of } mark\}$ seek2 (g, const False) (const False) root []

 $= \{ \text{since } restore \ g \ p \ x \ [\] = g \}$

seek2 (restore g p root [], const False) (const False) root []

= {definition of seek3 and stack} seek3 (q, const False) (const False) root 0

Hence, $mark\ g\ root = seek3\ (g, const\ False)\ (const\ False)\ root\ 0.$

Now to define seek3 (g, m) p x y directly. Suppose first that not (m x). We reason:

$$seek3 (g, m) p x y$$

$$= \{setting xs = stack g p y \text{ and } g' = restore g p x xs \}$$

$$seek2 (g', m) p x xs$$

$$= \{case not (m x) \}$$

$$seek2 (g', set m x) (set p x) (left g' x) (x : xs)$$

$$= \{safe replacement as x \notin xs \}$$

$$seek2 (g', set m x) (set p x) (left g x) (x : xs)$$

$$= \{claim: see below \}$$

$$seek2 (restore (setl g x y) (set p x) (left g x) (x : xs), set m x)$$

$$(set p x) (left g x) (x : xs)$$

= $\{(26.1) \text{ and definition of } seek3\}$ seek3 (setl g x y, set m x) (set p x) (left g x) x

Hence, seek3 (g, m) p x y = seek3 (setl g x y, set m x) (set p x) (left g x) x. The claim is that

```
restore \ g \ p \ x \ xs = restore \ (setl \ g \ x \ y) \ (set \ p \ x) \ (left \ g \ x) \ (x : xs)
```

For the proof we reason:

$$restore\ (setl\ g\ x\ y)\ (set\ p\ x)\ (left\ g\ x)\ (x:xs)$$

- = {definition of restore since set $p \ x \ x = True$ } restore (setl (setl $q \ x \ y$) x (left $q \ x$)) (set $p \ x$) $x \ xs$
- $= \{ \text{definition of } setl \}$ $restore \ g \ (set \ p \ x) \ x \ xs$
- $= \{ \text{safe replacement as } x \notin xs \}$ $restore \ q \ p \ x \ xs$

In the case m x we have

```
seek3 (g, m) p x y
= {as above, with xs = stack \ g \ p \ y \ and \ g' = restore \ g \ p \ x \ xs}
seek2 (g', m) p x xs
= {case m \ x}
find2 (g', m) p xs
= {definition of find3}
find3 (g, m) p x y
```

We tackle find3 by cases. First, find3(g, m) p x 0 = (g, m). In the case $y \neq 0$ and not(p y), we argue:

```
find3 (g, m) p x y
= \{definition of find3 and stack, with ys = stack g p (right g y)\}
find2 (restore g p x (y : ys), m) p (y : ys)
= \{definition of restore in case not (p y)\}
find2 (restore (setr g y x) p y ys, m) p (y : ys)
= \{definition of find2 in the case not (p y)\}
find2 (restore (setr g y x) p y ys, m) p ys
= \{safe replacement: ys = stack (setr g y x) p (right g y)\}
find3 (setr g y x, m) p y (right g y)
```

Hence, find3 (g, m) p x y = find3 (setr g y x, m) p y (right g y). Finally, in the most complicated case $y \neq 0$ and p y, we argue:

```
find3 (g, m) p x y
= \{definition of find3 and stack, with ys = stack g p (left g y)\}
find2 (restore g p x (y : ys), m) p (y : ys)
= \{definition of restore in case p y\}
find2 (restore (setl g y x) p y ys, m) p (y : ys)
= \{definition of find2 in the case p y\}
seek2 (restore (setl g y x) p y ys, m) (unset p y) (right g y) (y : ys)
= \{claim (see below): with
swing g y x = setr (setl g y x) y (left g y)\}
seek2 (restore (swing g y x) (unset p y) (right g y) (y : ys), m)
(unset p y) (right q y) (y : ys)
```

```
= {safe replacement: y : ys = stack (swing g y x) (unset p y) y}

seek3 (swing g y x, m) (unset p y) (right g y) y
```

Hence, find3 (g, m) p x y = seek3 (swing g y x, m) (unset p y) (right g y) y. The claim in the penultimate step is that

```
restore (setl g y x) p y ys
= restore (swing g y x) (unset p y) (right g y) (y : ys)
```

where swing $g \ y \ x = setr (setl \ g \ y \ x) \ y (left \ g \ y)$. Here is the proof:

```
restore\ (swing\ g\ y\ x)\ (unset\ p\ y)\ (right\ g\ y)\ (y:ys)
```

- = {definition of restore since unset $p \ y \ y = False$ } restore (setr (swing $g \ y \ x$) y (right $g \ y$)) (unset $p \ y$) $y \ ys$
- $= \{since setr (swing g y x) y (right g y) = setl g y x\}$ restore (setl g y x) (unset p y) y ys
- = {safe replacement as $y \notin ys$ } restore (setl q y x) p y ys

In summary:

```
mark \ g \ root = seek3 \ (g, const \ False) \ (const \ False) \ root \ 0
seek3 \ (g, m) \ p \ x \ y
\mid not \ (m \ x) = seek3 \ (setl \ g \ x \ y, set \ m \ x) \ (set \ p \ x) \ (left \ g \ x) \ x
\mid otherwise = find3 \ (g, m) \ p \ x \ y
\mid y = 0 = (g, m)
\mid p \ y = seek3 \ (swing \ g \ y \ x, m) \ (unset \ p \ y) \ (right \ g \ y) \ y
\mid otherwise = find3 \ (setr \ g \ y \ x, m) \ p \ y \ (right \ g \ y)
\text{where } swing \ g \ y \ x = setr \ (setl \ g \ y \ x) \ y \ (left \ g \ y)
```

This is the Schorr-Waite marking algorithm.

Final remarks

The Schorr–Waite algorithm was first described in Schorr and Waite (1967). Formal reasoning about the algorithm using loop invariants includes Bornat (2000), Butler (1999), Gries (1979), Morris (1982) and Topor (1979), but this list is not exhaustive. Möller (1997, 1999) used relations and relational algebras to reason about the algorithm, while Mason (1988) used *Lisp* and mutable update functions.

Any treatment of the Schorr–Waite algorithm is bound to be fairly detailed, and the present one is no different. Particularly important is the need for

various safe replacement properties. An alternative approach to safe replacement using separation logic is presented by O'Hearn *et al.* (2004). We do claim, however, that each definition of *seek* in terms of previous versions has a coherent motivation, is reasonably simple to understand and is a good way to present the algorithm.

References

- Bornat, R. (2000). Proving pointer programs in Hoare logic. LNCS 1837: 5th Mathematics of Program Construction Conference, pp. 102–26.
- Butler, M. (1999). Calculational derivation of pointer algorithms from tree operations. Science of Computer Programming 33 (3), 221–60.
- Gries, D. (1979). The Schorr–Waite graph marking algorithm. *Acta Informatica* 11, 223–32.
- McCarthy, J. (1960). Recursive functions of symbolic expressions and their computation by machine. Communications of the ACM 3, 184.
- Mason, I. A. (1988). Verification of programs that destructively manipulate data. Science of Computer Programming 10 (2), 177–210.
- Möller, B. (1997). Calculating with pointer structures. IFIP TC2/WG2.1 Working Conference on Algorithmic Languages and Calculi. Chapman and Hall, pp. 24–48.
- Möller, B. (1999). Calculating with acyclic and cyclic lists. *Information Sciences* 119, 135–54.
- Morris, J. M. (1982). A proof of the Schorr-Waite algorithm. *Proceedings of the* 1981 Marktoberdorf Summer School, ed. M. Broy and G. Schmidt. Reidel, pp. 25–51.
- O'Hearn, P. W., Yang, H. and Reynolds, J. C. (2004). Separation and information hiding. 31st Principles of Programming Languages Conference. ACM Publications, pp. 268–80.
- Schorr, H. and Waite, W. M. (1967). An efficient machine-independent procedure for garbage collection in various list structures. *Communications of the ACM* 10, 501–6.
- Topor, R. W. (1979). The correctness of the Schorr–Waite marking algorithm. *Acta Informatica* 11, 211–21.

27

Orderly insertion

Introduction

Consider the problem of inserting the elements of a list of N distinct elements of some ordered type A one by one into an initially empty array of size N in such a way that at each stage the inserted elements are in increasing order, though possibly with gaps between them. If you like, think of the list as a big pile of books on the floor in some jumbled order and the array as a bookshelf divided into slots. At each stage the books on the shelf have to be in alphabetical order. You pick up the topmost book on the pile and place it on the shelf. In general, that can only be done by moving some of the books already on the shelf to make room. The object of the exercise is to minimise the total number of moves – the distance of the move is not relevant. For example, with A = Char, one way of inserting the elements of the string "PEARLS" into an array of size 6 is given by

1	2	3	4	5	6	Moves
_	_	_	Р	_	_	0
_	\mathbf{E}	_	Ρ	_	_	0
A	_	_	\mathbf{E}	_	Ρ	2
A	_	_	\mathbf{E}	Ρ	\mathbf{R}	1
A	\mathbf{E}	L	_	Ρ	\mathbf{R}	1
A	\mathbf{E}	L	Ρ	R	\mathbf{S}	2

with a total number of six moves. Our aim in this pearl is to construct a function that does the job with a total of $\Theta(N \log^3 N)$ moves, which has been conjectured to be the best possible. The algorithm is not derived, but establishing the time bound involves some subtle calculation.

A naive algorithm

Let us begin by recording the minimum number m(N) of moves necessary to insert any list of N elements into an array of size N for $1 \le N \le 12$:

$$N = 1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 \ 6 \ 7 \ 8 \ 9 \ 10 \ 11 \ 12$$

 $m(N) = 0 \ 1 \ 2 \ 4 \ 6 \ 8 \ 11 \ 14 \ 17 \ 21 \ 24 \ 29$

It is an interesting diversion to find a strategy which guarantees that any list of six elements can be inserted in an array of size six with at most eight moves (just because PEARLS can be inserted with six moves does not mean that all six-letter words can be). No asymptotic formula for m(N) is known, though there is strong evidence that $m(N) = \Theta(N \log^3 N)$.

There is one obvious algorithm for the problem, though it has a poor worst-case performance. Insert the first element in the first position and insert subsequent elements by shifting previously inserted elements just enough spaces to make room. So, if the kth element is smaller than all previous values, the k-1 previously inserted elements have each to be shifted up one position. This naive algorithm requires N(N-1)/2 moves in the worst case.

Slightly better, but not by much, is the strategy of inserting each element in the middle of the available free slots, if any. The first $\lfloor \log N \rfloor$ elements can then be inserted without any moves. However, after half the elements have been inserted, the moves begin to build up, leading once again to a quadratic-time worst-case performance.

One reasonable refinement on the basic strategy is periodically to insert some elements in such a way as to leave an even distribution of free slots for those that follow. Suppose we choose some integer M and call elements numbered iM, where $1 \leq i \leq k$ and $kM \leq N < (k+1)M$, the special elements. A special element iM is inserted by moving every inserted element to leave an even spread, and therefore may require iM-1 moves. This gives a total cost of at most

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} (iM - 1) = \Theta(N^2/M)$$

moves for inserting all special elements.

When special element iM has been inserted, suppose the N-iM free slots are evenly distributed with, roughly, $C_i = iM/(N-iM)$ elements on either side of each free slot. The naive algorithm for inserting the next M-1 (or fewer if i=k) non-special elements can then force at most

$$\sum_{i=1}^{M-1} (jC_i + j - 1) = \Theta(C_i M^2)$$

moves. The total number of moves for inserting all the non-special elements is then

$$\Theta\left(\sum_{i=1}^{N/M} C_i M^2\right) = \Theta\left(M^2 \sum_{i=1}^{N/M} \frac{iM}{N - iM}\right) = \Theta(MN \log N)$$

Now, if we choose M so that $N^2/M \approx MN \log N$ so $M \approx \sqrt{N/\log N}$, the total number of moves is $\Theta(\sqrt{N^3 \log N})$, which is a little worse than $\Theta(N^{1.5})$.

An improved algorithm

The strategy of the previous section can be improved in two ways: we can choose a different sequence of special elements and we can choose a better method for inserting the non-special ones. The two improvements are independent, but we will need both in order to meet the required asymptotic bound.

Instead of having special elements evenly spaced, suppose we allow more of them as the slots fill up. More specifically, let the special elements be those numbered n_1, n_2, \ldots, n_k , where $n_1 = \lfloor N/2 \rfloor$, $n_2 = \lfloor 3N/4 \rfloor$, $n_3 = \lfloor 7N/8 \rfloor$ and so on up to $n_k = \lfloor (2^k - 1)N/2^k \rfloor$, where $2^{k-1} < N \le 2^k$, so $k = \lceil \log N \rceil$. For example, when N = 1000 the special elements are

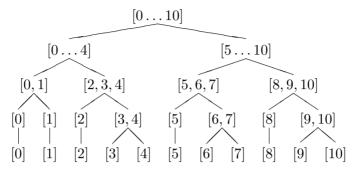
$$500,\ 750,\ 875,\ 937,\ 968,\ 984,\ 992,\ 996,\ 998,\ 999$$

The final element is inserted with at most N-1 moves. Since $k = \lceil \log N \rceil$, the total cost for inserting special elements is at most

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} (n_i - 1) \le \sum_{i=1}^{k} N = \Theta(N \log N)$$

Now we must deal with the non-special elements. Consider non-special element numbered n in phase i, meaning $n_{i-1} < n < n_i$, where $n_0 = 0$. Suppose this element needs to be inserted after the element at position p-1 but before the element at position q; in other words, in the interval [p,q). If p < q, so there are free slots, the element can be inserted at index $\lfloor (p+q)/2 \rfloor$. If p=q, so there are no free slots, the elements in some region surrounding p have to be moved to make room. The crunch question is: what region should be selected?

The answer, reasonably enough, is in a region that is not too densely occupied. Imagine the N slots are arranged as the leaves of a size-balanced tree. For example, with N=11 one possible tree is



Each insertion point p determines a unique sequence v_0, v_1, \ldots, v_k of intervals, where $v_0 = [p]$, along the path from p to the root of the tree. Let $L(v_j)$ be the length of interval v_j and $S(v_j)$ the number of currently occupied slots. The method for inserting element n in phase i is to insert n in the interval v_j , where j is the smallest integer satisfying the density condition

$$S(v_j) < \delta(i,j)L(v_j)$$

where

$$\delta(i,j) = \left(\frac{2^i - 1}{2^i}\right)^{j/k}$$

Moreover, element n and the $S(v_j)$ inserted elements are redistributed evenly across v_j , for a cost of $S(v_j)$ moves. Note that $1 = \delta(i, 0)$ and $\delta(i, j) > \delta(i, k)$ for j < k. Note also that the density condition holds at the root:

$$S(v_k) < n_i \le \left(\frac{2^i - 1}{2^i}\right) N = \delta(i, k) L(v_k)$$

So there is always an interval that satisfies the density condition. If the density condition is satisfied, then $S(v_j) < L(v_j)$, since $\delta(i,j) \le 1$. So there is always an empty slot in v_j . Finally, note that the density condition holds for a leaf v_0 whenever $S(v_0) = 0$, so the slot at the desired insertion point is unoccupied.

As a specific example, the result of inserting the nine letters of DANGER-OUS into an array of size 9 is pictured in Figure 27.1.

As to the analysis of the total cost, suppose C elements are inserted during phase i, so $C \leq N/2^i$. In the worst case, each of these elements has the same insertion point, so require insertion in some interval along some

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	Moves
_	_	_	_	D	_	_	_	_	0
_	_	A	_	D	_	_	_	_	0
_	_	A	_	D	_	_	Ν	_	0
_	A	_	D	_	G	_	N	_	2
_	A	_	D	\mathbf{E}	G	_	N	_	0
_	A	D	\mathbf{E}	_	G	N	_	\mathbf{R}	3
_	Α	D	\mathbf{E}	G	N	Ο	_	\mathbf{R}	2
A	D	\mathbf{E}	G	N	Ο	\mathbf{R}	_	U	7
A	D	\mathbf{E}	G	Ν	Ο	\mathbf{R}	\mathbf{S}	U	0

Fig. 27.1 A DANGEROUS insertion

fixed path v_0, v_1, \ldots, v_k from the insertion point to the root. Say element p, where $1 \leq p \leq C$, forces a shuffle in interval v_{j_p} . Let $S_0(v_{j_p})$ be the number of occupied slots just after the last redistribution involving the whole of v_{j_p} (which may have been when the last special element was inserted), and let $\Delta(v_{j_p}) = S(v_{j_p}) - S_0(v_{j_p})$, so $\Delta(v_{j_p}) \geq 0$.

The proofs of the following two estimates are given in the next section:

$$S(v_{j_p}) < 4k2^i(\Delta(v_{j_p}) + 1)$$
 (27.1)

$$\sum_{p=1}^{C} \Delta(v_{j_p}) \leq kC \tag{27.2}$$

Since $C \leq N/2^i$, properties (27.1) and (27.2) give

$$\sum_{p=1}^{C} S(v_{j_p}) < \sum_{p=1}^{C} 4k2^i (\Delta(v_{j_p}) + 1) \le 4k2^i (k+1)C \le 4k(k+1)N$$

The total cost for seating all non-special elements is then at most

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} 4k(k+1)N = 4k^{2}(k+1)N = \Theta(N\log^{3} N)$$

Recalling that the total cost for inserting the special elements is $\Theta(N \log N)$, we obtain the bound $\Theta(N \log^3 N)$ for the total cost. In fact, the analysis proves somewhat more: the first N/2 elements can be inserted with at most $4N \log^2 N$ moves, the first 3N/4 elements with at most $8N \log^2 N$ moves and so on. Putting it another way, if the array had size $(1 + \epsilon)N$ rather than exactly N, then N elements can be inserted with $\Theta((N \log^2 N)/\epsilon)$ moves.

Proofs

Abbreviating j_p to j, claim (27.1) is that $S(v_j) < 4k2^i(\Delta(v_j) + 1)$. Recall that $\Delta(v_j) = S(v_j) - S_0(v_j)$, that $S(v_j)$ is the number of currently occupied slots in the interval v_j and $S_0(v_j)$ was the number of occupied slots in interval v_j just after the previous distribution of some interval containing v_j . Here are the relevant properties on which the proof depends:

- (i) $S(v_j) < \delta(i,j)L(v_j)$ and $S(v_{j-1}) \ge \delta(i,j-1)L(v_{j-1})$, because v_j is the smallest interval satisfying the density condition.
- (ii) $2L(v_{j-1}) \ge L(v_j) 1$, because the tree is balanced.
- (iii) $2S_0(v_{j-1}) \leq S_0(v_j) + 1$, because the previous distribution of an interval containing v_j resulted in an even spread.
- (iv) $\Delta(v_j) \geq \Delta(v_{j-1})$, because v_{j-1} is a subinterval of v_j .

Using these facts we calculate:

$$2\Delta(v_{j})$$

$$\geq \{ \text{since } \Delta(v_{j}) \geq \Delta(v_{j-1}) \text{ and definition of } \Delta \}$$

$$2S(v_{j-1}) - 2S_{0}(v_{j-1})$$

$$\geq \{ \text{since } 2S_{0}(v_{j-1}) \leq S_{0}(v_{j}) + 1 \leq S(v_{j}) + 1 \}$$

$$2S(v_{j-1}) - S(v_{j}) - 1$$

$$\geq \{ \text{since } S(v_{j-1}) \geq \delta(i, j-1)L(v_{j-1}) \}$$

$$2\delta(i, j-1)L(v_{j-1}) - S(v_{j}) - 1$$

$$\geq \{ \text{since } 2L(v_{j-1}) \geq L(v_{j}) - 1 \}$$

$$\delta(i, j-1)(L(v_{j}) - 1) - S(v_{j}) - 1$$

$$\geq \{ \text{since } \delta(i, j)L(v_{j}) > S(v_{j}) \text{ and } \delta(i, j) \leq 1 \}$$

$$(\delta(i, j-1)/\delta(i, j) - 1)S(v_{j}) - 2$$

Hence:

$$\Delta(v_j) + 1 > \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\delta(i, j-1)}{\delta(i, j)} - 1 \right) S(v_j)$$

From the definition of $\delta(i,j)$ we obtain

$$\frac{\delta(i, j-1)}{\delta(i, j)} - 1 = \left(\frac{2^i}{2^i - 1}\right)^{1/k} - 1$$

Since $x^{1/k} = 2^{(1/k)\log x}$ and $2^y - 1 \ge y/2$ for 0 < y < 1, we then obtain

$$\frac{\delta(i,j-1)}{\delta(i,j)} - 1 \ge \frac{1}{2k} \log \left(\frac{2^i}{2^i - 1} \right)$$

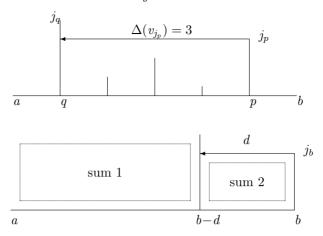


Fig. 27.2 Decomposition of P(a, b, k) into two sums

Finally, since $2^{i} \log[2^{i}/(2^{i}-1)] \ge 1$, we get $4k2^{i}(\Delta(v_{j})+1) > S(v_{j})$, which is (27.1).

Claim (27.2) is that $\sum_{p=1}^{C} \Delta(v_{j_p}) \leq kC$. More generally, we show that

$$\sum_{p=a}^{b} \Delta(v_{j_p}) \le k(b-a+1)$$

for $1 \leq a \leq b \leq C$. Let P(a, b, k) denote the sum on the left, where we have made the dependency on k, the height of the tree, explicit. Consider the sequence of points j_a, \ldots, j_b , where $0 \leq j_p \leq k$. Each point denotes the interval in which an element is inserted. The value $\Delta(v_{j_p})$ is the number of elements in the interval v_{j_p} that have been inserted since the last redistribution at an interval containing v_{j_p} , say at j_q , and is therefore equal to the number of points between q and p. The situation is depicted in the first diagram of Figure 27.2.

To estimate P(a, b, k), suppose $\Delta(v_{j_b}) = d$, so $0 \le d \le b-a$. Then P can be decomposed into two sums, as shown in Figure 27.2: the sum from a up to b-d-1 and the sum from b-d to b-1, where we know in the second sum that the maximum j value is $j_b - 1$. This leads to the estimate that P(a, b, k) is at most

$$(\max d: 0 \le d \le b-a: P(a, b-d-1, k) + P(b-d, b-1, j_b-1) + d)$$

Since $j_b \leq k$ and P is monotonic in its third argument, we have that P(a, b, k) is at most

$$(\max\ d: 0 \le d \le b-a: P(a,b-d-1,k) + P(b-d,b-1,k-1) + d)$$

Now P(a, b, k) = 0 if $b-a \le 1$ or if k = 0, and a simple induction argument yields $P(a, b, k) \le k(b-a+1)$ as required.

Implementation

Implementing the algorithm in Haskell is mostly straightforward; the only complicating factor is that various values have to be carried around. In particular, the phase number i and the size n of the array are needed in a number of calculations. The former is handled by labelling elements with their phase numbers and the latter by including n as an additional argument to certain functions.

An array is implemented as a simple association list of index-value pairs:

```
type Array a = [(Int, a)]
```

The invariant on Array a is that each index i is in the range $0 \le i < n$ and the values are stored in increasing order. The main insertion function is defined by

```
insertAll \ n = scanl (insert \ n) \ [\ ] \cdot label \ n
```

The function $insert\ n$ carries out one insertion and $label\ n$ labels elements with phase numbers. The result of $insertAll\ n$ is a list of arrays, which can be used subsequently for display purposes and for counting moves.

The code for *label* involves determining the special elements. Special elements are assigned a phase number 0 and non-special elements a phase number i, where i > 0. The special elements are given by *specials* n, where

```
specials :: Int \rightarrow [Int]

specials n = scanl1 (+) (halves n)

halves n = if n == 1 then [] else m : halves(n - m)

where m = n div 2
```

For example, specials 11 = [5, 8, 9, 10]. The function label is then defined by

```
 \begin{array}{lll} label & :: & Int \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [(Int, a)] \\ label \ n \ xs & = & replace \ 1 \ (zip \ [1..] \ xs) \ (specials \ n) \\ \end{array}
```

where replace replaces positions by phase numbers:

```
replace i [] ns = []

replace i ((k, x) : kxs) ns

| null ns = [(0, x)]

| k < n = (i, x) : replace i kxs ns

| k = n = (0, x) : replace (i+1) kxs (tail ns)

where n = head ns
```

For example, label 11 [1..11] produces the list

$$[(1,1),(1,2),(1,3),(1,4),(0,5),(2,6),(2,7),(0,8),(0,9),(0,10),(0,11)]$$

Next we deal with *insert* n, which is implemented by

```
insert :: Ord a \Rightarrow Int \rightarrow Array \ a \rightarrow (Int, a) \rightarrow Array \ a insert n as (i, x) = if i = 0 then relocate (0, n) x as else relocate (\ell, r) x as where (\ell, r) = ipick \ n as (i, x)
```

If element x is special, so its phase number is 0, then x is inserted by relocating x and all the elements in the array in the interval (0, n). If x is not special, then ipick selects the interval (ℓ, r) in which the relocation takes place.

The function *relocate* is defined by

```
relocate :: Ord a \Rightarrow (Int, Int) \rightarrow a \rightarrow Array \ a \rightarrow Array \ a
relocate (\ell, r) \ x \ as = distribute (add \ x (entries (\ell, r) \ as)) (\ell, r) \ as
```

where entries returns the (ordered) list of entries in the specified interval and add inserts x in this list. These two functions are defined by

```
entries (\ell, r) as = [x \mid (i, x) \leftarrow as, l \leq i \land i < r]
add x xs = take While (< x) xs + [x] + drop While (< x) xs
```

The function *distribute* takes an ordered list, an interval and an array and distributes the elements of the list evenly across the interval:

```
distribute :: [a] \rightarrow (Int, Int) \rightarrow Array \ a \rightarrow Array \ a
distribute xs(\ell, r) as = takeWhile (\lambda(i, x) \rightarrow i < \ell) \ as + spread \ xs(\ell, r) + dropWhile (\lambda(i, x) \rightarrow i < r) \ as
```

One way of defining *spread* is to divide both the list and interval into equal halves and recursively distribute the left half across the left interval and the right half across the right interval:

```
\begin{array}{lll} spread & :: & [a] \rightarrow (Int, Int) \rightarrow Array \ a \\ spread \ xs \ (\ell, r) & | & null \ xs \ = \ [ \ ] \\ & | & n = 0 \ = \ [(m, head \ xs)] \\ & | & n > 0 \ = \ spread \ ys \ (\ell, m) \ + \ spread \ zs \ (m, r) \\ & & \mathbf{where} \ (n, m) \ = \ (length \ xs \ \mathrm{div} \ 2, (\ell + r) \ \mathrm{div} \ 2) \\ & & (ys, zs) \ = \ splitAt \ n \ xs \end{array}
```

The next function to tackle is *ipick*. The definition is

```
\begin{array}{lll} ipick & :: & Ord \ a \Rightarrow Int \rightarrow Array \ a \rightarrow (Int, a) \rightarrow (Int, Int) \\ ipick \ n \ as \ (i, x) & = & \textbf{if} \ \ p < q \ \ \textbf{then} \ \ (p, q) \ \ \textbf{else} \\ & head \ [(\ell, r) \mid \ (j, (\ell, r)) \leftarrow zip \ [0..] \ (ipath \ n \ p), \\ & \textbf{let} \ \ s = length \ (entries \ (\ell, r) \ as), \\ & density Test \ i \ j \ n \ s \ (r - \ell)] \\ & \textbf{where} \ \ (p, q) = ipoint \ n \ x \ as \end{array}
```

First, the insertion point for element x is determined by ipoint. The result is an interval (p,q) containing no elements. If p < q, so the interval is not empty, then the result of ipick is (p,q). Subsequent relocation with (p,q) will ensure that x is placed in the middle of the interval. If p = q, so the interval is empty, then the path of intervals from the insertion point p to the root of the virtual tree is computed by ipath. The first interval satisfying the density test densityTest is then selected.

The function *ipoint* is implemented by

```
ipoint :: Ord \ a \Rightarrow Int \rightarrow a \rightarrow Array \ a \rightarrow (Int, Int)

ipoint \ n \ x \ as = search \ (0, n) \ as

where search \ (p, q) \ [\ ] = (p, q)

search \ (p, q) \ ((i, y) : as) = \mathbf{if} \ x < y \ \mathbf{then} \ (p, i)

else search \ (i+1, q) \ as
```

The value $ipath \ n \ p$ is computed by reversing the path from the root (0, n) to p:

```
ipath \ n \ p = reverse (intervals (0, n) \ p)
```

where

It remains to deal with the density test, for which we use arbitrary-precision integer arithmetic rather than real arithmetic. All five arguments of the function *densityTest* are limited-precision integers, so they have to be converted to arbitrary precision:

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{densityTest } i' \, j' \, n \, s' \, w' &=& 2 \uparrow (i * j) * s \uparrow k < (2 \uparrow i - 1) \uparrow j * w \uparrow k \\ \textbf{where} \, (i, j, s, w) &=& \textit{convert toInteger} \, (i', j', s', w') \\ k &=& \textit{toInteger} \, (\textit{ceiling} \, (\textit{logBase} \, 2 \, (\textit{fromIntegral} \, n))) \end{array}
```

The function *convert* is defined by *convert* f(a, b, c, d) = (f a, f b, f c, f d).

Final remarks

The problem of inserting elements of an ordered list of length N into an array of size N is a restricted version of a more general problem known as online list labelling (Bender et al., 2002), in which the aim is to maintain a mapping from a dynamic set of M elements (so elements can be deleted as well as inserted in the array) from some linearly ordered set to integers in the range 0 to N-1 such that the order of the labels matches the order of the corresponding elements. The primary use of online list labelling is in a related problem known as order maintenance. This problem involves maintaining a list, initially consisting of a single base element, subject to insertions, deletions and order queries. Insertions take the form insert(x,y), meaning inserting a new element x into the list immediately after the (existing) element y. The delete(x) operation deletes x from the list and query(x,y) returns true or false, depending on whether x precedes y in the list. Although order maintenance does not require that labels be attached to each element, most solutions do indeed use online labelling as a component.

The interest in the algorithm lies not, of course, in the Haskell implementation, but in the intriguing choice of density function and the analysis of why the $\Theta(N\log^3 N)$ behaviour is obtained. No-one knows whether $\Omega(N\log^3 N)$ is a lower bound on the problem, although Zhang (1993) proves that this is a lower bound for any algorithm that restricts movements to result always in a position in which the free slots are evenly spaced. The algorithm above is "smooth" in this sense, and it seems unlikely that a non-smooth algorithm could achieve fewer movements, but it appears difficult to rule such an algorithm out.

Finally, this pearl has been adapted from Bird and Sadnicki (2007), where further references to the literature of the problem can be found.

References

- Bender, M. A., Cole, R., Demaine, E. D., Frach-Colton, M. and Zito, J. (2002). Two simplified algorithms for maintaining order in a list. *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, Volume 2461. Springer-Verlag, pp. 139–51.
- Bird, R. S. and Sadnicki, S. (2007). Minimal on-line labelling. *Information Processing Letters* **101** (1), 41–5.
- Zhang, J. (1993). Density control and on-line labeling problems. Technical Report 481 and PhD thesis, Computer Science Department, University of Rochester, New York, USA.

28

Loopless functional algorithms

Introduction

Imagine a program for generating combinatorial patterns of some kind, patterns such as the subsequences or permutations of a list. Suppose that each pattern is obtained from its predecessor by a single transition. For subsequences a transition i could mean "insert or delete the element at position i". For permutations a transition i could mean "swap the item in position i with the one in position i-1". An algorithm for generating all patterns is called loopless if the first transition is produced in linear time and each subsequent transition in constant time. Note that it is the transitions that are produced in constant time, not the patterns; writing out a pattern is not usually possible in constant time.

Loopless algorithms were formulated in a procedural setting, and many clever tricks, such as the use of focus pointers, doubly linked lists and coroutines, have been used to construct them. This pearl and the following two explore what a purely functional approach can bring to the subject. We will calculate loopless functional versions of the Johnson–Trotter algorithm for producing permutations, the Koda–Ruskey algorithm for generating all prefixes of a forest and its generalisation to Knuth's *spider spinning* algorithm for generating all bit strings satisfying given inequality constraints. These novel functional algorithms rely on nothing more fancy than lists, trees and queues. The present pearl is mostly devoted to exploring the topic and giving some warm-up exercises. Bear in mind, though, that loopless algorithms are not necessarily faster than their non-loopless counterparts. To quote from Knuth (2001):

The extra contortions that we need to go through in order to achieve looplessness are usually ill-advised, because they actually cause the total execution time to be longer than it would be with a more straightforward algorithm. But hey, looplessness carries an academic cachet. So we might as well treat this task as a challenging exercise that might help us to sharpen our algorithmic wits.

Change the penultimate word to "calculational" and you will appreciate the real point of the exercise.

Loopless algorithms

We formulate the idea of a loopless algorithm in terms of the standard function unfoldr, defined by

```
unfoldr :: (b \rightarrow Maybe\ (a,b)) \rightarrow b \rightarrow [a]

unfoldr\ step\ b = case step\ b of

Just\ (a,b') \rightarrow a: unfoldr\ step\ b'

Nothing \rightarrow [\ ]
```

By definition a loopless algorithm is one that is expressed in the form

```
unfoldr\ step\cdot prolog
```

where step takes constant time and prolog x takes O(n) steps, where n is some suitable measure of the size of x. Every loopless algorithm has to be of the above form, with these constraints on the ingredients.

There is a slightly tricky problem about our formulation of looplessness. In the framework of a lazy functional language such as Haskell our definition of a loopless program will not, in general, give a loopless computation with constant delay between each output. In a lazy language, the work done by prolog is distributed throughout the computation, not concentrated all at once at the beginning. Therefore, we should really interpret the composition operator (\cdot) between $unfoldr\ step$ and prolog as being fully strict, meaning that prolog is evaluated fully before the unfolding begins. Although it is not possible to define a general fully strict composition operator in Haskell, we will take pains to ensure that prolog and step take linear and constant time under a strict as well as a lazy semantics.

Four warm-up exercises

The simplest warm-up exercise is the identity function on lists. Following the required recipe to the letter, we have

```
egin{array}{lll} id & :: & [a] 
ightarrow [a] \ id & = & unfoldr \ uncons \cdot prolog \ prolog & :: & [a] 
ightarrow [a] \ prolog & = & id \ \end{array}
```

```
uncons :: [a] \rightarrow Maybe (a, [a])

uncons [] = Nothing

uncons (x : xs) = Just (x, xs)
```

That was very easy, so now let us consider the function *reverse* that reverses a finite list. In Haskell this function is defined by

```
reverse :: [a] \rightarrow [a]
reverse = foldl (flip (:)) []
```

The combinator flip is defined by flip f x y = f y x. The above definition reverses a finite list in linear time. A loopless program for reversing a list is now given by

```
reverse = unfoldr \ uncons \cdot foldl \ (flip \ (:)) \ [\ ]
```

Of course, all the real work is done in the prologue.

For the next warm-up exercise, consider the function *concat* that concatenates a list of lists. Here is a loopless version, discussed below:

```
\begin{array}{lll} concat & :: & [[a]] \rightarrow [a] \\ concat & = & unfoldr \ step \cdot filter \ (not \cdot null) \\ step & :: & [[a]] \rightarrow Maybe \ (a, [[a]]) \\ step \ [] & = & Nothing \\ step \ ((x:xs):xss) & = & Just \ (x, consList \ xs \ xss) \\ consList & :: & [a] \rightarrow [[a]] \rightarrow [[a]] \\ consList \ xs \ xss & = & \mathbf{if} \ null \ xs \ \mathbf{then} \ xss \ \mathbf{else} \ xs : xss \\ \end{array}
```

The prologue filters out nonempty lists from the input and takes linear time in the length of the list. The function step maintains the invariant that it takes and returns a list of nonempty lists. Empty lists have to be filtered out of the input, otherwise step would not take constant time. For example, consider an input of the form $[[1],[],[],\ldots,[],[2]]$ in which there are n empty sequences between the first and last singleton lists. After producing the first element 1, it takes n steps to produce the second element 2 of the final list.

Eagle-eyed readers might complain that this definition of *concat* is overkill, since the alternative

```
concat = unfoldr \ uncons \cdot foldr \ (++) \ [\ ]
```

is also loopless. Here, the real work is done in the prologue, which takes linear time in the total *size* of the input, namely the sum of the lengths of the component lists. At issue here is the precise measure of size being used.

Since we are not going to go as far as coding every conceivable input as a string in some finite alphabet, we leave the definition of size informal and accept both definitions of *concat* as being loopless.

For the fourth and final warm-up consider the preorder traversal of a forest of rose trees:

```
type Forest \ a = [Rose \ a]

data Rose \ a = Node \ a \ (Forest \ a)
```

The preorder traversal of a forest can be defined by

```
\begin{array}{lll} preorder & :: & Forest \ a \rightarrow [a] \\ preorder [\ ] & = & [\ ] \\ preorder (Node \ x \ xs : ys) & = & x : preorder (xs + + ys) \end{array}
```

Furthermore, preorder = unfoldr step, where

```
\begin{array}{lll} step & :: & Forest \ a \rightarrow Maybe \ (a, Forest \ a) \\ step \ [ \ ] & = & Nothing \\ step \ (Node \ x \ xs : ys) & = & Just \ (x, xs + ys) \end{array}
```

The function step is not constant time because ++ is not, but we can make it so with a change of type. Instead of taking a forest as argument, we can make step take a list of forests, revising its definition to read

```
\begin{array}{lll} step & :: & [Forest \ a] \rightarrow Maybe \ (a, [Forest \ a]) \\ step \ [\ ] & = & Nothing \\ step \ ((Node \ x \ xs : ys) : zss) & = & Just \ (x, consList \ xs \ (consList \ ys \ zss)) \end{array}
```

This is essentially the same trick as we performed for concat. Now we have

```
preorder = unfoldr \ step \cdot wrapList
```

where wrapList xs = consList xs []. This is a loopless algorithm for preorder. Of course, it suffers from the same defect as concat; since the length of the output is proportional to the size of the input, we could equally well have done all the work in the prologue.

Boustrophedon product

Many combinatorial generation algorithms involve running up and down one list in between generating successive elements of another list, rather like the shuttle on a loom or an ox ploughing a field. Indeed, Knuth uses the name boustrophedon product for essentially this operation. We will call it box, and

denote it with an infix symbol \square , because the name is short, pronounceable, and contains an "ox". Here is the definition:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} (\square) & & :: & [a] \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow [a] \\ [] \square \ ys & = & ys \\ (x:xs) \square \ ys & = & ys + [x] + (xs \square \ reverse \ ys) \\ \end{array}$$

For example:

$$[3,4] \square [0,1,2] = [0,1,2,3,2,1,0,4,0,1,2]$$

The definition of \square leads to an inefficient computation, since ys is reversed at each step. Better is the following version, which reverses ys only once:

$$xs \square ys$$
 = $mix xs (ys, reverse ys)$
 $mix [] (ys, sy)$ = ys
 $mix (x : xs) (ys, sy)$ = $ys + + [x] + mix xs (sy, ys)$

The operation \square is associative with the empty list as identity element, a good reason to denote it with an infix symbol. We leave the proof of associativity to the reader, but it depends on two subsidiary identities that we will spell out now, as they are used later on:

$$(xs + [y] + ys) \square zs = (xs \square zs) + [y] + (ys \square zs')$$

$$reverse (xs \square ys) = (reverse xs) \square ys'$$

$$(28.1)$$

where zs' and ys' are defined by

```
zs' = if even (length xs) then reverse zs else zs ys' = if even (length xs) then reverse ys else ys
```

Thus, both (28.1) and (28.2) depend on parity information about the length of xs.

Just as concat distributes ++ over a list of lists, so boxall distributes \Box over a list of lists:

$$\begin{array}{lll} boxall & :: & [[a]] \rightarrow [a] \\ boxall & = & foldr \, (\Box) \, [\,] \end{array}$$

For a list of length n of lists each of length m the output of boxall has length $(m+1)^n - 1$, which is exponential in mn, the total length of the input. Now we can state our final exercise, which is to make boxall loopless.

Tupling

Since $boxall\ (xs:xss)=xs\ \Box\ (boxall\ xss)$ and the definition of $xs\ \Box\ ys$ involves $reverse\ ys$, it is clear that as well as computing $boxall\ we$ also need

to compute $reverse \cdot boxall$. That suggests it is sensible to construct both boxall and $reverse \cdot boxall$ at the same time. To do so we make use of the tupling law of foldr. This law states that

$$(foldr f \ a \ xs, foldr g \ b \ xs) = foldr h (a, b) \ xs$$

where
$$h x (y, z) = (f x y, g x z)$$
.

Suppose we can find an operation \boxtimes so that

$$reverse \cdot boxall = foldr(\boxtimes)[]$$

Then the tupling law of foldr gives

$$(boxall \ xs, reverse \ (boxall \ xs)) = foldr \ op \ ([\], [\]) \ xs$$

where

$$op \ xs \ (ys, sy) = (xs \square ys, xs \boxtimes sy) \tag{28.3}$$

The sequences ys and sy are each the reverse of the other, hence their names. To discover \boxtimes we appeal to the fusion law of foldr. This law states that $f(foldr \ g \ a \ xs) = foldr \ h \ b \ xs$ for all finite lists xs provided $f(gxy) = h \ x(fy)$ for all x and y. We have $f(gxy) = h \ x(fy)$ for all x and y. We have $f(gxy) = h \ x(fy)$ for all x and y. We have $f(gxy) = h \ x(fy)$ for all x and y.

$$reverse (xs \square ys) = xs \boxtimes (reverse ys)$$

Since reverse $(reverse \ xs) = xs$ for all finite lists xs, we can define

$$xs \boxtimes sy = reverse(xs \square (reverse sy))$$

We can also give a direct, recursive definition of \boxtimes :

$$[] \boxtimes sy = sy (x:xs) \boxtimes sy = (xs \boxtimes (reverse sy)) + [x] + sy$$

Alternatively, we can express \boxtimes by appealing to (28.2):

$$xs \boxtimes sy =$$
if $even(length xs)$ **then** $(reverse xs) \square (reverse sy)$ **else** $(reverse xs) \square sy$

Using (28.3) and the definition of \square , the first recursive definition of \boxtimes leads to the following definition of op, renamed as op1:

$$op1[](ys, sy) = (ys, sy)$$

 $op1(x:xs)(ys, sy) = (ys + [x] + zs, sz + [x] + sy)$
 $\mathbf{where}(zs, sz) = op1 xs(sy, ys)$

Using (28.3) and the definition of \square in terms of mix, the second definition of \boxtimes leads to the following definition of op, renamed as op2:

```
op2 \ xs \ (ys, sy) =  if even \ (length \ xs) then (mix \ xs \ (ys, sy), mix \ (reverse \ xs) \ (sy, ys)) else (mix \ xs \ (ys, sy), mix \ (reverse \ xs) \ (ys, sy))
```

The difference between op1 and op2 is that the latter uses reverse explicitly while the former does not. Ignoring the cost of + operations, evaluation of either op1 xs or op2 xs takes time proportional to the length of xs, so both foldr op1([],[]) and foldr op2([],[]) take time proportional to the total size of the input. We keep both definitions, op1 and op2, in play because they lead to two different loopless versions of boxall.

Trees and queues

The final step is to eliminate the expensive # operations. This is achieved in two stages, the first of which is to represent lists by forests of rose trees under the abstraction function *preorder*. Then we have

```
boxall = preorder \cdot fst \cdot foldr \ op1'([],[])

boxall = preorder \cdot fst \cdot foldr \ op2'([],[])
```

where op1' is specified by

```
pair\ preorder\ (op1'\ xs\ (ys,sy)) = op1\ xs\ (preorder\ ys,preorder\ sy)
```

and pair f(x, y) = (f x, f y). Similarly for op2' and op2. We know from the warm-ups how to make preorder loopless, so provided op1' xs and op2' xs take time proportional to the length of xs, either of the above is a loopless program for boxall.

The definitions of op1' and op2' can be calculated formally, but the results are sufficiently clear that we will not go into details. First:

```
op1' :: [a] \rightarrow (Forest \ a, Forest \ a) \rightarrow (Forest \ a, Forest \ a)

op1'[] (ys, sy) = (ys, sy)

op1' (x : xs) (ys, sy) = (ys + [Node \ x \ zs], sz + [Node \ x \ sy])

\mathbf{where} \ (zs, sz) = op1' \ xs \ (sy, ys)
```

Second, with a new version of mix:

```
op2' xs (ys, sy) = if even (length xs)

then (mix xs (ys, sy), mix (reverse xs) (sy, ys))

else (mix xs (ys, sy), mix (reverse xs) (ys, sy))
```

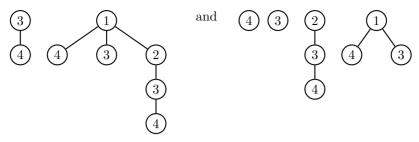


Fig. 28.1 Two forests produced by $foldr \ op1'([],[])[[1,2],[3,4]]$

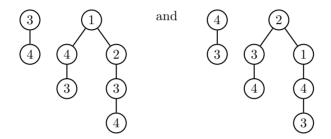


Fig. 28.2 Two forests produced by $foldr \ op2'$ ([], []) [[1,2], [3,4]]

```
mix [] (ys, sy) = ys

mix (x : xs) (ys, sy) = ys + [Node x (mix xs (sy, ys))]
```

The definitions of op1' and op2' lead to different pairs of forests. For example, see Figures 28.1 and 28.2. In each case the preorders of the pair of forests are the same, so either definition will serve.

We are still not quite out of the wood yet, for appending a tree to the end of a forest is not a constant-time operation. Obvious ideas for solving this problem, such as turning appends into cons operations by reversing the forest, or bringing in an accumulating parameter, do not work. The most direct method, and one we will exploit for other purposes in subsequent pearls, is to introduce queues, redefining a forest to be a queue of trees rather than a list. Okasaki's implementation of queues provides a type Queue a, for which the following operations all take constant time:

insert :: $Queue \ a \rightarrow a \rightarrow Queue \ a$ remove :: $Queue \ a \rightarrow (a, Queue \ a)$

empty :: Queue a

 $isempty :: Queue \ a \rightarrow Bool$

To install queues, we redeclare the type Forest to read

```
\mathbf{type} \ Forest \ a = Queue \ (Rose \ a)
\mathbf{data} \ Rose \ a = Node \ a \ (Forest \ a)
```

The functions op1' and op2' are the same as before except that expressions of the form $as + [Node\ x\ bs]$ are replaced by $insert\ as\ (Node\ x\ bs)$. Now we have

```
boxall = unfoldr step \cdot wrap Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr op 1' (empty, empty)
   boxall = unfoldr step \cdot wrap Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr op 2' (empty, empty)
where
                         :: [Forest \ a] \rightarrow Maybe (a, [Forest \ a])
   step
   step []
                             Nothing
                         = Just(x, consQueue xs(consQueue ys zss))
   step(zs:zss)
                             where (Node\ x\ xs, ys) = remove\ zs
   consQueue
                             Queue\ a \rightarrow [Queue\ a] \rightarrow [Queue\ a]
   consQueue xs xss
                         = if isempty xs then xss else xs : xss
                         :: Queue \ a \rightarrow [Queue \ a]
   wrapQueue
   wrapQueue xs
                         = consQueue xs[]
```

Both definitions of *boxall* are loopless.

Final remarks

The term loopless was coined by Ehrlich (1973). A number of loopless algorithms for generating combinatorial patterns appear in Knuth's published drafts of three sections of Volume 4 of *The Art of Computer Programming* (Knuth, 2005). These fascicles contain references to much of the literature on looplessness. The quote from Knuth appears in Knuth (2001). Okasaki's implementation of queues can be found in Okasaki (1995).

References

Ehrlich, G. (1973). Loopless algorithms for generating permutations, combinations, and other combinatorial configurations. *Journal of the ACM* **20**, 500–13.

Knuth, D. E. (2001). SPIDERS: a program downloadable from www-cs-faculty.stanford.edu/~knuth/programs.html.

Knuth, D. E. (2005). The Art of Computer Programming, Volume 4, Fascicles 2,3,4. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.

Okasaki, C. (1995). Simple and efficient purely functional queues and deques. Journal of Functional Programming 5 (4), 583–92.

The Johnson-Trotter algorithm

Introduction

The Johnson–Trotter algorithm is a method for producing all the permutations of a given list in such a way that the transition from one permutation to the next is accomplished by a single transposition of adjacent elements. In this pearl we calculate a loopless version of the algorithm. The main idea is to make use of one of the loopless programs for the generalised boustrophedon product boxall developed in the previous pearl.

A recursive formulation

In the Johnson-Trotter permutation algorithm the transitions for a list of length n of length greater than one are defined recursively in terms of the transitions for a list of length n-1. Label the elements of the list with positions 0 through n-1 and let the list itself be denoted by xs + [x]. Begin with a downward run [n-1, n-2, ..., 1], where transition i means "interchange the element at position i with the element at position i-1". The effect is to move x from the last position to the first, resulting in the final permutation [x] + xs. For example, the transitions [3, 2, 1] applied to the string "abcd" result in the three permutations "abdc", "adbc" and "dabc". Next, suppose the transitions generating the permutations of xs are $[j_1, j_2, \ldots]$. Apply the transition j_1+1 to the current permutation [x] + xs. We have to increase j_1 by one because xs is now one position to the right of the "runner" x. Next, run x upwards again to the last position by applying the transition sequence $[1,2,\ldots,n-1]$. This results in a final permutation ys + [x], where ys is the result of applying transition j_1 to xs. For example, the transitions [3, 1, 2, 3]applied to "dabc" result in four more permutations "dacb", "adcb", "acdb" and "acbd". For the next step, apply the second transition j_2 for xs and run x down again. We do not have to modify the transition j_2 after upward runs because the relevant permutation is to the left of x. Continue in the same fashion, interleaving runs of x downwards and upwards, with the transitions for n-1.

The above description codes quite easily using the boustrophedon product (\Box) defined in the previous pearl:

```
jcode :: Int \rightarrow [Int]

jcode 1 = []

jcode n = (bumpBy 1 (jcode (n-1))) \square [n-1, n-2..1]
```

The function bumpBy k adds k to every item in even position:

```
\begin{array}{lll} bumpBy \ k \ [ \ ] & = \ [ \ ] \\ bumpBy \ k \ [a] & = \ [a+k] \\ bumpBy \ k \ (a:b:as) & = \ (a+k):b:bumpBy \ k \ as \end{array}
```

Our task is to make *jcode* loopless.

The plan

The general plan is to express jcode in terms of boxall, the generalised boustrophedon product defined in the previous pearl, and then to appeal to the loopless algorithm for boxall. To do so we need to generalise jcode. Consider the function code, defined by

```
code(k, n) = bumpBy k (jcode n)
```

Clearly, $jcode \ n = code \ (0, n)$. We reason for an odd positive integer n that

$$code(k, n)$$
 {definition}

 $bumpBy \ k \ (jcode \ n)$

= {definition of
$$jcode$$
}
 $bumpBy \ k \ (bumpBy \ 1 \ (jcode \ (n-1)) \square \ [n-1, n-2 \dots 1])$

= {claim, see below}

$$bumpBy\ (k+1)\ (jcode\ (n-1))\ \Box\ bumpBy\ k\ [n-1,n-2\ ..\ 1]$$

= {definition of code and bumpDn (see below)} $code(k+1, n-1) \square bumpDn(k, n)$

where bumpDn (pronounced "bump down") is defined by

$$bumpDn(k, n) = bumpBy \ k \ [n-1, n-2..1]$$
 (29.1)

The first claim is that

```
bumpBy \ k \ (xs \square ys)
= if even \ (length \ ys) then bumpBy \ k \ xs \square \ bumpBy \ k \ ys
else xs \square \ bumpBy \ k \ ys
```

The claim can be proved from the definition of \square and the fact that

$$bumpBy \ k \ (xs + [y] + ys)$$
= **if** $even \ (length \ xs)$ **then** $bumpBy \ k \ xs + bumpBy \ k \ ([y] + ys)$
else $bumpBy \ k \ xs + [y] + bumpBy \ k \ ys$

The easy details are left as an exercise.

The case when n is even is treated similarly, and we arrive at the following definition of code:

$$code(k,1) = []$$

 $code(k,n) = code(k', n-1) \square bumpDn(k, n)$
where $k' = if odd n then k+1 else 1$

For example, bearing in mind that \square is associative, we have

$$code (0,4) = bumpDn (2,2) \square bumpDn (1,3) \square bumpDn (0,4)$$

Recalling that $boxall = foldr(\square)[]$, we can now rewrite code in the form

$$code = boxall \cdot map \ bump Dn \cdot pairs$$

where

$$\begin{array}{lll} pairs & :: & (Int,Int) \rightarrow [(Int,Int)] \\ pairs (k,1) & = & [] \\ pairs (k,n) & = & pairs (k',n-1) + + [(k,n)] \\ & & & \mathbf{where} \ k' = \mathbf{if} \ odd \ n \ \mathbf{then} \ k+1 \ \mathbf{else} \ 1 \end{array}$$

Again, the easy details are left as an exercise. Evaluating pairs (k, n) takes $\Theta(n^2)$ steps, but this can be reduced to $\Theta(n)$ steps with the help of an accumulating parameter. Define addpair by

$$addpair(k, n) ps = pairs(k, n) + ps$$

Synthesizing a direct definition of addpair leads to

```
\begin{array}{lll} pairs \ (k,n) & = & addpair \ (k,n) \ [ \ ] \\ addpair \ (k,1) \ ps & = & ps \\ addpair \ (k,n) \ ps & = & addpair \ (k',n-1) \ ((k,n):ps) \\ & & & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & &
```

Hence, since $jcode \ n = code \ (0, n)$, we obtain

```
jcode = boxall \cdot map \ bumpDn \cdot pairs

where pairs \ n = addpair \ (0, n) \ [\ ]
```

Since we know how to make *boxall* loopless, this definition of *jcode* is a loopless algorithm. Or is it?

A loopless algorithm

No, it is not: part of the prologue is $map\ bumpDn\ (pairs\ n)$, and this takes $\Theta(n^2)$ steps. The rules of the game only allow a prologue that takes $\Theta(n)$ steps.

What we really need to do is make $boxall \cdot map\ bumpDn$ loopless. It is easy to make bumpDn loopless, so let us first do that. Recall definition (29.1):

```
bumpDn(k, n) = bumpBy \ k \ [n-1, n-2..1]
```

To make bumpDn loopless we can set up a state consisting of a quadruple (j, k, m, n) in which the first component j begins with k and then flips alternately between 0 and k, the second and fourth components k and n do not change and the third component m counts down from n-1 to 1. Then we have

```
\begin{array}{lll} bumpDn & = & unfoldr \ stepDn \cdot prologDn \\ prologDn \ (k,n) & = \ (k,k,n{-}1,1) \\ stepDn \ (j,k,m,n) & = \ \textbf{if} \ m < n \ \textbf{then} \ Nothing \\ & \quad \textbf{else} \ Just \ (m+j,(k-j,k,m{-}1,n)) \end{array}
```

Similarly, we can make $reverse \cdot bumpDn$ loopless:

```
reverse \cdot bumpDn = unfoldr \ step Up \cdot prolog Up

prolog Up \ (k, n) = (if \ even \ n \ then \ k \ else \ 0, k, 1, n-1)

step Up \ (j, k, m, n) = if \ m > n \ then \ Nothing

else \ Just \ (m + j, (k - j, k, m + 1, n))
```

The functions step Dn and step Up can be unified as one function, bump say (we need the name step for another purpose later on), by adding in a fifth component i, taking i = -1 for a down-step and i = 1 for an up-step. That gives

```
bumpDn = unfoldr \ bump \cdot prologDn

reverse \cdot bumpDn = unfoldr \ bump \cdot prologUp
```

where

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textit{bump}\;(i,j,k,m,n) & = & \textbf{if}\;\; i*(n-m) < 0 \;\; \textbf{then}\;\; \textit{Nothing} \\ & & \textbf{else}\;\; \textit{Just}\;(m+j,(i,k-j,k,m+i,n)) \\ \textit{prologDn}\;(k,n) & = & (-1,k,k,n-1,1) \\ \textit{prologUp}\;(k,n) & = & (1,\textbf{if}\;\; \textit{even}\;n \;\; \textbf{then}\;\; k \;\; \textbf{else}\;\; 0,k,1,n-1) \end{array}
```

Next, recall from the previous pearl that one loopless definition of boxall takes the form $boxall = unfoldr \ step \cdot prolog$, where

```
prolog = wrapQueue \cdot fst \cdot foldr \ op \ (empty, empty)
```

The function op was defined by

```
op \ xs \ (ys, sy) = \mathbf{if} \ even \ (length \ xs)
\mathbf{then} \ (mix \ xs \ (ys, sy), mix \ (reverse \ xs) \ (sy, ys))
\mathbf{else} \ (mix \ xs \ (ys, sy), mix \ (reverse \ xs) \ (ys, sy))
mix \ [\ ] \ (ys, sy) = ys
mix \ (x : xs) \ (ys, sy) = insert \ ys \ (Node \ x \ (mix \ xs \ (sy, ys)))
```

The function step was defined by

```
step \ [\ ] = Nothing
step \ (zs:zss) = Just \ (x, consQueue \ xs \ (consQueue \ ys \ zss))
where \ (Node \ x \ xs, ys) = remove \ zs
consQueue = :: Queue \ a \rightarrow [Queue \ a] \rightarrow [Queue \ a]
consQueue \ xs \ xss = if \ isempty \ xs \ then \ xss \ else \ xs : xss
wrapQueue = :: Queue \ a \rightarrow [Queue \ a]
wrapQueue \ xs = consQueue \ xs \ [\ ]
```

We reason:

jcode

- $= \{ \text{definition of } jcode \text{ in terms of } boxall \}$ $boxall \cdot map \ bumpDn \cdot pairs$
- = {loopless definition of boxall} $unfoldr\ step \cdot wrap\ Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr\ op\ (empty, empty) \cdot map\ bump\ Dn \cdot pairs$
- = $\{\text{fold-map fusion}\}\$ $unfoldr\ step \cdot wrap\ Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr\ op'\ (empty, empty) \cdot pairs$

where

$$op'(k, n)(ys, sy) = op(bumpDn(k, n))(ys, sy)$$

Unfolding this definition, and using the fact that bumpDn (k, n) has even length if n is odd, together with the definitions of prologDn and prologUp, we find

```
op'(k, n) (ys, sy)
= if odd n
then (mix (unfoldr \ bump (-1, k, k, n-1, 1)) (ys, sy), mix (unfoldr \ bump (1, 0, k, 1, n-1)) (sy, ys))
else (mix (unfoldr \ bump (-1, k, k, n-1, 1)) (ys, sy), mix (unfoldr \ bump (1, k, k, 1, n-1)) (ys, sy))
```

The function op'(k, n) takes $\Theta(n)$ steps, so $foldr\ op'(empty, empty)$ takes quadratic time. We can make op' less busy by taking $unfoldr\ bump$ out of its definition and letting a modified version of step do all the work. In effect, we delay the evaluation of the first argument of mix. We will need a new data type to represent delayed evaluations, and we take

```
type Forest a = Queue (Rose a)
data Rose a = Node a (Forest a, Forest a)
```

The new definition of a rose tree has a pair of forests as offspring rather than a single forest. Now consider a new version of step, defined by

```
type State = (Int, Int, Int, Int, Int)

type Pair a = (a, a)

step :: [Forest (Int, State)] \rightarrow Maybe (Int, [Forest (Int, State)])

step [] = Nothing

step(zs : zss)

= Just (x, consQueue (mix q (sy, ys)) (consQueue zs' zss))

where (Node (x, q) (ys, sy), zs') = remove zs

where mix is modified to read
```

```
mix :: State \rightarrow Pair (Forest (Int, State)) \rightarrow Forest (Int, State)

mix (i, j, k, m, n) (ys, sy)

= if i * (n-m) < 0 then ys

else insert \ ys \ (Node \ (m+j, (i, k-j, k, m+i, n)) \ (ys, sy))
```

The function step generates the next transition x and passes the state q (a quintuple) to mix, which computes the next transition, if there is one, and a new state. We now claim that

```
jcode = unfoldr \; step \cdot wrap Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr \; op' \; (empty, empty) \cdot pairs where op' is redefined to read
```

Once again, details are left as an exercise. The rather long prologue

```
prolog = wrap Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr \ op' \ (empty, empty) \cdot pairs
```

takes $\Theta(n)$ steps when applied to n, and step takes constant time, so this finally is a genuine 24-carat loopless program for jcode.

Final remarks

If it were not for the very picky requirement that the prologue had to take linear time, we could have stopped calculating as soon as we had reached the definition

```
jcode = boxall \cdot map \ bump Dn \cdot pairs
```

What this definition really shows is the usefulness of the generalised boustrophedon product function *boxall* in the generation of many kinds of combinatorial patterns. We will see more uses in the final pearl.

The Johnson-Trotter algorithm was described independently in Johnson (1963) and Trotter (1962). As mentioned in the previous pearl, Ehrlich (1973), which introduced the concept of a loopless algorithm, was mainly devoted to describing a loopless program for the Johnson-Trotter algorithm.

References

- Ehrlich, G. (1973). Loopless algorithms for generating permutations, combinations, and other combinatorial configurations. *Journal of the ACM* **20**, 500–13.
- Johnson, S. M. (1963). Generation of permutations by adjacent transpositions. *Mathematics of Computation* 17, 282–5.
- Trotter, A. F. (1962). Perm (Algorithm 115). Communications of the ACM 5, 434–5.

30

Spider spinning for dummies

Oh what a tangled web we weave when first we practise to derive. (With apologies to Sir Walter Scott)

Introduction

Consider the problem of generating all bit strings $a_1 a_2 \dots a_n$ of length n satisfying given constraints of the form $a_i \leq a_j$ for various i and j. The generation is to be in *Gray path order*, meaning that exactly one bit changes from one bit string to the next. The transition code is a list of integers naming the bit that is to be changed at each step. For example, with n=3, consider the constraints $a_1 \leq a_2$ and $a_3 \leq a_2$. One possible Gray path is 000, 010, 011, 111, 110 with transition code [2,3,1,3] and starting string 000.

The snag is that the problem does not always have a solution. For example, with n=4 and the constraints $a_1 \leq a_2 \leq a_4$ and $a_1 \leq a_3 \leq a_4$, the six possible bit strings, namely 0000, 0001, 0011, 0101, 0111 and 1111, cannot be permuted into a Gray path. There are four strings of even weight (the numbers of 1s) and two of odd weight, and in any Gray path the parity of the weights has to alternate.

Constraints of the form $a_i \leq a_j$ on bit strings of length n can be represented by a digraph with n nodes in which a directed edge $i \leftarrow j$ is associated with a constraint $a_i \leq a_j$. Knuth and Ruskey showed how to construct a Gray path provided the digraph was totally acyclic, meaning that the undirected graph obtained by dropping the directions on the edges is acyclic. They called a connected totally acyclic digraph a spider, because when an edge $i \leftarrow j$ is drawn with i below j the digraph can be made to look like an arachnid (see Figure 30.1 for a three-legged spider). They called a totally acyclic digraph a tad, but, since its connected components are spiders, we will continue the arachnid metaphor and call it a nest of spiders.

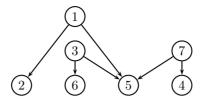


Fig. 30.1 A three-legged spider

Knuth named the problem of generating the associated bit strings in Gray path order spider squishing. The more formal rendering of the task is: "generating all ideals¹ of a totally acyclic poset in Gray path order". Since spiders are good for the environment and should never be squished, we will call it spider spinning instead.

A useful way to think of the problem of spider spinning is in terms of colourings. Think of the nodes of the spider of Figure 30.1 as being coloured black if the associated bit is 1 and coloured white if the bit is 0. Thus, every descendant of a white node has to be white. For example, if node 1 is white, then nodes 2 and 5 have to be white as well. The problem of spider spinning is then to enumerate all legal colourings by starting with one such colouring and changing the colour of exactly one node at each step. As we will see, the initial colouring cannot in general be chosen to be the all-white or all-black colouring.

Our aim in this pearl is to derive a loopless algorithm for spider spinning. Knuth and Ruskey gave an algorithm for spider spinning, but it was not loopless. There is a program, SPIDERS, on Knuth's website that does perform loopless spider spinning. It is quite complicated, as Knuth readily admits:

But I apologize at the outset that the algorithm seems to be rather subtle, and I have not been able to think of any way to explain it to dummies.

Hence our title. Our aim in this pearl is to calculate a loopless algorithm for spider spinning. I have no idea if my algorithm bears any relationship to Knuth's algorithm, since I can't explain his algorithm either.

Spider spinning with tree spiders

Let us first consider the simpler problem of spider spinning when each spider is just a tree, so all spiders' legs are directed downwards. This special case

¹ By an ideal of a poset S is meant a subset I of S such that if $x \in I$ and $x \leq y$, then $y \in I$.

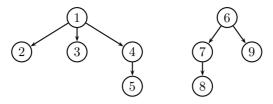


Fig. 30.2 A nest of two tree spiders

of spider spinning was considered by Koda and Ruskey. The relevant data type declarations are

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{type} & \textit{Nest} & = & [\textit{Spider}] \\ \textbf{data} & \textit{Spider} & = & \textit{Node Int Nest} \end{array}
```

A nest of two tree spiders is pictured in Figure 30.2. We will suppose that the labels of nodes in a nest of spiders of size n are the elements of [1..n] in some order. We can define ncode and scode, the transition codes for a nest of spiders and a single spider respectively, using the generalised boustrophedon product function boxall:

```
egin{array}{lll} ncode & :: & Nest 
ightarrow [Int] \\ ncode & :: & boxall \cdot map \ scode \\ scode & :: & Spider 
ightarrow [Int] \\ scode \ (Node \ a \ xs) & = & a : ncode \ xs \\ \end{array}
```

The transition code for a single spider consists of an initial transition to change the colour of the root node (in fact, from white to black), followed by a complete list of the transitions for the nest of its subspiders. The definition of *ncode* is short and sweet, but not loopless.

A loopless program

The first step on the path to looplessness is dictated solely by the form of the definition of ncode. Recalling that boxall = foldr (\square) [], an application of the map-fusion law of foldr yields

$$ncode = foldr((\Box) \cdot scode)[]$$

The focus now is on the function $(\Box) \cdot scode$. We calculate:

```
scode (Node \ a \ xs) \square \ bs
= \{definition \ of \ scode\}
(a: ncode \ xs) \square \ bs
```

= {definition of
$$\square$$
}
 $bs + + [a] + + (ncode \ xs \square (reverse \ bs))$
= {initial definition of $ncode$ }
 $bs + + [a] + + (boxall (map \ scode \ xs) \square (reverse \ bs))$

The third term of this expression takes the form

```
(foldr(\Box)[]ass)\Box cs
```

in which $ass = map\ scode\ xs$ and $cs = reverse\ bs$. This suggests the use of the fold-fusion law of foldr. Setting $f\ as = as\ \Box\ cs$, we have that f is strict and f [] = cs, since [] is the identity of \Box . Hence, the fold-fusion law gives

```
(foldr(\Box)[]ass)\Box cs = foldr h cs ass
```

provided we can find an h such that $(as \square bs) \square cs = h$ as $(bs \square cs)$. But \square is associative, so we can take $h = (\square)$.

Putting these calculations together, we obtain:

```
scode (Node \ a \ xs) \square \ bs
= \{above\}
bs + [a] + (boxall (map \ scode \ xs) \square (reverse \ bs))
= \{fold \ fusion\}
bs + [a] + foldr (\square) (reverse \ bs) (map \ scode \ xs)
= \{map \ fusion\}
bs + [a] + foldr ((\square) \cdot scode) (reverse \ bs) \ xs
```

Hence, setting $op = (\Box) \cdot scode$, we have calculated that

```
ncode = foldr \ op \ [\ ]
op \ (Node \ a \ xs) \ bs = bs + + [a] + + foldr \ op \ (reverse \ bs) \ xs
```

The remaining steps are to eliminate reverse by computing both ncode and $reverse \cdot ncode$ at the same time, and to represent each of their results by a queue of rose trees under the abstraction function preorder. Rose trees are here declared by

```
type Forest \ a = Queue \ (Rose \ a)

data Rose \ a = Fork \ a \ (Forest \ a)
```

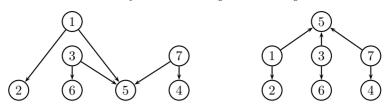


Fig. 30.3 A spider and an associated tree

We have performed these steps with the derivation of a loopless program for boxall, so we will just state the result:

```
ncode = unfoldr \ step \cdot wrap \ Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr \ op \ (empty, empty)
op \ (Node \ a \ xs) \ (bs, sb)
= (insert \ bs \ (Fork \ a \ cs), insert \ sc \ (Fork \ a \ sb))
\mathbf{where} \ (cs, sc) = foldr \ op \ (sb, bs) \ xs
```

The remaining functions *step* and *wrapQueue* are exactly as they were defined in the loopless algorithm for *boxall*. Since *foldr op* (*empty*, *empty*) takes linear time in the size of the nest, this is a loopless program for *ncode*.

Spider spinning with general spiders

Now we are ready to tackle the general spider-spinning problem. First, observe that by picking a spider up by one of its nodes we get a tree with directed edges, such as that shown in Figure 30.3. Different trees arise depending on which node is picked up, but they all represent the same constraints. It follows that we can model general spiders with the type declarations

```
\begin{array}{lll} \textbf{type} & \textit{Nest} & = & [\textit{Spider}] \\ \textbf{data} & \textit{Spider} & = & \textit{Node Int [Leg]} \\ \textbf{data} & \textit{Leg} & = & \textit{Dn Spider} \mid \textit{Up Spider} \end{array}
```

A spider has legs, not edges. A spider's leg points upwards or downwards to another spider.

There is one complication when dealing with general spiders that does not arise with simpler species: the starting bit string is not necessarily a string consisting of all 0s. For example, with n = 3 and the constraints $a_1 \ge a_2 \le a_3$, the five possible bit strings, namely 000, 001, 100, 101 and 111, can only be arranged in Gray path order by starting with one of the odd-weight strings: 001, 100, or 111. However, we postpone consideration of

the function $seed :: Nest \rightarrow [Bit]$ for determining the starting string until later on.

As with tree spiders, we can define

```
ncode :: Nest \rightarrow [Int]

ncode = boxall \cdot map \ scode
```

We define *scode* to be the concatenation of two lists, a white code and a black code:

The white code, wcode, for a spider $Node\ a\ legs$ is a valid transition sequence when the head node a is coloured white (corresponding to a 0 bit) and the black code is a valid sequence when a is coloured black (corresponding to a 1 bit). Thus, scode is defined as the sequence that goes through the white code, changes the colour of a from white to black and then goes through the black code. Note that when the spiders are tree spiders, so all legs point downwards, the white code is the empty sequence.

For scode to be correct, the final spider colouring after executing wcode legs has to be the initial colouring on which bcode legs starts. In order for the colourings to match up we need to define wcode in terms of a variant of \square , which we will denote by \lozenge and pronounce "cox". The operation \lozenge is the conjugate of \square :

```
as \lozenge bs = reverse ((reverse \ as) \square (reverse \ bs))
```

Whereas $as \square bs$ begins with as and ends with either bs or reverse bs depending on whether as has even length, $as \lozenge bs$ ends with bs and begins with either bs or reverse bs. For example:

$$\begin{array}{lll} [2,3,4] \, \square \, [0,1] & = & [0,1,2,1,0,3,0,1,4,1,0] \\ [2,3,4] \, \lozenge \, [0,1] & = & [1,0,2,0,1,3,1,0,4,0,1] \end{array}$$

We can express \square in terms of \lozenge by conjugation, but there is another way:

```
as \square bs
= if even (length as) then as \lozenge bs else as \lozenge (reverse bs) (30.1)
```

A similar equation defines \Diamond in terms of \square . Equation (30.1) will be needed below.

² By the way, "to box and cox" means "to take turns", which is certainly what both operations do and is the real reason for their names. The term comes from the comic play Box and Cox – A Romance of Real Life in One Act, by John Maddison Morton. Box and Cox were two lodgers who shared their rooms – one occupying them by day and the other by night.

The operation \Diamond is associative with the empty sequence as identity element. The proof is left as an exercise, but it depends on the fact that

$$(as + |b| + bs) \lozenge cs = (as \lozenge cs') + |b| + (bs \lozenge cs)$$

where $cs' = \mathbf{if}$ even (length bs) then reverse cs else cs. A similar property was needed to prove \square was associative.

Setting $coxall = foldr(\lozenge)$ [], we can now define

```
wcode, bcode :: [Leg] \rightarrow [Int]

wcode := coxall \cdot map \ wc

bcode := boxall \cdot map \ bc
```

where $wc, bc :: Leg \rightarrow [Int]$ are yet to be defined. Use of coxall in the definition of wcode ensures that the final colouring after executing wcode will be the union of the final colourings generated by the wc transitions, and use of boxall in the definition of bcode means that this colouring will also be the union of the colourings on which the bc transitions start.

It remains to define wc and bc. Given the choices above, the following definitions are forced:

```
wc (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) = wcode \ legs + [a] + bcode \ legs

wc (Dn (Node \ a \ legs)) = reverse (wcode \ legs)

bc (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) = reverse (bcode \ legs)

bc (Dn (Node \ a \ legs)) = wcode \ legs + [a] + bcode \ legs
```

Look first at wc(Upx). When the head of the mother spider of x is white and is connected to x by an upwards edge, there are no constraints on wc(Upx), so we can define it to be either $scode\ x$ or its reverse. But the subsequent transitions affecting x are those in the list bc(Upx), and the only way to match up the final colouring of the former with the initial colouring of the latter is with the definitions above. The reasoning is dual with bc(Dnx) and wc(Dnx).

Finally, we show that *ncode* can be expressed in terms of *bcode*:

```
ncode xs
= \{definition of ncode\}
boxall (map scode xs)
= \{definition of scode and bc\}
boxall [bc (Dn x) | x \leftarrow xs]
= \{definition of bcode\}
bcode [(Dn x) | x \leftarrow xs]
```

```
ncode
                                  Nest \rightarrow [Int]
ncode
                                  bcode \cdot map \ Dn
bcode, wcode
                                  [Leq] \rightarrow [Int]
                             ::
bcode
                                  boxall \cdot map \ bc
                             _
wcode
                                  coxall \cdot map \ wc
bc, wc
                                  Leq \rightarrow [Int]
                             ::
bc (Up (Node a legs))
                                  reverse (bcode legs)
                                  wcode\ leas + [a] + bcode\ leas
bc (Dn (Node \ a \ legs))
wc (Up (Node a legs))
                                  wcode \ legs + [a] + bcode \ legs
                             =
wc (Dn (Node\ a\ leas))
                                  reverse (wcode legs)
                             =
```

Fig. 30.4 The starting program for ncode

The complete program for ncode, apart from boxall and coxall, is listed in Figure 30.4. Our task is to make ncode loopless.

A loopless algorithm

The transformation to loopless form follows the same path as the simpler problem of a nest of tree spiders. Specifically, we are going to:

- (i) Eliminate *boxall* and *coxall* from the definition of *ncode* by appeal to map fusion and fold fusion.
- (ii) Eliminate reverse by appeal to tupling.
- (iii) Eliminate the remaining complexity by introducing queues.

It is the appeal to fold fusion in the first step that is the trickiest. As an easy first step we apply map fusion to the definitions of *wcode* and *bcode*, obtaining

```
bcode = foldr((\square) \cdot bc)[]

wcode = foldr((\lozenge) \cdot wc)[]
```

The focus of attention now is on the terms $(\Box) \cdot bc$ and $(\Diamond) \cdot wc$. Everything we discover about the first will apply to the second with the obvious changes. We will follow the path of the tree-spider calculation as closely as possible.

There are two clauses in the definition of bc and we consider them in turn. First we have

```
bc (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) \square \ cs
= \{definition \ of \ bc\}
reverse (bcode \ legs) \square \ cs
= \{definition \ of \ bcode\}
reverse (boxall (map \ bc \ legs)) \square \ cs
```

As in the case of tree spiders, the next step is an appeal to the fold-fusion law: if a function h can be found so that

$$reverse (as \square bs) \square cs = h as ((reverse bs) \square cs)$$
 (30.2)

then

$$reverse\ (boxall\ (map\ bc\ legs))\ \Box\ cs\ =\ foldr\ h\ cs\ (map\ bc\ legs)$$

The trouble is that there is no such h to satisfy (30.2). The reason is that \square is not an injective function; for example

"abab"
$$\square$$
 "aaaba" = "ab" \square "aaabaaaba"

If h existed to satisfy (30.2), then we would require

reverse (
$$as \square$$
 "baba") \square "aaaba"
= reverse ($as \square$ "ba") \square "aaabaaaba"

for all as. But the above equation is false: take for instance as ="c".

What we can do is find an h such that

$$reverse (as \square bs) \lozenge cs = h as ((reverse bs) \lozenge cs)$$
 (30.3)

Equation (30.3) has the same form as (30.2) except that the last \square on either side has been changed into a \lozenge . To discover h we reason:

$$reverse (as \square bs) \lozenge cs$$

$$= \{definition of \lozenge\}$$

$$(reverse \ as \lozenge reverse \ bs) \lozenge cs$$

$$= \{since \lozenge \text{ is associative}\}$$

$$reverse \ as \lozenge (reverse \ bs \lozenge cs)$$

Hence, we can take h as bs = reverse as $\Diamond bs$. Appeal to fold fusion then gives

$$reverse\ (boxall\ (map\ bc\ legs))\ \diamondsuit\ cs\ =\ foldr\ h\ cs\ (map\ bc\ legs)$$

But all this helps only if we can change a \square into a \lozenge . Fortunately, (30.1) comes to the rescue. Setting

$$cs' = if even (length (bcode legs)) then cs else reverse cs$$

we can reason:

$$bc (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) \square cs$$

$$= \{above\}$$

$$reverse (boxall (map \ bc \ legs)) \square cs$$

$$= \{using (30.1)\}$$

$$reverse (boxall (map \ bc \ legs)) \diamondsuit cs'$$

$$= \{ \text{fold fusion} \}$$

$$foldr((\lozenge) \cdot reverse) \ cs' \ (man \ bc \ leqs) \}$$

Having transformed \square into \lozenge we now transform \lozenge back into \square with another application of fold fusion. The fusion condition

```
reverse ((reverse \ as) \lozenge cs) = as \square (reverse \ cs)
```

is just the conjugate property of \square and \lozenge and it leads to

$$reverse \cdot foldr((\lozenge) \cdot reverse) \ cs' = foldr(\square) \ (reverse \ cs')$$

Thus:

$$bc (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) \square \ cs$$

$$= \{above\}$$

$$foldr ((\diamondsuit) \cdot reverse) \ cs' \ (map \ bc \ legs)$$

$$= \{fold \ fusion\}$$

$$reverse \ (foldr ((\square) \cdot bc) \ (reverse \ cs') \ legs)$$

Introducing $bop = (\Box) \cdot bc$, we have shown that $bcode = foldr \ bop \ [\]$, where

```
bop (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) \ cs = reverse (foldr \ bop \ cs' \ legs)

where cs' = if \ even (length (bcode \ legs))

then reverse \ cs \ else \ cs
```

Entirely dual reasoning with $wop = (\lozenge) \cdot wc$ establishes wcode = foldr wop [], where

```
wop (Dn (Node \ a \ legs)) \ cs = reverse (foldr \ wop \ cs' \ legs)

\mathbf{where} \ cs' = \mathbf{if} \ even (length (wcode \ legs))

\mathbf{then} \ reverse \ cs \ \mathbf{else} \ cs
```

That was quite a bit of effort, but it disposes of only two clauses, so more work remains. We now tackle the clause $bc (Dn (Node \ a \ legs)) \square cs$ and start off by reasoning:

```
bc (Dn (Node \ a \ legs)) \square \ cs
= \{definition \ of \ bc\} 
(wcode \ legs + [a] + bcode \ legs) \square \ cs
= \{distributing + over \square\} 
(wcode \ legs \square \ cs) + [a] + (bcode \ legs \square \ cs')
```

where

```
cs' = \mathbf{if} even (length (wcode legs)) then reverse cs else cs
```

The rule for distributing # over \square was given in the first pearl on looplessness:

```
(xs + [y] + ys) \square zs = (xs \square zs) + [y] + (ys \square zs')
where zs' = if even (length xs) then reverse zs else zs
```

We tackle each of the terms $bcode\ legs\ \Box\ cs'$ and $wcode\ legs\ \Box\ cs$ in turn. First:

$$bcode \ legs \square \ cs'$$

$$= \{definition \ of \ bcode\}$$

$$foldr (\square) [] (map \ bc \ legs) \square \ cs'$$

$$= \{fold \ fusion \ (exercise)\}$$

$$foldr (\square) \ cs' \ (map \ bc \ legs)$$

$$= \{map \ fusion \ and \ definition \ of \ bop\}$$

$$foldr \ bop \ cs' \ legs$$

Second:

```
wcode \ legs \ \Box \ cs
= \{using (30.1)\} 
wcode \ legs \ \Diamond \ reverse \ cs'
= \{definition \ of \ wcode\} 
foldr (\odot) [](map \ wc \ legs) \ \Diamond \ reverse \ cs'
= \{fold \ fusion \ (exercise)\} 
foldr (\odot) (reverse \ cs') \ (map \ bc \ legs) 
= \{map \ fusion \ and \ definition \ of \ wop\} 
foldr \ wop \ (reverse \ cs') \ legs
```

Hence, we have derived

```
bop\ (Dn\ (Node\ a\ legs))\ cs = foldr\ wop\ (reverse\ cs')\ legs\ ++ [a]\ ++ foldr\ bop\ cs'\ legs where cs'= if even\ (length\ (wcode\ legs)) then reverse\ cs\ else\ cs
```

Dual reasoning establishes a similar result for $wop (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) \ cs$ and leads to the program summarised in Figure 30.5. It is not very attractive and certainly not efficient, mostly on account of the repeated need to compute parity information.

```
Nest \rightarrow [Int]
ncode
ncode
                               = foldr bop [] \cdot map Dn
                               :: Leq \rightarrow [Int] \rightarrow [Int]
bop, wop
bop (Up (Node a legs)) cs
                               = reverse (foldr bop cs' legs)
where cs' = if even (length (foldr bop [] legs)) then reverse cs else cs
bop (Dn (Node a legs)) cs
                                   foldr\ wop\ (reverse\ cs')\ legs\ ++\ [a]\ ++
                                   foldr bop cs' legs
where cs' = \mathbf{if} even (length (foldr wop [ ] legs)) then reverse cs else cs
wop (Up (Node \ a \ legs)) \ cs = foldr \ wop \ cs' \ legs + [a] +
                                   foldr bop (reverse cs') legs
where cs' = if even (length (foldr bop [ ] legs)) then reverse cs else cs
wop (Dn (Node \ a \ leqs)) \ cs = reverse (foldr \ wop \ cs' \ leqs)
where cs' = if even (length (foldr wop [] legs)) then reverse cs else cs
```

Fig. 30.5 The code after eliminating \square and \lozenge

Parity spiders

Instead of repeatedly computing parity information we will install this information in a *parity spider*, a spider in which each node is equipped with two Boolean values:

```
\begin{array}{lll} \mathbf{data} \; Spider' &=& Node' \; (Bool, Bool) \; Int \; [Leg'] \\ \mathbf{data} \; Leg' &=& Dn' \; Spider' \; | \; Up' \; Spider' \end{array}
```

The invariant on a parity spider Node'(w, b) a legs is that

```
w = even (length (wcode legs))

b = even (length (bcode legs))
```

where wcode and bcode return the white code and black code on parity spiders.

Parity information can be installed in an ordinary spider by decorating it:

```
\begin{array}{lll} decorate & :: & Spider \rightarrow Spider' \\ decorate \ (Node \ a \ legs) & = & node' \ a \ (map \ (mapLeg \ decorate) \ legs) \\ mapLeg \ f \ (Up \ x) & = & Up' \ (f \ x) \\ mapLeg \ f \ (Dn \ x) & = & Dn' \ (f \ x) \end{array}
```

The smart constructor node' is defined by

```
node' \ a \ legs = Node' \ (foldr \ op \ (True, True) \ legs) \ a \ legs
where op :: Leg' \to (Bool, Bool) \to (Bool, Bool) is defined by op \ (Up' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ \_\_)) \ (w',b') = ((w \neq b) \land w', b \land b')
op \ (Dn' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ \_\_)) \ (w',b') = (w \land w', (w \neq b) \land b')
```

```
\begin{array}{lll} bop, wop & :: Leg' \rightarrow [Int] \rightarrow Int \\ bop & (Up' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ cs \\ & = \ reverse \ (foldr \ bop \ (revif \ b \ cs) \ legs) \\ bop & (Dn' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ cs \\ & = \ foldr \ wop \ (revif \ (not \ w) \ cs) \ legs \ ++ [a] \ ++ foldr \ bop \ (revif \ w \ cs) \ legs \\ wop & (Up' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ cs \\ & = \ foldr \ wop \ (revif \ b \ cs) \ legs \ ++ [a] \ ++ foldr \ bop \ (revif \ (not \ b) \ cs) \ legs \\ wop & (Dn' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ cs \\ & = \ reverse \ (foldr \ wop \ (revif \ w \ cs) \ legs) \\ revif & b \ cs & = \ \mathbf{if} \ b \ \mathbf{then} \ reverse \ cs \ \mathbf{else} \ cs \\ \end{array}
```

Fig. 30.6 Spinning with parity spiders

To justify this definition of op, abbreviate $even \cdot length$ to el. We reason:

```
el (wcode (leg : legs))
= \{definition of wcode (on parity spiders)\}
el (wc leg \lozenge wcode legs)
= \{since el (as \lozenge bs) = el as \land el bs\}
el (wc leg) \land el (wcode legs)
= \{assuming leg = Up' (Node' a legs')\}
el (wcode legs' + [a] + bcode legs') \land el (wcode legs)
```

But as + [a] + bs has even parity if and only if as and bs have opposite parity. Similar reasoning justifies the other values of op.

Installing parity information takes linear time in the size of a spider and leads to the slightly simpler and much more efficient definitions of *bop* and *wop* given in Figure 30.6.

The remaining steps

The final steps are to eliminate *reverse* by tupling and to represent each component of the pair of results returned by *bop* and *wop* by the preorder traversal of a queue of rose trees, just as in the case of tree spiders. To eliminate *reverse* we represent a sequence as by a pair (as, sa), where sa = reverse as. Concatenation of pairs is implemented by

```
cat\ a\ (ws, sw)\ (bs, sb) = (ws + [a] + bs, sb + [a] + sw)
```

Reversal is then implemented by swapping the two lists. Next, each component is represented by a queue of rose trees in a way we have seen twice

```
 ncode = unfoldr \ step \cdot prolog \\ prolog = wrap Queue \cdot fst \cdot foldr \ bop \ (empty, empty) \cdot map \ (Dn' \cdot decorate) \\ bop \ (Up' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ ps \\ = swap \ (foldr \ bop \ (swapif \ b \ ps) \ legs) \\ bop \ (Dn' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ ps \\ = cat \ a \ (foldr \ wop \ (swapif \ (not \ w) \ ps) \ legs) \ (foldr \ bop \ (swapif \ w \ ps) \ legs) \\ wop \ (Up' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ ps \\ = cat \ a \ (foldr \ wop \ (swapif \ b \ ps) \ legs) \ (foldr \ bop \ (swapif \ (not \ b) \ ps) \ legs) \\ wop \ (Dn' \ (Node' \ (w,b) \ a \ legs)) \ ps \\ = swap \ (foldr \ wop \ (swapif \ w \ ps) \ legs) \\ cat \ a \ (ws,sw) \ (bs,sb) \\ = \ (insert \ ws \ (Fork \ a \ bs), insert \ sb \ (Fork \ a \ sw)) \\ swap \ (xs,ys) \ = \ (ys,xs) \\ swap \ f \ b \ then \ (ys,xs) \ else \ (xs,ys) \\ \end{cases}
```

Fig. 30.7 The final loopless program

before. The result of these manoeuvres gives our final loopless program, summarised in Figure 30.7

Even though the prologue is now a four-act play, involving characters such as spiders, lists, queues and trees, and strange actions like swapping and folding, it nevertheless takes linear time in the size of the nest; so this finally is a loopless program for spider spinning.

The initial state

One task remains, namely to define $seed :: Nest \to [Bit]$, the function that returns the starting bit string $a_1 a_2 \dots a_n$ for a nest of spiders whose labels are $[1 \dots n]$ in some order. We will just sketch the reasoning behind the definition of seed. We will need the Haskell library Data.Map of finite mappings for representing colourings. This library provides a type $Map \, k \, a$ for representing finite mappings from keys (k) to values (a) and includes the following four functions:

```
\begin{array}{llll} empty & :: & Map \ k \ a \\ insert & :: & Ord \ k \Rightarrow k \rightarrow a \rightarrow Map \ k \ a \rightarrow Map \ k \ a \\ union & :: & Ord \ k \rightarrow Map \ k \ a \rightarrow Map \ k \ a \rightarrow Map \ k \ a \\ elems & :: & Map \ k \ a \end{array}
```

The value *empty* denotes the empty mapping, *insert* inserts a new binding into a mapping, *union* unions two mappings and *elems* returns the range of values in a mapping in increasing key order. We define a spider's *state* to be

start

a mapping from the integer node labels of the spider to bits, integers taking the values 0 and 1:

```
\begin{array}{rcl} \textbf{type} & \textit{State} & = & \textit{Map.Map Int Bit} \\ \textbf{type} & \textit{Bit} & = & \textit{Int} \end{array}
```

To avoid name clashes with similarly named functions in Queue, we define

```
install :: Int \rightarrow Bit \rightarrow State \rightarrow State

install = Map.insert

union :: State \rightarrow State \rightarrow State

union = Map.union

start :: State
```

The function *seed* is defined in terms of two functions

```
wseed, bseed :: [Leg'] \rightarrow (State, State)
```

= Map.empty

Both functions take a list of directed parity spiders and return a pair of states; wseed returns the initial state on which wcode operates and the final state that results. Similarly for bseed. We need both initial and final states and we need parity spiders because parity information plays a part in determining the correct initial state. We define seed by

```
seed = elems \cdot fst \cdot bseed \cdot map (Dn' \cdot decorate)
```

This function takes a nest of spiders, converts it into a list of downwards-directed parity spiders, computes the initial and final states associated with bcode, extracts the first component and returns a list of bits, the starting string for $a_1 a_2 \ldots a_n$.

We define *bseed* and *wseed* by following the code of Figure 30.4, except that we compute states rather than transitions. First:

```
bseed = foldr \ bsp \ (start, start) \cdot map \ bs
wseed = foldr \ wsp \ (start, start) \cdot map \ ws
```

The function bs returns the initial and final states for the transitions bc; similarly for ws. In fact, bs returns a triple, the first component of which is parity information needed for the computation of bsp. The function

```
foldr bsp (start, start)
```

returns the initial and final states for boxall, and foldr wsp (start, start) is a similar function for coxall.

Here is the program for bs:

```
bs (Up' (Node' (w, b) \ a \ legs)) = (b, install \ a \ 1 \ fs, install \ a \ 1 \ is)
\mathbf{where} \ (is, fs) = bseed \ legs
bs (Dn' (Node' (w, b) \ a \ legs)) = (b, install \ a \ 0 \ is, install \ a \ 1 \ fs)
\mathbf{where} \ is = fst \ (wseed \ legs)
fs = snd \ (bseed \ legs)
```

Recalling that bc (Up ($Node\ a\ legs$)) = reverse ($bcode\ legs$), we see that the initial and final states of $bseed\ legs$ have to be reversed in computing bs. Moreover, since we are considering the black code, the value associated with label a is 1, so this information is installed in the state. The parity information provided by b is also returned.

For the second clause, recall that

```
bc (Dn (Node \ a \ legs)) = wcode \ legs + + [a] + bcode \ legs
```

Here, the initial state corresponding to $wcode\ legs$ and the final state corresponding to $bcode\ legs$ are the correct initial and final states to choose. Moreover, the label a starts off being associated with a 0 bit and ends up being associated with a 1 bit.

The definition of ws is similar. It remains to consider bsp and wsp, whose definitions are

```
bsp(b, ia, fa)(ib, fb) = (union \ ia \ ib, union \ fa \ (if \ b \ then \ fb \ else \ ib))

wsp(w, ia, fa)(ib, fb) = (union \ ia \ (if \ w \ then \ ib \ else \ fb), union \ fa \ fb)
```

Recall that $as \square bs$ begins with bs and ends with bs if as has even length, or ends with $reverse\ bs$ if as has odd length. Hence, the initial state is the union of the two initial states associated with as and bs, but the final state is the union of the initial state associated with as and either the final or initial state associated with bs, depending on the parity of as. In the definition of bsp the Boolean b determines the parity. The complete code for seed is summarised in Figure 30.8.

Final remarks

The Knuth and Ruskey (2003) non-loopless algorithm for spider spinning made heavy use of coroutines. Knuth's (2001) loopless version is on his website. The simpler problem of spinning with tree spiders was first considered in Koda and Ruskey (1993). A non-loopless algorithm based on continuations appeared as a Functional Pearl in Filliâtre and Pottier (2003).

```
elems \cdot fst \cdot bseed \cdot map (Dn' \cdot decorate)
seed
                                      foldr bsp(start, start) \cdot map bs
bseed
                                      foldr wsp (start, start) · map ws
wseed
bs(Up'(Node'(w,b) \ a \ leqs))
                                      (b, install a 1 fs, install a 1 is)
                                       where (is, fs) = bseed legs
bs(Dn'(Node'(w,b) \ a \ leas))
                                      (b. install a 0 is, install a 1 fs)
                                  =
                                                  = fst (wseed legs)
                                       where is
                                                      snd (bseed leas)
                                               fs
                                                   =
ws (Up'(Node'(w, b) \ a \ leqs))
                                      (w, install a 0 is, install a 1 fs)
                                       where is
                                                  = fst (wseed legs)
                                                      snd (bseed leas)
                                               fs
                                                  =
ws (Dn' (Node' (w, b) \ a \ leqs))
                                      (w, install a 0 fs, install a 0 is)
                                       where (is, fs) = wseed legs
bsp(b, ia, fa)(ib, fb)
                              (union ia ib, union fa (if b then fb else ib))
wsp(w, ia, fa)(ib, fb)
                              (union ia (if w then ib else fb), union fa fb)
```

Fig. 30.8 The function seed

References

- Filliâtre, J.-C., and Pottier, F. (2003). Producing all ideals of a forest, functionally. Journal of Functional Programming 13 (5), 945–56.
- Knuth, D. E. (2001). SPIDERS: a program downloadable from www-cs-faculty.stanford.edu/~knuth/programs.html.
- Knuth, D. E. and Ruskey, F. (2003). Efficient coroutine generation of constrained Gray sequences (aka deconstructing coroutines). Object-Orientation to Formal Methods: Dedicated to The Memory of Ole-Johan Dahl. LNCS 2635. Springer-Verlag.
- Koda, Y. and Ruskey, R. (1993). A Gray code for the ideals of a forest poset. Journal of Algorithms 15, 324–40.

Index

Data.Array, 2, 25, 29, 100, 114, 123 Data.Array.ST, 3	zip, 35, 83 zip With, 83
Data.Map, 271	
Data.Sequence, 114	Abelian group, 27
Data.Set, 70	abides property, 3, 22
Either, 168	abstraction function, 129, 211, 226
Ix, 2	accumulating function, 2
Queue, 115, 249	accumulating parameter, 131, 138, 140,
	177, 253
QuickCheck, 188, 196	adaptive encoding, 200
Ratio, 182, 199	amortised time, 5, 118, 131, 133
↓ – after, 128	annotating a tree, 170
↑ - before, 109	arithmetic decoding, 201
\\ - list difference, 1, 3, 22, 59, 64,	arithmetic expressions, 37, 156
142, 192	array update operation, 3, 6
↑ – exponentiation, 183	arrays, 1, 2, 21, 29, 85, 99
M – merge, 9, 10, 29	association list, 29, 238
!! – list index, 87, 93, 100	asymptotic complexity, 27
! – array index, 25, 29, 87, 100	asymptotic complexity, 21
⊑ – prefix, 103, 119, 127	bags, 25, 50, 51
accumArray, 2, 5, 82, 123	balanced trees, 21, 54, 234
apply Until, 82	Bareiss algorithm, 186
array, 29, 85	bijection, 129
bounds, 25	binary search, 7, 10, 14, 15, 19, 54
break, 154, 164, 182	binomial trees, 178
compare, 29	bioinformatics, 77, 90
concatMap, 42	Boolean satisfiability, 155
elems, 85	borders of a list, 103
foldrn – fold over nonempty lists, 42	bottom-up algorithm, 41
fork, 35, 83, 94, 118	boustrophedon product, 245, 251, 260
inits, 66, 67, 117	breadth-first search, 136, 137, 178
listArray, 25, 100	Bulldozer algorithm, 196
minors, 172	bzip2, 101
nodups, 149	521 52 , 101
nub, 64	call-tree, 168
partition, 4	Cartesian coordinates, 141, 155
partitions, 38	Cartesian product, 149
reverse, 119, 244	celebrity clique, 56
scanl, 118, 238	Chió's identity, 182
scanr, 70	clique, 56
sort, 28, 95	combinatorial patterns, 242
sortBy, 29, 94	comparison-based sorting, 10, 16, 27
span, 67	computational geometry, 188
subseqs, 57, 65, 157, 163	conjugate, 263
tails, 7, 79, 100, 102	constraint satisfaction, 155
transpose, 98, 150, 193	continuations, 273
unfoldr, 202, 243	coroutines, 273
	•

276 Index

cost function, 41, 48, 52	Knuth and Ruskey algorithm, 258
cyclic structures, 133, 179	Knuth's spider spinning algorithm, 242
	Koda–Ruskey algorithm, 242
data compression, 91, 198	,
data mining, 77	law of iterate, 99
data refinement, 5, 48, 108, 114, 129, 210	
deforestation, 168	laws of filter, 118, 152
	laws of <i>fork</i> , 35
depth-first search, 137, 221, 222	lazy evaluation, 33, 147, 185, 243
destreaming, 214	leaf-labelled trees, 41, 165, 168
destreaming theorem, 214	left spines, 43, 45, 177
Dilworth's theorem, 54	left-inverse, 129
divide and conquer, 1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 15, 21–23,	Leibniz formula, 180
27, 29, 30, 65, 81, 171	lexicographic ordering, 45, 52, 64, 102, 104
dot product, 185	linear ordering, 43
dynamic programming, 168	linked list, 225
• • •	longest common prefix, 103, 112, 120
EOF (end-of-file symbol), 203	
exhaustive search, 12, 33, 39, 57, 148, 156	longest decreasing subsequence, 54
,,,,,,	loop invariants, 62, 111
facets, 190	lower bounds, 16, 27, 28, 64
failure function, 133	
fictitious values, 14, 77	Mahajan and Vinay's algorithm, 186
finite automaton, 74, 136	majority voting problem, 62
	matrices, 147, 181
fission law of foldl, 130 fixpoint induction, 205	matrix Cartesian product, 149
fixpoint induction, 205	maximum marking problems, 77
forests, 42, 174	maximum non-segment sum, 73
fringe of a tree, 41	maximum segment sum, 73
frontier, 137	maximum surpasser count, 7
fully strict composition, 243	McCarthy S-expression, 221
fusion law of foldl, 76, 130, 195	memo table, 163
fusion law of foldr, 34, 51, 52, 61, 247, 260,	memoisation, 162
261, 265	merge, 26, 142, 158
fusion law of foldrn, 43	mergesort, 29, 89, 171, 173
fusion law of fork, 35	minimal element, 53
fusion law of unfoldr, 206, 212	minimum cost tree, 44
G 1911 1 141 100	minimum element, 53
Galil's algorithm, 122	minors, 181
garbage collection, 165, 166	model checking, 155
Garsia–Wachs algorithm, 49	monads, 3, 114, 155
Gaussian elimination, 180	monotonicity condition, 48, 53
graph traversal, 178, 221	move-to-front encoding, 91
Gray path order, 258	multisets, 25
greedy algorithms, 41, 48, 50, 140	111111111111111111111111111111111111111
Gusfield's Z algorithm, 116	namawing 100
	narrowing, 199 nondeterministic functions, 43, 51
Hu–Tucker algorithm, 49	
Huffman coding, 91, 198, 201	normal form, 160
	anlina list labellina 941
immutable arrays, 25	online list labelling, 241
incremental algorithm, 188, 191, 204	Open Problems Project, 31
incremental decoding, 216	optimal bracketing, 176
incremental encoding, 203, 209	optimisation problems, 48, 176
indexitis, 150	order-maintenance problem, 241
inductive algorithm, 42, 93, 102	overflow, 214
integer arithmetic, 182, 198, 208	
integer division, 182	parametricitiy, 62
intermediate data structure, 168	partial evaluation, 134
interval expansion, 209, 210	partial ordering, 53
inversion table, 10	partial preorder, 52
inverting a function, 12, 93	partition sort, 85
involution, 150	partition sorting, 87
iterative algorithm, 10, 82, 109, 113	perfect binary trees, 171

Index 277

permutations, 79, 90, 91, 96, 97, 180,	smooth algorithms, 241
189, 242, 251	solving a recursion, 98
planning algorithm, 136, 138	sorting, 9, 10, 16, 91, 149
plumbing combinators, 36	sorting numbers, 1, 3
prefix, 66	sorting permutation, 10
prefix ordering, 103, 105, 119	space/time trade-offs, 156
preorder traversal, 245, 270	spanning tree, 178
principal submatrices, 185	stable sorting algorithm, 86, 95
program transformation, 221	stacks, 137, 221, 222
PSPACE completeness, 136	streaming, 203, 214
1 STITOLI COMPLETENCISS, 100	streaming theorem, 204
queues, 109, 137, 248, 249	string matching, 112, 117, 127
Quicksort, 5, 85, 89	stringology, 103
Q aronooro, 0, 00, 00	subsequences, 50, 64, 74, 162,
radix sort, 95, 101	177, 242
ranking a list, 79	suffix tree, 101
rational arithmetic, 180, 188, 198	suffixes, 79, 100
rational division, 181	Sylvester's identity, 186
recurrence relations, 15, 31, 88	<i>z</i> ,
refinement, 44, 48, 51–53, 80	thinning algorithm, 161
regular cost function, 49	top-down algorithm, 41
regular expression, 74	totally acyclic digraph, 258
relations, 48, 167, 229	transitions, 242
representation function, 129, 211	trees, 130, 165, 248
right spines, 177	tries, 163
Rose trees, 164, 245	tupling law of foldl, 118, 125
rotations of a list, 91	tupling law of foldr, 247
rule of floors, 215	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
run-length encoding, 91	unfolds, 168
3, 3, 1, 1, 1, 3, 1	unmerges, 158, 159, 165
saddleback search, 14	unravel, 50
safe replacement, 222	upper triangular matrix, 185
scan lemma, 118, 125	, , ,
segments, 73, 171	Vandermonde's convolution, 17
Shannon–Fano coding, 198	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
sharing, 168, 173	well-founded recursion, 4, 30
shortest upravel, 50	while loop, 111, 113
simplex, 188	wholemeal programming, 150
skeleton trees, 165	windows of a text, 120
sliding-block puzzle, 136	,
smart constructors, 48, 170, 177	Young tableau, 28
	- ,